

A  
E  
C  
C  
S  
E  
F  
L  
C  
C  
G  
G  
L

THE TEACH YOURSELF BOOKS  
EDITED BY LEONARD CUTTS

AFRIKAANS

**Uniform with this volume  
and in the same  
series**

---

Teach Yourself Arabic  
Teach Yourself Chinese  
Teach Yourself Dutch  
Teach Yourself English Grammar  
Teach Yourself Finnish  
Teach Yourself French  
Teach Yourself Everyday French  
Teach Yourself French Phrase Book  
Teach Yourself German  
Teach Yourself More German  
Teach Yourself German Phrase Book  
Teach Yourself German Grammar  
Teach Yourself Greek  
Teach Yourself Hebrew  
Teach Yourself Italian  
Teach Yourself Italian Phrase Book  
Teach Yourself Latin  
Teach Yourself Malay  
Teach Yourself Norwegian  
Teach Yourself Polish  
Teach Yourself Portuguese  
Teach Yourself Russian  
Teach Yourself Russian Phrase Book  
Teach Yourself Spanish  
Teach Yourself Spanish Phrase Book  
Teach Yourself Swahili  
Teach Yourself Swedish  
Teach Yourself Turkish  
Teach Yourself Urdu

# TEACH YOURSELF AFRIKAANS

By

M. P. O. BURGERS,  
D.Litt. (Rand)



**THE ENGLISH UNIVERSITIES PRESS LTD**  
102 NEWGATE STREET  
LONDON E.C.1

*First printed 1957*

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

*Printed in Great Britain for The English Universities Press, Limited,  
by Stephen Austin & Sons, Ltd., Oriental and General Printers, Hertford.*

## P R E F A C E

AFRIKAANS, one of the official languages of the Union of South Africa, is the youngest Indo-Germanic language. It is closely allied to Dutch, from which it developed spontaneously in the course of the last three centuries. It is also related to English, both in origin—witness the many words like *boek*, *sing* and *skip* that are similar in the two languages—and in the simplification of the grammar, e.g. the dropping of inflections and declensions. At the same time it has, like English, acquired many idiomatic phenomena.

It has been consciously used as a vehicle for literary expression during the last eighty years only, but already it possesses a literature of no mean bulk and of a high standard. Some of the best works have been translated into various European languages and quite a number are available in English.

Not only is a knowledge of Afrikaans necessary for an understanding of South African conditions and affairs, the study of the language is also extremely interesting from a linguistic and a literary point of view.

### *How to use this Book*

The opening Chapters (I–VIII) contain much useful information and guidance, some helpful rules, and material to increase the student's vocabulary. The student should work through these chapters quickly at first, and then begin with the graded series of lessons (Chap. IX–XXXII), returning to the opening chapters for reference and revision.

It is important that the student should work systematically and regularly. From Chap. IX onwards there is a progressive series of double sets of exercises in translation, one (bearing a plain number) from Afrikaans into English, and one (bearing a number followed by an *a*) from English into Afrikaans. These exercises should be attempted immediately after working through the relative chapter and the list preceding the exercises, and the work then checked against the Key at the back of the book.

The words needed for the exercises will be found in the preceding chapters and lists, and in the Vocabulary at the back of the book. This Vocabulary has been restricted and contains mainly those words in the Afrikaans passages for translation into English, which have not been mentioned in previous

chapters and lists up to the particular point ; hence the student is to consult it mainly when working on the exercises bearing only a number. For economy of space, repetitions have been avoided as far as possible ; consequently the student will find it difficult to go on, unless he has mastered much of what has gone before and memorised the Afrikaans words up to that stage.

If he is in trouble, he can either look surreptitiously at the Key (!) or consult a dictionary. In any case the student is strongly advised to acquire a good dictionary. Two such can be recommended : the *Tweetalige Woordeboek deur Bosman, Van der Merwe en ander*, published in two volumes by the *Nasionale Pers, Beperk*, in Cape Town, and the *Groot Woordeboek deur Kritzinger, Steyn, Schoonees en Cronjé*, published in one volume by *J. L. van Schaik, Beperk*, in Pretoria.

The book as a whole includes all the words that can be considered as the vocabulary of basic Afrikaans, but it has been found impossible to provide exercises on all material included ; hence some of the material in the chapters is not required for the exercises. Afrikaans is a relatively pure language with a vocabulary largely built up through internal derivation by means of suffixes and prefixes, with the result that many words are related to one another. An attempt has been made to indicate these relationships in the chapters and lists. Naturally, the student can initially skip some of this material.

On going through the book a second time the student can use the material supplied in the Key as the exercise, and check his work against the material supplied at the end of each chapter. When working through the exercises a second time, the student should try to do without the lists and the Vocabulary. The exercises numbered 26-28a, especially 27 and 28, are considerably more difficult than the preceding ones, and may be postponed till the student has worked through the preceding exercises several times. The English in the exercises and in the Key has not always been cast into completely idiomatic form. This has been done on purpose to make the translations into Afrikaans easy. Please do not try to correct it—this is not a book for teaching English !

It should be noted that there are many words in the two languages that look alike and are spelt alike but have different meanings, e.g. *slim* and *glad*. Such words are dangerous and

demand special attention. The student is advised to make his own list of them as he comes across them, and to revise the list from time to time.

*List of abbreviations used*

a.	adjective.	mas.	masculine.
adv.	adverb.	n.	noun.
Afr.	Afrikaans.	obj.	objective.
attr.	attributive.	pers.	personal.
cf.	compare.	pl.	plural.
compar.	comparative.	poss.	possessive.
dimin.	diminutive.	pred.	predicative.
e.g.	for example.	prep.	preposition.
Eng.	English.	pres.	present.
fem.	feminine.	pron.	pronoun.
i.e.	that is.	reflex. v.	reflexive. verb.
impers. v.	impersonal verb.	rel.	relative.
infin.	infinitive.	sing.	singular.
interj.	interjection.	tr. v.	transitive verb.
intr. v.	intransitive verb.	v.	verb.
lit.	literal(ly).	viz.	namely.

*Further Study*

It is obvious that in a book of this size all the niceties of the language cannot be dealt with. It provides a general grounding and as much exercise as possible, but the serious student who wishes to master the language more fully will want more. When he has worked through the material for translation in this book several times, he should go on to further material. This is fairly easily obtainable in the form of books, periodicals and newspapers, and the student should make use of them in a manner similar to that indicated here : translate passages into English and then translate back into Afrikaans.

The student should also seek as much opportunity as possible of hearing good spoken Afrikaans. The radio is a valuable adjunct here, and the student must try to listen to broadcast programmes in Afrikaans as frequently as possible. Linguaphone records in Afrikaans are also available and should prove very valuable.

M. P. O. B.

*Cape Town.*



## CONTENTS

	PAGE
Preface . . . . .	v
I. The Alphabet . . . . .	1
II. The Vowels : Long and Half-Long Vowels, Short Vowels, Nasalised Vowels . . . . .	3
III. The Diphthongs . . . . .	8
IV. The Consonants . . . . .	10
v. Assimilation and Stress . . . . .	14
VI. Syllabication . . . . .	17
VII. Spelling . . . . .	19
VIII. Punctuation . . . . .	23
IX. Articles ; Plurals ; Numerals ; Days of the Week	25
x. <i>Is</i> and <i>Het</i> ; Personal Pronouns ; Possessive Forms of Nouns ; Verbs—Simple Present, Past and Future Tenses ; Plurals ; Numerals ; Names of the Months . . . . .	29
XI. Again <i>is</i> and <i>het</i> ; Sequence of Words ; Re- flexive Pronouns and Reflexive Verbs ; Plurals ; Numerals . . . . .	35
XII. Personal Possessive Pronouns ; Indefinite Pro- nouns ; Plurals ; Numerals . . . . .	41
XIII. Adjectives—Inflection ; Plurals ; Numerals . . . . .	46
XIV. Verbs—Present Tenses ; Separable and In- separable Compound Verbs ; Plurals ; Ordinal Numerals . . . . .	52
xv. Adjectives—Comparison ; Separable and In- separable Verbs ; Dates . . . . .	59
XVI. Impersonal Verbs ; Prepositions ; Demonstrative Pronouns ; Fractions ; Separable and In- separable Verbs ; Plurals . . . . .	66

	PAGE
xvii. Adverbs—Forms, Comparison, Kinds ; Concen- trated Similes ; Prepositions ; Separable and Inseparable Verbs . . . . .	73
xviii. Nouns—Gender ; Separable and Inseparable Verbs ; Prepositions ; Time by Watch . . . . .	82
xix. Negatives in Simple Sentences ; Prepositions ; Same Verb, Separable and Inseparable ; Adverbial Forms of Numerals . . . . .	88
xx. Nouns—Diminutives ; Prepositions and Double Prepositions ; Same Verb, Separable and Inseparable . . . . .	94
xxi. Sequence of Words in Questions ; Interrogative Pronouns and Adverbs ; Negative Questions ; Names of Seasons ; Same Verb, Separable and Inseparable . . . . .	100
xxii. Inversion of Sequence of Words ; Present Par- ticiples ; Same Verb, Separable and In- separable ; Names of Colours . . . . .	105
xxiii. Weak Past Participles ; Compound Verbs Treated as Simple Verbs . . . . .	111
xxiv. Verbs—Past Tenses ; Strong Past Tense Forms ; Rendering of English Participles in Past Tense Constructions without <i>ge-</i> ; Same Compound as Noun and as Verb ; Names of Points of Compass . . . . .	118
xxv. Infinitives ; English Gerunds Rendered by Afrikaans Infinitives ; Past Tense Construc- tions without <i>ge-</i> ; Sequence of Words in Infinitives ; Verbs—Future Tenses ; Names of Continents . . . . .	124
xxvi. The Verb <i>word</i> ; The Passive Voice ; Sequence of Words in the Passive Voice ; Negative Sentences ; Questions ; Negative Questions ; Names of Oceans and Tides . . . . .	130

	PAGE
xxvii. The Imperative Mood, Active and Passive; Negative Forms; Infinitives in the Past Tense and in the Passive Voice; Money. . . . .	136
xxviii. The Subjunctive Mood—Auxiliaries; Other Means of Indicating the Subjunctive Mood; Polite Questions; Subjunctive Mood in the Passive Voice . . . . .	142
xxix. Elliptical Use of Auxiliary Verbs; Relative Pronouns and Subordinate Clauses; Sequence of Words in Subordinate Clauses; Special Cases of Sequence of Words . . . . .	149
xxx. The Complex Sentence—Inverted Sequence of Words and a Special Case; Sequence of Words in Direct Speech; Negatives in Complex Sentences; Interjections . . . . .	157
xxxi. Compound Sentences—Sequence of Words, and Negatives; Rendering of Participial Phrases and Gerunds; The Verbs <i>ken</i> and <i>weet</i> . . . . .	163
xxxii. Inflected Infinitives; Strong Past Participles . . . . .	170
xxxiii. Forms of Address; Letters . . . . .	178
xxxiv. Translation . . . . .	186
xxxv. Translation . . . . .	191
Key to Exercises . . . . .	198
Vocabulary . . . . .	230

## CHAPTER I.

## THE ALPHABET

The alphabet in Afrikaans is essentially the same as in English. To achieve a more phonetic representation of the spoken sounds a few signs have been added and the use of certain letters and combinations of letters has been restricted. The sounds represented differ in some cases from the sounds represented by the same signs in English, and care should be exercised to reproduce the correct sounds of spoken Afrikaans. Also, in certain positions the same sign represents different sounds. As far as possible, indications will be given to help the student over these initial hurdles, and where necessary the international phonetic signs will be used. In this alphabet there is a very simple device to indicate the length of a vowel. A short vowel is represented by a sign with no additions. E.g. **a** indicates the *a* sound in *man* (*man*). The corresponding long vowel is indicated by the same sign followed by a colon: **a:** indicates the *a* sound in *vader* (*father*). A half-long vowel is indicated by a sign followed by the top dot only of the colon. Stress is indicated by the sign <sup>1</sup> placed before the syllable to be stressed.

The names of the letters are more or less the same as in English, but there are a few exceptions: *-a* is called *aa* (as *a* in English "father"; phonetic sign **ɑ:**); *g* is called *gee* (*g* as *ch* in Scotch "loch"; phonetic sign **ɣ**); *h* is called *haa*; *i* is called *ie* (more or less like *ie* in "thief"; phonetic sign **i**); *j* is called *jee* (*j* like *y* in "yes"; phonetic sign **j**); *k* is called *kaa*; *q* is called *ku* (*u* like *u* in French "russe" or "lune"; phonetic sign **y**); *u* is called *u* (like *u* in French "russe"); *v* is called *vee* (*v* like *f*); *w* is called *wee* (*w* more or less like English *v*); *y* is called *ei* (a diphthong pronounced more or less like *ay* in English "lay"; phonetic sign **øi**).

The letters *c*, *q*, *x*, and *z* are seldom used and then mainly in proper names and in words of foreign origin; *c* has been largely supplanted by *s* and *k*, *q* by *kw*, *x* by *ks*, and *z* by *s*.

Instead of *y* the Dutch sign *ij* is sometimes used in proper names of Dutch origin.

Of *e*, *i*, *o* and *u* the following variants occur: *ê*—known as *kappie-ee* (*'kappie* means a bonnet or little hat); *è* and *é* (the first indicates a certain sound; the second one stress); *î*—known as *kappie-ie*; *ô*—known as *kappie-oo*; and *û*—known as *kappie-u*.

There is a redundancy of signs in that *v* and *f* represent the same sound (that of the Eng. *f*). This leads to some difficulty in spelling which the student will gradually master.

The English sound *w* as in "water" (phonetic sign **w**) does not occur in Afrikaans, but a bilabial sound very close to it (phonetic sign **v**) does sometimes occur. The English sound *g* in "get" (phonetic sign **g**) sometimes does occur (see below).

## CHAPTER II.

### THE VOWELS

#### *Long and Half-Long Vowels*

The Afrikaans vowels are usually slightly shorter than the corresponding English vowels, except before *r*: when an *r* follows the vowel, the vowel is usually lengthened somewhat. The following are the long and half-long vowels in Afrikaans.

1. The long *a*, phonetic sign **a:**, written *aa* or *a*, and pronounced like the *a* in Eng. "father". It is written *aa* in a closed syllable (i.e. one that ends in a consonant), and *a* in an open syllable (i.e. one that is not "closed" by a consonant but ends in a vowel). E.g. *maan* (n., moon); *'ta-fel* (n., table); *maand* (month), *'maande* (months); *jaar* (year); *'ja-re* (years); *ja* (yes). In the pl. *jare*, *'ja:rə*, the one *a* of *jaar*, the sing., is dropped, since the syllable containing the *aa* becomes an open syllable in the plural. In the pl. *maande* the spelling remains unchanged since the syllable remains closed by the *n*. The same spelling phenomenon occurs with *ee*, *oo* and *uu*. Further examples of **a:** are: *'aarde* (earth); *'skade* (n., damage); *smaak* (n. and v., taste); *kaal* (a., bare, naked); *'aantal* (n., number); *traan* (n., tear—of weeping); *kaap* (cape, headland); *'asem* (breath); *kraal* (pen, fold, kraal; bead).

2. The long *ee*, phonetic sign **e:**, written *ee* or *e*, and pronounced more or less like the first part of the diphthong in Eng. "near". E.g. *week* (week); *'we-ke* (weeks); *'te-ken* (n., sign; v., draw, sketch, sign); *seer* (n. and a., sore); *deel* (n., part; v., divide); *keel* (throat); *veer* (n., feather; spring (of watch)); *steek* (n., sting, prick; v., stick, sting, prick); *ver'neem* (inquire, learn); *ver'seker* (insure, assure); *steen* (stone). In *reën* (two syllables, **re:ən**, n. and v., rain) a diaeresis, known as a *'deelteken*, lit. a "dividing sign", is used to indicate that there are two syllables. The division takes place just before the *deelteken*.

Unlike the case with *aa* and *a*, at the end of a word the sign *ee* is used, to distinguish *ee* from the short neutral *e* (see below).

E.g. *nee* (no); *see* (sea). The pl. of *see* is *seë* (two syllables, 'se:ə), the second *e* (with the *deelteken*) being the sign of the pl., and the first *e* representing the long *e*: sound in an open syllable, not at the end of a word. An exception is *tweede* (the ordinal numeral "second", from *twee*, two), which retains the *ee* in the first syllable, although it is an open syllable.

3. The sound *ê*, phonetic sign *ɛ:*, pronounced more or less like the first part of the diphthong in the Eng. word "there". E.g. *sê* (say); *wêreld* ('vɛ:rəlt, world); *blêr* (v., bleat). The sound also occurs before *rd* and *rt* in *perd* (horse) and *tert* (tart), where it is written without the sign ^.

4. The sound *eu*, phonetic sign *ø* (an *o* with a stroke through it). This is a single vowel, although two letters are used to represent it. It is pronounced more or less like the vowel sound in the French word "fleur", with the lips well rounded, and the tongue in the same position as for the long *e*: sound. E.g. *neus* (nose); *kleur* (colour); *beurt* (n., turn in sense "it is my turn"); *reus* (giant); *steun* (n. and v., groan; support; also v., rely, lean).

5. The *ie* sound, which varies somewhat in length, phonetic signs *i*, *i'* (half-long) and *i:* (long), and which is most often written *ie* (especially at the beginning and at the end of words) but also *i*. The rules are somewhat complicated, and the student will do best to learn the spelling and pronunciation as he meets the individual words. Both *i* and *ie* occur in open and in enclosed syllables. Note that *ie*, although consisting of two letter signs, represents a single vowel sound, pronounced more or less like the vowel in Eng. "brief", only shorter. E.g. *die* (*di*, the); *diep* (*dip*, deep, deeply); *dier* (*dir*, animal—the vowel lengthens before the *r*); *mielie* ('mili, mealie); *familie* (*fa'mili*, family); *rivier* (*rə'fir*, river); *titel* ('titəl, title); *artikel* (*ar'tikəl*, article); *mier* (*mir*, ant); *verdien* (*fər'din*, v., earn, deserve).

6. The sound *î*, phonetic sign *ɔ:* (an *e* upside down), pronounced more or less like the first sound of Eng. "earnest". It occurs rarely. E.g. *wie* ('və:ə, the pl. of *wig*, n., wedge).

7. The long *o*, phonetic sign *o:*, written *oo* or *o*, and pronounced more or less like the first part of the diphthong in Eng. "poor". It is written *oo* in a closed syllable, and *o* in an open syllable. E.g. *boom* (tree); 'bo-me (trees); *bo* (above,

on top); *voor* (adv., in front; n., furrow); *roos* (rose); 'horing (horn); 'koring (corn, wheat); *kool* (cabbage); *kook* (v., cook, boil); *skoot* (n., shot; time, turn; lap); *sloot* (ditch, furrow); *loop* (v., walk; n., barrel of gun, course of stream); *boos* (angry, wicked, evil); *hoop* (n. and v., hope; heap).

8. The sound *ô*, phonetic sign *ɔ:* (a *c* upside down), pronounced more or less like the vowel sound in Eng. "ought". E.g. *môre* ('mɔ:rə, morning, tomorrow). This word is also pronounced 'mɔ:rə, and written *more*.

9. The sound *oe*, varying somewhat in length and represented by the phonetic signs *u*, *u'* and *u:*, always written *oe*, and pronounced more or less like the sound in Eng. "book" (shorter sound) and "shoe" (longer sound) but with the lips well rounded. Although *oe* consists of two letter signs, it represents a single vowel sound. E.g. *boek* (*buk*, n., book); 'boeke (books); *boer* (*bur*, n., farmer; v., farm); *koek* (*kuk*, n., cake); *noem* (*num*, v., name, mention); *soen* (*sun*, n. and v., kiss); *soek* (*suk*, seek, look for); *versoek* (n. and v., request); *koel* (*kul*, a. and adv., cool(ly), fresh(ly)); *koers* (*kurs*, course, direction; quotation (stock exchange), rate (money)); *roer* (*ru:r*, v., move; n., rudder; rifle).

10. The long *u*, varying somewhat in length and represented by the phonetic signs *y*, *y'* and *y:*, and pronounced like the vowel in the French words "lune" and "pur". It does not occur in English. To pronounce it, keep the tongue in the position for *ie*, and then push the lips forward, rounding them well. The sound is written *uu* in closed syllables and *u* in open syllables. E.g. *uur* (*y:r*, hour); *ure* ('y:rə, hours); *nuut* (*nyt*, new).

11. The sound *û*, phonetic sign *œ:* (an *o* and an *e* written together), pronounced more or less like the vowel sound in Eng. "whirl" or "worm", but longer and well rounded. It occurs rarely. E.g. *brûe* ('brœ:ə, the pl. of *brug*, n., bridge).

#### Short Vowels

1. The short sound *a*, phonetic sign *a*, always written *a*, and pronounced more or less like the *a* in the Scotch pronunciation "man" or in French "pas". E.g. *kat* (cat); *katte* ('katə, cats); *hand* (hand); 'hande (hands); 'appel (apple). Note the pl. form *katte*. The *t* has been doubled in

order to keep the first syllable closed: *kat-te*; otherwise the spelling *kate* would have left the first syllable open, and then the *a* would have been the wrong, long *a:* sound, represented by *a* in an open syllable. In the pl. *hande* no doubling is necessary, since the *n* closes the first syllable. The same spelling phenomenon occurs with the short sounds *e*, *o*, and *u*. Further examples of *a* are: *vlak* (a., flat, shallow; n., plane, level); *sak* (n., bag, pocket; v., sink lower, descend); *dak* (roof); *grap* (n., joke); *mark* (n., market); *span* (n., team); *van* (prep., of; n., surname); *be'drag* (n., amount); *ver'band* (n., bandage, mortgage; connection, from *bind*, v., bind); *bal* (n., ball); *kap* (v., chop, fell; n., hood, top, cowl); *klap* (v., smack, crack (with whip), click (with tongue); n., slap, blow, lash, stroke); *krap* (v., scratch; n., crab); *'massa* (n., mass, crowd; lump).

2. The short sound *e*, phonetic sign *ɛ*, always written *e* and pronounced more or less like the sound in Eng. "bed" and "bet", but more open. E.g. *les* (lesson); *'lesse* (lessons); *rek* (v., stretch; n., elastic); *'rente* (n., interest (money)); *hek* (n., gate); *sterf* (v., die); *bek* (jaw, mouth of animal, beak); *wet* (a. and n., fat). The short *e* is written *è* when it occurs at the end of a word. There are only a few short words in Afrikaans carrying this sign, which is used to distinguish it from the following one (see below). E.g. *dè* (take it—used when handing some object to a person).

3. The short sound *i*, phonetic sign *ɪ* (an *e* upside down), pronounced more or less like the second vowel sound in Eng. "better". This is sometimes called the short neutral *e*, and is usually written *i*. E.g. *vis* (*fəs*, n. and v., fish); *visse* (*'fəsə*, pl. of *vis*); *dink* (think); *sit* (sit, place); *sink* (v., sink; n., zinc); *blink* (v., glitter, shine; a., glittering, shining); *bliek* (n., tin, a tin can; look, glance); *plaaslik* (*'plɑ:slək*, local, locally, from *plaas*, n. and v., place); *waarlik* (*'vɑ:rlək*, really, indeed, from *waar*, true); *woning* (*'vɔ:nəŋ*, n., dwelling, from *woon*, v., dwell, live). The sound is sometimes written *e* at the end of words, e.g. in plurals ending in *-e*, and in the following short words: *te* (too, in "too much", Afr. *te veel*), and *se* (the possessive particle, more or less equivalent to Eng. "'s"). This sound is also written *e* in some unaccented syllables. E.g. *lepel* (*'le:pəl*, n., spoon); *tesaam* (*tə'sa:m*, together);

*lengte* (*'lɛŋtə*, length, height of a person, from *lang* and *lank*, long); *belange* (*bə'laŋə*, pl. n., interests); *geslag* (*xə'slɑx*, n., sex, lineage, generation); *vlakte* (*'flɑktə*, n., plain, from *vlak*).

4. The short sound *o*, phonetic sign *ɔ*, always written *o*, pronounced like the Afr. *ɔ* but very much shortened, i.e. not like the Eng. *o* in "not", but with rounded lips like the vowel in Eng. "caught" very much shortened. E.g. *kom* (v., come; n., basin); *bok* (goat, buck); *rok* (n., skirt, dress); *rokke* (*'rɔkə*, dresses); *mond* (mouth); *'orde* (n., order); *tog* (n., draught of air; journey); *hok* (n., cage, kennel, pen, run (poultry)); *kol* (n., spot, stain, blaze (on horse's forehead), bull's eye); *'koppel* (v., couple, tie together), *rot* (rat), *stof* (v., dust; n., dust, material), *top* (v., top, lop, trim, clip; n., top, peak, summit, tip); *mos* (n., moss).

5. The short sound *u*, phonetic sign *œ*, always written *u* and pronounced not like the Eng. *u* in "but", but with lips well rounded like the vowel sound in Eng. "worm", very much shortened and rounded. E.g. *put* (n., well); *'putte* (wells); *ruk* (v. and n., jerk, tug; n., time); *'rukkie* (dimin. of *ruk*, a short time), *ge'rus* (a. and adv., calm(ly), peaceful(ly), from *rus*, v., rest); *lus* (n., desire, inclination); *bult* (n., bump; hillock, ridge); *druk* (v., press, print).

#### Nasalised Vowels

A distinctive feature of Afrikaans is the nasalisation of vowel sounds in certain positions. There is some variation between good speakers in the extent of this nasalisation, but most of them agree in nasalising the low vowels *a*, *e* (phonetic *ɛ*) and *o* (*ɔ*), when they are followed by an *n* and this *n* is followed by an *s*. When such a vowel is nasalised the *n* is not pronounced, but the nasal element is transferred to the vowel and the vowel is pronounced with the soft palate lowered, so that the breath escapes through both the nose and the mouth. At the same time the vowel is lengthened. In the phonetic script the nasalisation is indicated by placing the sign *̃*, known as a "tilde", over the sign for the vowel. E.g. *kans* (*kā:̃s*, n., chance), *mens* (*mē:̃s*, n., human being), *ons* (*ō:̃s*, pers. pron., we, us). In *mans*, pl. of *man*, the vowel is not nasalised. Similarly in *tekens*, pl. of *teken*, and in other cases where the *s* is the *s* of the plural form.

## CHAPTER III.

## THE DIPHTHONGS

1. The short diphthong *ai*, phonetic sign **ai**, pronounced more or less like the sound in Eng. "bite". E.g. *baie* (two syllables, *bai-e*, 'baie, a. and adv., many, much, very).

2. The long diphthong *aai*, phonetic sign **aii**, pronounced more or less like the sound in Eng. "buy", but longer and more open. E.g. *saai* (v., sow—of seed); *maai* (v., mow); *kwaai* (**kva:i** or **kvai:i**, fierce); *laai* (n., drawer (of table); v., load, charge (a battery)); *baai* (v., bathe; n., bay); *braai* (v., roast, grill, toast (bread)); *kraai* (v. and n., crow); *swaai* (v. and n., swing).

3. The diphthong *ei*, phonetic sign **ei**, written *ei* or *y*, and pronounced more or less like the sound in Eng. "they", but more open. E.g. *ry* (v., ride, go, run; n., row, line); *by* (bee); *fyn* (a. and adv., fine(ly), delicate(ly)); *brein* (brain; the Afr. word is pronounced almost like the Eng. word but the *r* is strongly trilled); *gly* (v., slip, slide, glide); *byt* (n. and v., bite); *be'wys* (n., proof; v., prove); *ge'lyk* (a. and adv., equal(ly)); *pyl* (n., arrow, dart; v., dart, go straight, go swiftly); *pyl* (pipe, tube); *myl* (mile); *lyn* (line, string, rope); *styg* (v., rise, climb, go up); *ryk* (a., rich; n., empire, kingdom); *vyl* (n. and v., file (metal instrument)); *wyl* (n., while, short time); *seil* (n. and v., sail); *stryd* (n., fight, battle). The fact that Afrikaans has two symbols here for the same sound introduces a spelling difficulty but makes it possible to distinguish in the written language between *reis* (v., travel; n., journey) and *rys* (n., rice; v., rise); *eis* (v. and n., demand, claim) and *ys* (n., ice; v., shudder); *lei* (v., lead; n., slate) and *ly* (suffer); *wei* (graze) and *wy* (ordain, dedicate, consecrate).

4. The diphthong *eeu*, phonetic sign **e:u**, which means that it starts with the long *ee* or *been* (bone, leg) and ends with the *oe* sound of *doen* (do). E.g. *eeu* (century, age); *leeu* (lion).

5. The short diphthong *oi*, phonetic sign **oi**, pronounced more or less like the sound in Eng. "boy" but with the first

sound well rounded. It is heard in words like *goingsak* ('xoiənsak, hessian) and *tooiings* ('toiəns, tatters).

6. The long diphthong *oi*, phonetic sign **oi:**, pronounced like No. 5 but with the **oi:** sound as the first sound. E.g. *nôi* (lady of the house, young lady, sweetheart—alternative form, *nôoi*).

7. The long diphthong *ooi*, phonetic sign **oi:**, starting with the long *oo* sound in *boom* and ending with the *ie* sound of *diep*. E.g. *nôoi* (see above); *mooi* (pretty, prettily); *gooi* (throw); *strooi* (n., straw; v., strew, scatter).

8. The long diphthong *oei*, phonetic sign **ui**, starting with the short *oe* of *doen* and ending with the *ie* sound of *diep*. E.g. *koei* (cow); *koeie* (two syllables, 'kuie, cows); *groei* (v., grow; n., growth); *moelik* ('muilek, difficult).

9. The long diphthong *ou*, phonetic sign **ou**, pronounced more or less like the sound in Eng. "owe". E.g. *fout* (fault); *nou* (now); *tou* (rope); 'toue (ropes); *klou* (n., claw, talon, paw; v., cling, stick); *sout* (n., salt; a., salty). The sound is sometimes represented by the letters *au* in proper names, e.g. *Australië* (**ou'stra:li:ə**, Australia).

10. The diphthong *ui*, phonetic sign **œy**, starting with the *u* sound of *brug* and ending in a sound like the **y** of *nuut*. This may cause some difficulty for the English student to reproduce. Try starting from the sound of the easy diphthong *ei* or *y*; then keep the tongue in the same position but protrude the lips and pronounce the sound with lips well rounded—the result should closely approximate to the Afr. diphthong *ui*. E.g. *huis* (house); *lui* (lazy, lazily); *muïs* (mouse); *ruik* (v. and n., smell); *spruit* (small stream); *ver'suim* (n. and v., neglect, delay); *spuit* (v., spout, squirt, shoot; n., syringe, squirt); *bui* (n., mood; shower (of rain)).

## CHAPTER IV.

## THE CONSONANTS

1. The following consonants are pronounced the same in Afrikaans as in English: *f, l, m, n, s*, and (where it occurs) *z*.
2. The following consonants are pronounced more or less the same in Afrikaans as in English: *b, d, k, p*, and *t*. The differences are that the slight *h* sound which often follows them in English is absent in the Afrikaans sounds, and that *p* and *k* are not as sharply pronounced as in English.
3. The sign *d* at the end of a word is pronounced *t*; *hard* (hard) is therefore pronounced just like *hart* (heart), viz. **hɑrt**. In the compar. *harder* (harder) where the *d* is followed by a vowel, the *d* is again heard: **'hɑrdər**. Similarly: *hoed* (**hʊt**, hat); *hoede* (**'hʊdə**, hats); *bed* (**bət**, bed); *tand* (**tɑnt**, tooth); *goed* (**xut**, good); *red* (**rət**, v., rescue, save); *rand* (**rɑnt**, ridge, edge); *gewoond aan* (**xə'vo:nt a:n**, accustomed to); *klad* (**klɑt**, n. and v., blot). Sometimes, as in *hard* and *hart*, the two spellings make it possible to distinguish in the written language between homonyms with different meanings. Cf. *stad* (**stat**, city) and *stat* (**stat**, native kraal or village). The *d* is also pronounced as *t* when followed by *s*, e.g. *gids* (**xəts**, n., guide).
4. Similarly the sign *b* at the end of a word, or when followed by *s*, is pronounced *p*. E.g. *Job* (**jəp**, proper name Job), *hebsug* (**'həpsəx**, greed, covetousness).
5. The letter *g* in Afrikaans usually represents a sound different from that of the Eng. *g*. It is a fricative, produced in the same place as the explosive sound *k*. In Scotch it appears as *ch* in words like "loch" and "nicht". The phonetic sign is **x**; the phonetic sign for the Eng. *g* is **g**. To produce **x**, pronounce *k*, keep the tongue in the same position but draw it slightly away from the palate, and force the breath through the opening. Avoid a throaty, rasping effect and produce a clear fricative. E.g. *goed* (**xut**, good); *genoeg* (**xə'nux**, enough); *liggaam* (**'ləxɑ:m**, body—note there are two *g* signs in order to keep the first vowel short); *glinster* (**'xlənstər**, v., glitter, sparkle);

*graan* (grain, corn); *grot* (grotto, cave); *maag* (n., stomach); *slag* (n., blow; v., slaughter); *vlug* (v., fly, escape; n., flight, escape).

6. In certain positions the *g* in Afrikaans is pronounced like the Eng. *g* of "go". This occurs where it comes after an *r* or an *l* and is itself followed by a weakly stressed short neutral *e* sound. E.g. *berge* (**'bɛrgə**, mountains) the pl. of *berg* (**bɛrx**, mountain); *burger* (**'bɛrgər**, burgher or citizen); *gevolge* (**xə'fɔlgə**, n., results) pl. of *gevolg* (**xə'fɔlx**). It also occurs in the numeral *nege* (**'nɛ:gə**, nine). In words of foreign origin the sound of Eng. *g* in "go" is represented by the letters *gh*, e.g. *ghienie* (**'gini**, guinea); *ghong* (**gɔŋ**, gong); *gholf* (**gɔlf**, golf)—to be distinguished from *golf* (**xɔlf**, n., wave).

7. The *h* in Afrikaans is more voiced than the Eng. *h* in "hand". The phonetic sign for the Eng. *h* is **h**; the phonetic sign for the Afr. *h* is **ɦ**. This sound almost eludes description; the student is advised to listen to spoken Afrikaans or to ask someone who knows the language to demonstrate the sound. One indication can, however, be given: in Afr. *hand* (**ɦɑnt**) the *h* is strongly sounded by a rush of breath at the beginning of the word; in Eng. "hand" (**hænd**) the flow of breath, represented by the *h*, is spread over the vowel and the rest of the word. E.g. *harve* (**'ɦɑ:və**, n., harbour); *hoof* (**ɦo:f**, head); *harp* (**ɦɑrp**, harp); *'haastig* (a. and adv., hasty, hurriedly, in a hurry); *'handel* (n. and v., trade; n., commerce; v., deal).

8. The *j* in Afrikaans is pronounced not like the Eng. *j* in "just" but like the Eng. *y* in "year". The phonetic sign is **j**. E.g. *jas* (overcoat); *jammer* (**'jɑmər**, sorry); *'jakkals* (jackal). In a few words of foreign origin the *j* may retain the Eng. pronunciation, phonetic sign **dʒ**. E.g. *jellie* (**'dʒɛli**, jelly).

9. In the combination *kn* the *k* is pronounced in Afrikaans, where in English it is silent. E.g. *knie* (**knɪ**, knee); *kniel* (**knɪl**, kneel); *knop* (**knɔp**, knob); *knoop* (**knɔ:p**, n., button, knot; v., knot); *knap* (**knɑp**, clever(ly)).

10. The compound letters *ng* represent the same sound in Afrikaans as in English in "long", phonetic sign **ŋ** (an *n* with the second leg lengthened). E.g. *sing* (**səŋ**, sing); *ding* (**dəŋ**, thing); *slang* (**slɑŋ**, snake); *kussing* (**'kɔsəŋ**, cushion, pillow). Exceptions occur where a prefix, ending in *-n*, e.g. *in-*, *on-*, and *aan-*, is joined to a word beginning with a *g*. In such

positions the *n* and the *g* are either pronounced separately, or the vowel before the *n* is nasalised. E.g. *ingedagte* ('ən-xə-dax-tə, or 'ǝ-xə-dax-tə, lost in thought, from *ge'dagte*, n., thought); *ongelukkig* ('ən-xə-lə-kəx, or 'ǝ-xə-lə-kəx, unhappy, unhappily, unfortunate(ly) from *ge'lukkig*, happy, from *ge'luk*, n., luck, happiness. In English the *g* in the combination *ng* is sometimes pronounced separately as *g*, e.g. in "finger" and "longer". This usually does not happen in Afrikaans. E.g. *vinger* ('fɛŋər, finger); *langer* ('lanər, longer). An exception is *angora* (aŋ'gɔra, angora).

11. The *r* in Afrikaans is strongly trilled with the tongue-tip and should always be pronounced where written. The guttural uvular *r* should be avoided. E.g. *brood* (bro:t, bread); *arm* (arm, a., poor; n., arm—part of body); *daar* (da:r, there); *raak* (v., touch, hit); *kraak* (n. and v., crack, creak); *rolprent* (n., film (of cinema), lit. rolling picture, from *rol*, v., roll, n., list, roll, and *prent*, n., picture); *bar'baar* (n., savage, barbarian); *bros* (a., crumbly); *krimp* (shrink); *kring* (n., circle, ring, walk of life; v., coil, circle); *krul* (n. and v., curl); *pret* (fun, pleasure); *prooi* (n., prey); *troep* (n., flock, herd, multitude, lot); *wurm* (worm).

12. The letter *v* usually represents the same sound as the letter *f*. This introduces spelling complications. Both signs occur at the beginning of words; only *f* at the end of words or syllables. E.g. *vlerk* (n., wing); *ver'skaf* (v., supply, furnish). The existence of the two signs makes it possible to distinguish in the written language between certain words of equal sound. E.g. *vee* (n., cattle; v., sweep) and *fee* (n., fairy); *vel* (n., skin; sheet—of paper; v., chop or knock down) and *fel* (fierce(ly), severe(ly)); *vonds* (fɔn(t)s, n., find, discovery) and *fonds* (fund).

The sign *v* in the middle of a word is sometimes pronounced like the Eng. *v* in "van", phonetic sign *v*. These are usually words of foreign origin, e.g. *alluviaal* (alyvi'a:l, alluvial) and *invalide* (ənvə'lida, n., invalid). Sometimes there are even alternative spellings, e.g. *individu* and *individu* (əndivi'dy, n., individual), *revolusie* and *rewolusie* (revo'lysi, revolution).

13. The letter *w* in Afrikaans is usually pronounced like the Eng. *v*. E.g. *water* ('va:tər, water); *wag* (vax, v., wait; n., guard); *warm* (varm, warm); *waag* (v., venture, risk); *wel* (well, alright); *wys* (wise(ly)); 'wyse (n., manner). In

some combinations, viz. *tw*, *kw*, and *sw*, the *w* can be pronounced either like the Eng. *v*, or somewhat like the Eng. *w*, a sound of which the phonetic sign is *v*. E.g. *kwaad* (kva:t or kvat, cross, angry); *swaar* (sva:r or sva:r, heavy, difficult); *swaard* (sword); *sweer* (n., sore, ulcer). But even in these words the pronunciation *v* is to be preferred.

14. The combination *sj* is pronounced like *sh* in Eng. "shall", phonetic sign *ʃ* (an elongated *s*). E.g. *sjieling* ('ʃiləŋ, shilling); *sjokolade* (ʃoko'la:də, chocolate). The letter *g* in words of foreign origin sometimes represents this sound, e.g. *genie* (ʃe'ni, genius).

15. The combination *tj* has two pronunciations. At the beginning of words it has the sound of *ch* in Eng. "cheque", phonetic sign *tʃ*. E.g. *tjek* (tʃɛk, cheque). In diminutives the *tj* is usually pronounced more or less like *k*. The sound is actually a different sound, the palatal *k*, indicated by the phonetic sign *c*. E.g. *tafeltjie* ('ta:fəlci, a little table, from *tafel*); *kaartjie* ('ka:rci, n., ticket, little card or map, from *kaart*); *fluitjie* ('flœyci, a little whistle, from *fluit*, v. and n., whistle). The same sound, i.e. the palatal *k* or *c*, is represented by *dj* in diminutives, where the original word ends in *d* and the diminutive is formed by adding the suffix *-jie*. The *d* in this position is pronounced as *t*, so that the *dj* is equal to *tj*. E.g. *wêreldjie* ('vɛ:rəlci, n. little world); *beeldjie* ('be:lci, little image, from *beeld*, image).



## CHAPTER V.

## ASSIMILATION AND STRESS

*Assimilation*

Assimilation—a change brought about in one sound by the proximity of another sound—plays a large role in Afrikaans. A few such cases are indicated here.

1. An *n* followed by an *m* or a *b* often changes to *m*, unless the word is particularly stressed. E.g. *ommoonlik* (impossible) is pronounced *om'moontlik*.

2. An *n* followed by a *k*, as in English, often changes to *ŋ*. E.g. *ink* (əŋk, ink); *'anker* (anchor).

3. A *p* followed by a *b* often changes to a *b*. E.g. *klipbank* (a rocky ledge or stratum, from *klip*, stone, rock, and *bank*, bench, bank) is pronounced *'klibbank*.

4. A *t* followed by a *d* often changes to a *d*. E.g. *potdeksel* (lid of a pot, from *'deksel*, lid, and *pot*, pot) is pronounced *'poddeksel*.

5. The *h* of the suffix *-heid* (akin to Eng. “-hood” in “knighthood”) is sometimes dropped, especially after a preceding *g*, unless the word bears particular stress. E.g. *nodigheid* (necessity, from *'nodig*, necessary) is pronounced *'nodigeid*.

6. Diminutives, some of which form an exception to the general principle of more or less phonetic spelling in Afrikaans, also contain some phenomena of assimilation and pronunciation, of which two must be mentioned here.

Where a word ends in a *d* or a *t*, preceded by an *n*, this *n* in the diminutive, because it is followed by a palatal *k* (viz. *ç*), becomes a palatal nasal sound *ɲ*, indicated by the phonetic sign *ɲ* (i.e. a *j* with the second leg of an *n*). This is the sound heard in the French pronunciation of “Boulogne”. In pronouncing *n*, the tip of the tongue is behind the top teeth; in pronouncing *ɲ*, the tip of the tongue is behind the lower teeth. *n* becomes *ɲ* before the *ç* represented by *dj* and *tj* in diminutives.

The second phenomenon is that in some diminutives the palatal vowel *i* often creeps in before the diminutive suffix, or before the *n* that has changed to *ɲ*.

Here are some examples of both phenomena: *handjie* (little hand, from *hand*) is pronounced *'ɦainɲi*; *hondjie* (little dog, from *hond*) is pronounced *'ɦoinɲi*; *paadjie* (little road or path, from *pad*, road, path—with lengthened vowel) is pronounced *'pa:ɲi*.

*Stress*

The stress in Afrikaans words should not present difficulties but there are some words where the student will have to be careful.

1. Usually prefixes and suffixes are unstressed, and the stress falls on the root-part of the word. E.g. *'woedend* (furious, from *'woede*, fury); *be'lewe* (v., experience, live through, from *lewe*, v., live, be alive; n., life); *ont'hoof* (v., behead, from *hoof*, n., head).

2. As an exception, in separable compound verbs (see Chap. XIV) the stress does fall on the prefix. E.g. *'uitskel* (scold, abuse, from *skel*, v., scold, abuse, call names). In some words the stress is on the suffix. E.g. *tuinier* (*tœy'nir*, gardener, from *tuin*, garden); *bloemis* (*blu'məs*, florist, from *bloem*, Dutch for “flower”; the Afr. word is *blom*).

3. The addition of a suffix can cause a shift of stress. E.g. *'geesdrif* (enthusiasm, from *gees*, spirit, and *drif*, passion), but *gees'driftig* (enthusiastic(ally)); *'bouwal* (ruin(s), from *bou*, build, and *val*, v. and n., fall, drop) but *bou'vallig* (dilapidated, in ruins).

4. In words of non-teutonic origin the stress is generally on the last syllable. Here the stress in Afrikaans differs from that in English. E.g. *stu'dent* (student); *univer'seel* (universal(ly)); *prin'ses* (princess); *tele'gram* (telegram); *tele'foon* (n., telephone); *direk'teur* (director); *ele'gant* (elegant(ly)); *defini'tief* (definite(ly)); *grammo'foon* (gramophone); *kon'trak* (n., contract); *kon'tras* (n., contrast); *gene'raal* (n., general); *alma'nak* (almanac); *si'pres* (cypress); *fi'guur* (n., figure); *for'tuin* (fortune); *pa'leis* (palace); *spesi'aal* (special(ly)). Note also the following: *mi'nister* (n., minister of the cabinet); *bam'boes* (bamboo); *ka'talogus* (catalogue); *se'nator* (senator); *oranje*

(o'ranjə, orange—the colour); aka'demie (academy); kata'strofe (catastrophe). The student will already have noted ar'tikel and fa'milie, and should add to the list as he comes across similar words with difference of stress in Afrikaans and in English.

## CHAPTER VI.

## SYLLABICATION

Because of the device in Afrikaans spelling to indicate long and short vowels in closed and in open syllables, and for the purpose of splitting words at the end of a line, it is necessary to indicate some rules for the division of words into syllables.

1. Since Afrikaans spelling is largely phonetic, every word contains as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs. E.g. *nate* (n., seams, pl. of *naat*) contains two syllables: *na-te*; *paaië* (roads, paths, pl. of *pad*) also contains two syllables, the *aai* being a diphthong: *paai-e*; *boere* (farmers, pl. of *boer*) also contains two syllables, the *oe* representing a single vowel: *boe-rë*.

2. Where a vowel follows a vowel or a diphthong, the division falls between them. E.g. *'draer* (one who carries, from *dra*, carry): *dra-er*; *'bouer* (builder, from *bou*, build): *bou-er*; *baie* (many, much, very): *bai-e*; *'koue* (n., cold, chilliness—not the disease—from *koud*, a., cold): *kou-e*; *'vrae* (n., questions, pl. of *vraag*, n., question, from *vra*, v., ask): *vra-e*.

3. Where a diaeresis is used, the division falls just before it. E.g. *voël* (bird): *vo-ël*; *koeël* (bullet): *koe-ël*.

4. Where two syllables are separated by a single consonant, the consonant usually goes with the second syllable, and the first syllable is open. E.g. *'spreker* (speaker, from *spreek*, v., speak): *spre-ker*; *'moeite* (trouble, care): *moei-te*; *'enige* (a., any, some): *e-ni-ge*.

5. Where two syllables are separated by two consonants or by a double consonant, the division usually falls between the two consonants, and the first syllable is closed. E.g. *'monde* (mouths, pl. of *mond*): *mon-de*; *'matte* (mats, carpets, pl. of *mat*): *met-te*; *per'soon* (person): *per-soon*. There are some exceptions. Where the two consonants are *tr*, *kw*, or (after an unstressed syllable) *dr*, *kl* or *kr*, the division falls before the first of these consonants. E.g. *neu'traal* (neutral(ly)): *neu-traal*; *ma'tras* (mattress): *ma-tras*; *a'kwarium* (aquarium):

*a-kwa-ri-um*; *ba'klei* (v., fight): *ba-klei*; *sakra'ment* (sacrament); *sa-kra-ment*.

6. Where two syllables are separated by three or more consonants, the division usually falls after the first consonant. E.g. *'monster* (monster, sample): *mon-ster*; *ek'skuus* (n., excuse; also used for "pardon me"): *ek-skuus*. Where the consonants *str* occur after an unstressed syllable, however, the division falls before the *s*. E.g. *magi'straat* (magistrate): *ma-gi-sstraat*.

7. Prefixes and suffixes form separate syllables. E.g. *be'spreek* (v., discuss, from *spreek*, v., talk): *be-spreek*; *her'enig* (re-unite, from *'enig*, only, unique, from *een*, one): *her-e-nig*; *ver'eers* (firstly, for the time being, from *eers*, first): *ver-eers*; *'aartsvyand* (arch-enemy, from *'vyand*, enemy): *aarts-vy-and*; *ver'geetagtig* (forgetful, from *ver'geet*, v., forget): *ver-geet-ag-tig*; *ge'selskap* (company, conversation, from *ge'sels*, v., converse, chat): *ge-sel-skap*; *'ouderdom* (age, from *oud*, old): *ou-der-dom*; *'boerdery* (farming, farm, from *boer*, v., farm): *boer-de-ry*.

8. Compound words must be divided into their component parts first, and then divided according to the rules given. E.g. *'medeklinker* (n., consonant, lit. "with-vowel", from *'klinker*, vowel, from *klink*, v., sound): *mede-klinker*, then *me-de-klink-er*; *ek'samenvraestel* (set of examination questions, examination paper, from *ek'samen*, examination, and *'vraestel*, from *vrae*, pl. of *vraag*, question, and *stel*, n., set): *eksamen-vraestel*, then *ek-sa-men-vra-e-stel*; *be'langstelling* (interest in something, from *be'langstel*, v., be interested, from *be'lang*, interest, importance): *be-lang-stelling*, then *be-lang-stel-ling*; *'oppervlakke* (n., surface, area, from *'opper*, a word which here means more or less "upper", and *vlakke*, field, from *vlak*, n., plane): *opper-vlakke*, then *op-per-vlak-te*; *'spinnekop* (spider, from *spin*, v., spin): *spin-ne-kop*, then *spin-ne-kop*.

## CHAPTER VII.

## SPELLING

The spelling of Afrikaans has been regularised and laid down by the authoritative body, the *Suid-Afrikaanse Akademie vir Wetenskap en Kuns* (Science and Art), and is embodied in their publication *Afrikaanse Woordelys en Spelreëls* (Word List and Spelling Rules), of which the latest edition the sixth, revised edition, appeared in 1953, published by the *Nasionale Boekhandel Beperk*, Cape Town.

As already indicated, the spelling of Afrikaans is practically phonetic; the few exceptions can easily be mastered. Some have already been mentioned, e.g. the *-d* and *-b* at the end of a word; pronounced *-t* and *-p* respectively; and some of the diminutives. The student is also reminded of the spelling device to indicate whether the vowels *a*, *e*, *o* and *u* are long or short, i.e. the dropping of one long vowel sign in an open syllable, and the doubling of a consonant to close a syllable on a short vowel. Here are some further rules.

1. The diaeresis is used where it is necessary to separate vowels which otherwise could be mispronounced. E.g. *oë* (eyes, pl. of *oog*, eye) without the diaeresis would be *oe*, one sound; *geëet* (eaten, from *eet*, v. eat) would be *geet*, with one very long *e*. The use of the diaeresis is specially necessary where two words would otherwise be confused. E.g. *hoë* (high, inflected, attr. form of *hoog*, high) and *hoe* (how); *voël* (bird) and *voel* (v., feel); *leër* (army) and *leer* (v., learn, teach; n., ladder; leather; doctrine or teaching). The diaeresis is not necessary where no confusion can arise. E.g. *dae* (days, pl. of *dag*, day)—*ae* never represents one syllable, hence the word *dae* can only be pronounced *da-e*; *'eie* (a., own): *ei-e*; *koeie* (cows): *koei-e*; *rye* (rows): *ry-e*; *vroue* (women, pl. of *vrou*): *vrou-e*; *'leuen* (n., lie): *leu-en*. An exception occurs in the case of *ae* in certain words of foreign origin. E.g. *heksaëder* (hexahedron); *tetraëder* (tetrahedron).

2. Afrikaans and English differ in the use of the so-called apostrophe comma. In Afrikaans it never occurs in possessive

cases, but is, as in English, sometimes used to indicate an elision. E.g. 'n (the article "a" or "an", shortened from *een*, one); 'g'n (none, no, shortened from *geen*); 't (it, shortened from *het*, the Dutch article, "the," as in the phrase *dit is om 't ewe*, it is all one, it is all equal); 's'n (a poss. particle, shortened from *syne*); *daar's* (there is, shortened from *daar is*).

But the sign has further uses in Afrikaans. It is used in forming the plurals in -s of some nouns ending in a stressed long -a. E.g. *pa's* (fathers, from *pa*): without the ' the word would become *pas*, n., pass, step); *ma's* (mothers, from *ma*): without the ' the word would be confused with *mas*, n., mast. Note that the *a* in *pas* and *mas* is short; the ' in *pa's* and *ma's* indicates that the *a* is long. Similarly: *hobo's* (oboes, pl. of 'hobo), *balju's* (sheriffs, pl. of *bal'ju*).

3. Two accent marks are used in Afrikaans, the gravis (˘) and the acute (´). The gravis is used to indicate vowel length in a few short words. E.g. *nè* (nɛ, meaning: is that so!, or isn't that so?); *hè* (ɦɛ, an exclamation indicating surprise). It is also used to indicate stress. E.g. *of . . . of* (either . . . or); *nòg . . . nòg* (neither . . . nor); *gèsel* ('xɛ:səl, v., flog), to be distinguished from *gesèl* (xə'səl, n., companion).

The acute accent mark is used to indicate stress in a few other words. E.g. *dié* (this, that) as distinct from *die* (the); *ná die fees* (after the feast or festival); *ek wil dit doen* (I do want to do it).

4. Although the use of the hyphen is more standardized in Afrikaans than in English, the general principles governing its use are the same. Differing to some extent from the custom in English is the practice of using the hyphen in Afrikaans in the following cases:

*Suid-Afrika*, *Suid-Afri'kaanse* (South African), *Agter-Indië* (Further, lit. behind, India), *Groot-Brit'tanje* (Great Britain), *Brits-Oos-Afrika* (British East Africa), *Klein-Asië* (Asia Minor).

Coupled names of some countries. E.g. *Nieu-Seeland* (New Zealand).

In some cases where too many vowels come together and where a hyphen is preferred to a diaeresis. E.g. *Drie-eenheid* (Trinity—lit. three-oneness or three-unity); *'eenheid*, unity, (from *een*, one); *na-aap* (v. ape, from *aap*, n. ape); *see-eend* (sea-duck), *wa-as* (axle or axle tree of a wagon, from *wa*, wagon, and *as*, axle).

To avoid ambiguity. E.g. *ru-gare* (cotton thread, lit. rough thread): *rugare* would be *rug-are*, veins of the back of the body, from *aar*, n., vein, pl. *are*, and *rug*, back. (*Aar* can also mean "ear" of corn, etc.)

To separate the parts of long compounds that might otherwise cause some difficulty. E.g. *seekus-inboorlingstam* (tribe of natives inhabiting a sea coast, from *see*, sea; *kus*, coast; *'inboorling*, n., native; and *stam*, tribe. (*Stam* can also mean "trunk" of a tree.)

5. Afrikaans and English also resemble each other in the spelling of compound words as one word, especially where the compound word represents a single concept, but Afrikaans goes further in this compounding process, so that we come across words like *'ensovoorts* (et cetera, lit. and so forth—abbreviation, *ens.*); *'rentekoers* (rate of interest, lit. interest-rate); *ge'bedeboek* (prayer-book, from *ge'bede*, prayers, pl. of *ge'bed*, with lengthening of vowel in the pl.); and even *'leuensversekeringsmaatskappy* (life-insurance company, from *lewe*, life; *ver'sekering*, insurance, from *ver'seker*, insure; and *maatskap'py* (company)).

Geographical names, of which the second part is a group name, are similarly spelt as one word. Words like *rivier* (river), *straat* (street), *laan* (avenue), *weg* (road), and *baai* (bay), are joined to the name proper. E.g. *Vaalrivier*, *Kerkstraat* (Church Street), *Tafelbaai* (Table Bay). Exceptions occur where the first word is an ordinal numeral. E.g. *Eerste Straat* (First Street), *Derde Laan* (Third Avenue).

Compounds where the first part indicates the material of which the second part is made are written as one word. E.g. *'grasdak* (grass or thatched roof, from *gras*, grass, and *dak*, roof), *'klipmuur* (stone wall, from *klip*, stone, and *muur*, wall), *'ysterpaal* (iron pole, from *'yster*, iron, and *paal*, pole).

Special rules apply to the word *toe* (towards). When preceded by adverbs of place, the two words are joined, e.g. *'agtertoe* (backwards, from *'agter*, behind, at the back), *'boontoe* (upwards, from *bo*, above, at the top), *'hiernatoe* (this way, from *hier*, here). When preceded by nouns or adverbs of time, the words are not joined, e.g. *dorp toe* (towards town, to town, from *dorp*, town), *huis toe* (home, homewards, in sense of going home, from *huis*, house, home), *tot vandag toe* (up to today, till today, from *tot*, till).

6. For purposes of spelling, words of foreign origin are divided into three groups: (a) Those in frequent use are spelt phonetically according to Afrikaans rules, where possible, e.g. *krieket* (cricket). (b) Those that are still felt as foreign, or of which the spelling according to Afrikaans rules would be inconvenient, and certain proper names, retain their traditional spelling, e.g. *garage*, *Ceylon*. (c) Those that fall between groups (a) and (b)—here two forms of spelling are allowed, e.g. *Chinees* and *Sjinees* (ʃiˈneːs, Chinese). These are best learned as they occur.

## CHAPTER VIII.

## PUNCTUATION

Punctuation in Afrikaans is, on the whole, similar to that in English, although there is a tendency to use some signs more frequently.

The comma is used both for rhythmical and grammatical reasons, *inter alia* in the following cases:

1. Between verbs belonging to different sentences or phrases. E.g. *Die name wat ons kon vind, is die volgende.* (The names that we could find, are the following; volgende, 'fɔlxəndə, following from *volg*, v., follow.)
2. Before some adverbial clauses, following a principal clause. E.g. *Ek sal kom, al reën dit* (I shall come even if it rains).
3. Before *en* (and) where it joins two sentences of different construction or contrasting addition. E.g. *Ek was siek, en sy het gemaak asof sy dit nie sien nie* (I was ill, and she pretended not to see it—more lit. behaved, or made as if she did not see it).
4. Between *of . . . of*, and between *nòg . . . nòg* sentences.
5. Before *want* (because), *maar* (but), and *dog* (but)—but here the use of the comma is optional.

A few particular differences between Afrikaans and English punctuation should be noted:

1. Closing quotation marks are placed at the top of the line, but opening quotation marks are placed at the bottom of the line. E.g. „*Goeimôre, Jan,*” *het ek gesê,* „*waarheen gaan jy?*” (“Good morning, Jan,” I said, “where are you going to?”)
2. The comma in a date between the name of the month and the year is omitted in Afrikaans. E.g. *15 Jan. 1954* (Eng. 15 Jan., 1954).
3. Titles and similar designations before a personal name—e.g. *mnr.* (Mr., from *me'neer*, sir, mister); *dr.* (Dr., from *dokter*, doctor); *mev.* or *mevr.* (Mrs., from *me'vrouw*); *mej.* (Miss, from *me'juffrou*)—are written with a small letter, except where they occur at the beginning of a sentence. E.g. *Mnr. en mev. Botha het vir ons kom kuier* (Mr. and Mrs. Botha came to visit us; *kuier*, 'kœyər, v. and n., visit). Certain high titles,

however, retain the capital letter even in mid-sentence. E.g. *Hy het Prins Bernhard ontmoet* (He met Prince Bernhard; *ont'moet*, v., meet).

4. The indefinite article 'n is always written with a small letter, even when it occurs at the beginning of a sentence. At the beginning of a sentence the word following the 'n is written with a capital letter. E.g. 'n *Belangrike besoeker word verwag* (An important visitor is expected; *be'langrik*, important; *be'soeker*, visitor, from *be'soek*, visit, from *soek*, v., seek; *ver'wag*, v., expect, from *wag*, wait; for *word*, see Chap. XXVI).

5. The word *ek* (I), unlike the English pronoun "I", is never spelt with a capital letter in mid-sentence.

## CHAPTER IX.

## ARTICLES; PLURALS; NUMERALS; DAYS OF THE WEEK

*Articles, Definite and Indefinite*

The definite article in Afrikaans is *die*, and like English "the" it is used before all nouns. E.g. *die seun* (the son, the boy); *die dogter* (the daughter); *die man* (the man); *die vrou* (the woman, the wife); *die tafel* (the table); *die hond* (the dog); *die papier* (*di pa'pir*, the paper—not newspaper); *die kind* (the child); *die vroujie* (*di 'frouci*, the little woman); *die end* (the end). It is always pronounced *di*.

Remnants of Dutch *het* (in the form 't) and *de* are sometimes heard. E.g. *Dit is vir my om 't ewe* (It is all one to me, I don't mind—'ewe, equal(ly)). *Waar de drommel is die hamer?* (Where the deuce is the hammer?)

The indefinite article is 'n (a, an), and it is used before all singular nouns, irrespective of whether they start with a vowel or a consonant. In the speech of some Afrikaners there is some variation in the pronunciation of 'n according to the sound following it, but the student will not go far wrong if he consistently pronounces it ə, like the unstressed English indefinite article "a". E.g. 'n *kind* (ə *kənt*, a child); 'n *aand* (ə *ɑnt*, an evening); 'n *brief* (a letter); 'n *hond* (a dog).

Definite and indefinite articles are sometimes used in Afrikaans in a way that differs from English usage. These cases should be noted as they occur in the following pages.

*Plurals in -e*

Plurals of nouns are formed in various ways in Afrikaans, e.g. by adding *-e*, *-s*, *-ens*, *-ere* or *-ers*, and in some cases there are accompanying changes. In a large group of nouns the plural is formed by the addition of *-e*. The group includes:

1. The majority of monosyllabic nouns.
2. Most nouns of more than one syllable with the stress on the last syllable.

3. A small number of nouns of more than one syllable where the stress does not fall on the last syllable. These are mostly nouns that end in the suffixes *-aris*, *-kus* and *-heid*.

About these groups the following must be noted:

1. Among the monosyllables, forming the plural in *-e*, various changes sometimes occur in the spelling.

If the syllable ends in two consonants, or if it contains the vowels *ie* or *oe*, or a diphthong, *-e* is added, and there is no further change. E.g. *tand* (tooth)—*tande* (teeth); *wiel* (wheel)—*wiele*; *stoel* (chair)—*stoele*; *tou* (rope)—*toue*; *tong* (tongue)—*tonge*.

If the syllable contains a long *aa*, *ee*, *oo* or *uu*, written with the vowel sign doubled, followed by a single consonant, an *-e* is added and one of the vowel signs is dropped, because it then occurs in an open syllable where only one vowel sign is needed to indicate the long vowel. E.g. *poot* (paw, leg of table, etc.)—*pote*; *been* (bone, leg of human being)—*bene*; *muur* (wall)—*mure*; *plaas* (farm)—*plase*. (There is also a verb *plaas*, place.)

If the syllable contains a short *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, or *u*, followed by a single consonant, an *-e* is added, and the consonant is doubled, in order to keep the syllable closed. E.g. *dam* (dam)—*damme*; *vlam* (flame)—*vlamme*; *pit* (seed, pip, stone of fruit)—*pitte*; *sin* (sentence)—*sinne*; *pen* (pen)—*penne*; *hut* (hut)—*hutte*; *pot* (pot)—*potte*. If the *t* of *pot* were not doubled in the plural, the word would become *pote*, which is the plural of *poot*.

Monosyllables ending in *-ee* take a diaeresis on the second *e* in the plural. E.g. *see* (sea)—*seë*; *tree* (pace)—*treë*. The diaeresis indicates that there are two syllables, and the single *e* in the first syllable is sufficient to indicate the long *e* sound.

Those ending in *-ie* have an *-e* added with a diaeresis to indicate where the syllables are divided. E.g. *knie* (**kni**, knee)—*knieë* (**'knië**).

Some exceptional cases will be dealt with later.

2. The rules given above apply also to nouns of more than one syllable with the stress on the last syllable. E.g. *rivier* (**rə'fir**, river)—*riviere*; *liniaal* (**lini'a:l**, ruler for drawing lines)—*liniale*; *telegram* (**tele'xram**, telegram)—*telegramme*; *kopie* (copy)—*kopieë*; *be'roep* (profession, calling, from *roep*, v. call)—*beroepe*; *ver'lies* (loss)—*verliese*; *ge'val* (case, incident)—*gevalle*. Where necessary, stresses will be indicated by the

sign used in the phonetic alphabet (') before the syllable to be stressed. These signs must, of course, not be used in translating the exercises or in ordinary writing.

3. The rule about doubling the consonant also applies to polysyllabic nouns in *-aris* and *-kus* where the stress does not fall on the final syllable but the plural is still formed by adding *-e*. E.g. *sekre'taris* (secretary)—*sekretarisse*; *po'litikus* (politician, from *poli'tiek*, politics)—*politikusse*. (There is an alternative pl. : *politici*, **po'litisi**). Polysyllables in this group, ending in *-heid*, change *-heid* to *-hede*. E.g. *'kleinigheid* (trifle, from *klein*, small)—*kleinighede*; *besigheid* (business, occupation, from *'besig*, busy)—*besighede*.

#### Numerals : 0-10

*Nul* (nought); *een* (one); *twee* (**tvē**: or **tve:**, two); *drie* (three); *vier* (four); *vyf* (five); *ses* (six); *'sewe* (seven); *agt* or *ag* (eight); *nege* (**'ne:gə**, nine); *tien* (ten). From *een* is formed *'eensaam* (lonely). The same suffix occurs in *'langsaam* (slow, slowly—from *lang*, long), and *'onverdraagsaam* (intolerant, opposite of *ver'draagsaam*, tolerant, from *ver'dra*, v., tolerate, endure).

#### Days of the Week

The stress is always on the first syllable. *Maandag* (Monday), *Dinsdag* (**'dɔnsdax**, Tuesday), *Woensdag* (Wednesday), *Donderdag* (Thursday), *Vrydag* (Friday), *Saterdag* (Saturday), *Sondag* (Sunday).

#### Vocabulary

*'n paar*, a few.

*baie*, **'baie**, a. and adv., many, much, very.

*en*, and.

*swak*, **svak** or **svak**, weak.

*vuil*, dirty.

#### Exercise 1. Translate into English :

Die man. 'n Vrou. Agt vroue. 'n Tafel. Vier honde. 'n Kind. 'n Hamer. Baie aande. 'n Brief. Die tand. Skoon borde. Mooi ringe. Groot wiele. 'n Groot stoel. 'n Paar

koeie. 'n Groot plaas. Sterk bene. 'n Dik muur. Groot damme. Baie boeke. 'n Paar penne. Groot potte. 'n Diep put. Die see. Ses treë. Skoon knieë. 'n Groot rivier. Een liniaal. 'n Dun kombers. 'n Kort telegram. Nege kopieë. Die sekretaris. Baie politici. Dinsdag. Donderdag. Saterdag. 'n Skoon kombuis.

*Exercise 1a. Translate into Afrikaans :*

The child. A man. The woman. The big table. A dog. The big hammer. An evening. The long letter. Three teeth. A pretty ring. The plate. Many wheels. A few chairs. A big cow. Five farms. A strong rope. The thin wall. Ten dams. A few paces. The pen. A few pots. Many deep wells. Ten dogs. Thick blankets. A few copies. The short letter. A few trifles. A politician and two secretaries. A short ruler. A weak wall. A dirty knee. Monday. Wednesday evening. Friday. Sunday.

CHAPTER X.

*IS AND HET; PERSONAL PRONOUNS; POSSESSIVE FORMS OF NOUNS; VERBS—SIMPLE PRESENT, PAST AND FUTURE TENSES; PLURALS; NUMERALS; NAMES OF MONTHS*

*The verbs is and het*

In Afrikaans the verb "to be" is *om te wees* and the present tense is *is* (əs). (There is also a noun *wees*, "orphan"). The verb "to have" is *om te hê* (hē) and the present tense is *het*. Verbs in Afrikaans do not change for person or number; hence there are no separate forms like "am", "are", "is", or "have" and "has".

*Personal Pronouns, Nominative and Objective Case*

The personal pronouns in Afrikaans, nominative case, are: *ek* (I), *jy* or *u* (sing. you), *hy* (he), *sy* (she), *dit* (it); *ons* (ŏ:s, we), *julle* or *u* (pl. you), *hulle* (they). The polite form of the second pronoun, *u*, is used in addressing superiors, strangers and elderly people, and in the business world. In some relationships the *u* is felt to be too formal, e.g. in addressing one's parents; and then the speaker prefers to repeat the name of the person addressed or the word indicating the relationship, e.g. *'vader* (father), *'moeder* (mother), *oom* (uncle) or *'tante* (aunt). The forms *julle* and *hulle* are sometimes shortened to *jul* and *hul*. *Dit* also means "this", and *dit is* is often contracted to *dis*. Note also the nouns, *ons* (ounce) and *dis* (dish—at table).

In the objective case only four of the personal pronouns change, viz. *ek*—*my* (me), *jy*—*jou* (you), *hy*—*hom* (him), and *sy*—*haar* (her). The rest retain the form of the nominative. Hence we have the following: *Ek sien jou* (I see you—sing.); *Jy sien hom* (You—sing.—see him); *Hy sien haar* (He sees her); *Sy sien my* (She sees me); but: *Hy sien ons* (He sees us); *Ek sien u* (I see you—sing. or pl.); *Sy sien julle* (She sees you—pl.); *Ons sien hulle* (We see them); and *Ek weet dit* (I know it; *weet*, v., know). With the exception of *dit* the



same forms are retained after prepositions. E.g. *Ek praat met hom* (I talk to him; *met* usually means "with"); *Sy praat van ons* (She speaks of, or about us); *Hy skryf aan my* (He writes to me). Where *dit* is concerned, the preposition plus *dit* changes to *daar* (there) plus the preposition, written as one word. E.g.

*van* (of) plus *dit* : *Ek praat 'daarvan*. (I talk of, or about it—lit. thereof.)

*deur* (through) plus *dit* : *Dit is 'n tuin. Ek loop daardeur*. (This is a garden. I walk through it.)

*op* (on) plus *dit* : *Hier is 'n stoel. Ek sit daarop*. (Here is a chair. I sit on it.)

*aan* (of, to, about) plus *dit* : *Ek dink daaraan*. (I think of, or about it.)

In the case of the prepositions *met* (with), *tot* (to), and *vir* (for), the prepositions also change: *met* becomes *-mee*, *tot* becomes *-toe*, and *vir* becomes *-voor*. E.g.

*met* plus *dit* : *Ek het 'n pen. Ek skryf daarmee*. (I have a pen. I write with it.)

? *tot* plus *dit* : *Hy praat oor sy plan en oor'reed my daartoe*. (He talks about his plan and persuades me to it.)

*vir* plus *dit* : *Die siekte is gevaarlik. Ons is bang daarvoor*. (The disease is dangerous. We are afraid of it.)

Note: *ge'vaarlik*, dangerous, from *ge'vaar*, n., danger; *'siekte*, illness, from *siek*, a., sick, ill. Several nouns are formed by the addition of *-te* to adjectives, e.g. *'hoogte* (height, hill, from *hoog*, high), *'vlakke* (plain, stretch, from *vlak*, shallow, flat), *'diepte* (depth, from *diep*, deep), *'menigte* (crowd, multitude, from *'menige*, attr. a., many), *'warmte* (warmth, from *warm*, warm). Similar to them is *'hitte* (heat). Note also: *bang vir*, afraid of.

The forms with *daar-* can refer to the plural as well as to the singular: *daarvan*, e.g., can mean "of them", *daarmee* "with them", etc.

An exception to the rule given above is the expression *met dit in ge'dagte* (with this in mind, lit. in thought, from *dink*, v., think).

#### Possessive Forms of Nouns

The possessive case of nouns in Afrikaans is formed in one

of two ways: (1) by using *se* after the noun, or (2) by using *van* (of) before the noun. English has similar forms. E.g. *Dit is Jan se jas* (This is Jan's overcoat). *Dit is die jas van Jan* (This is the overcoat of Jan). To this must be added the independent form, consisting of the noun indicating the possessor, followed by *s'n* (sən). E.g. *Dit is Jan s'n* (This is Jan's).

#### Verbs—Simple Present Tense

The simple present tense in Afrikaans usually consists of the basic form of the verb only, and remains the same for all persons and numbers. E.g. *Ek skryf* (I write),  *jy skryf* (you write), *hy skryf* (he writes), etc. In certain verbs, known as separable compounds, complications occur which will be dealt with in Chap. XIV.

#### Verbs—Simple Past Tense

To form the past tense of regular verbs, the auxiliary *het* is used, plus the past participle of the verb. Most verbs in Afrikaans are "weak", and the past participle is formed by prefixing *ge-* to the verb. E.g. *Ek het geskryf* (I wrote, or I have written: "I have written" is formed in the same way as the Afrikaans form). For the placing of the *ge-* in separable verbs, see Chap. XIV.

In two groups of verbs the past participle is formed without the *ge-*, and the past tense is indicated by the *het* only. All these verbs are stressed on the last syllable (or second part):

(1) Those beginning with a certain group of prefixes: *be-*, *ge-*, *er-*, *her-*, *ver-*, and *ont-*. The existing prefix serves the purpose of the customary *ge-*, and the past participle has the same form as the basic form of the verb. E.g. *be'staan* (exist, from *staan*, v., stand): *Hulle bestaan* (They exist)—*Hulle het bestaan* (They existed). Likewise: *be'skerm* (shelter, protect, from *skerm*, n., screen); *gesels* (xə'sels, converse, chat); *erken* (acknowledge, admit; from *ken*, v., know); *herken* (recognize); *ontmoet* (meet); *verstaan* (understand); *verlang na* (long for); *bedank* (thank; decline, refuse, resign, from *dank*, v., thank, n., thanks, gratitude). A few verbs, beginning with *her-*, have the stress on the first part, and do take the *ge-* in forming the past participle. E.g. *'herberg* (accom-

modate, put up, house; cf. *'herberg*, n., inn, tavern, accommodation; and *'herkou* (ruminant, chew the cud, from *kou*, v., chew).

(2) Those known as inseparable compounds (see Chap. XIV). Here, also, since the stress is on the second part, the first part serves the purpose of the customary *ge-*. E.g. *vol'hard* (persevere): *Ek volhard* (I persevere)—*Ek het volhard* (I persevered).

#### Verbs—Simple Future Tense

To form the future tense of regular verbs, the auxiliary *sal* (never *wil*) is used, followed by the bare infinitive, just as in English. E.g. *Ek sal skryf* (I shall write); *Hy sal loop* (He will walk). The same forms render the Eng. "I will write" and "He shall walk". The Afr. verb *wil* means "desire" or "want to"; hence the student must be on his guard here.

#### Plurals in -s

The plurals of many nouns in Afrikaans are formed by adding *-s*. They include the following groups:

1. A few monosyllables indicating family relationships. E.g. *oom* (uncle)—*ooms*; *seun* (son, boy)—*seuns*; *broer* (brother)—*broers*; *neef* (nephew, cousin)—*neefs*.

2. A few miscellaneous monosyllables. E.g. *leeu* (lion)—*lees*; *roer* (rifle)—*toers*; *kok* (cook)—*koks*.

3. Monosyllables ending in *-lm* and *-rm*. E.g. *palm* (palm)—*palms*, *arm* (arm)—*arms*. Note *storm* (storm, tempest) takes either *-e* or *-s*.

4. Polysyllables where the stress does not fall on the last syllable. E.g. *'kussing* (cushion, pillow)—*kussings*; *'tafel* (table)—*tafels*; *'skaduwee* (shadow, shade)—*shaduwees*. An exception here is *'arend* (eagle)—*arende*. Some polysyllables ending in *-ing* and derived from verbs, take either *-e* or *-s*. E.g. *ver'gadering* (meeting, gathering, from *ver'gader*, v., gather, meet)—*vergaderings* or *vergaderinge*. Likewise: *be'weging* (movement, motion, from *be'weeg*, move); *ver'traging* (delay, from *ver'traag*, tr. v., delay, retard); *'opening* (opening, aperture, from *'open*, v., open). Some nouns, belonging in this class, take one of the two endings, not either. E.g. *be'loning* (reward, from *be'loon*, v., reward)—*belonings*. And some have

no plural, e.g. *op'voeding* (education, rearing, from *'opvoed*, educate, rear—a separable verb (see Chap. XIV)).

5. Some polysyllables with the stress on the final syllable. E.g. *ro'man* (novel)—*romans*; *korpo'raal* (corporal)—*korporaals*; *ba'saar* (bazaar)—*basaars*; *kap'tein* (captain)—*kapteins*. To these must be added words indicating people and ending in *-ier* and *-eur*. E.g. *juwe'lier* (jeweller, from *ju'weel*, n., jewel)—*juweliers*; *proku'reur* (attorney)—*prokureurs*; *winke'lier* (shopkeeper, from *'winkel*, n., shop)—*winkeliers*.

#### Numerals: 11-20

*Elf* (eleven); *twaalf* (twelve); *'dertien* (thirteen); *'veertien* (fourteen; note the *ee*); *'vyftien* (fifteen); *'sestien* (sixteen); *'sewentien* (seventeen; note the intrusive *n*); *'agttien* or *'agtien* (eighteen); *negentien*, *'ne:gəntin*, or *neëntien*, *'ne:əntin* (nineteen; note the intrusive *n*); *'tuintig* (twenty).

#### Names of the Months

The Afr. for "month" is *maand*, pl. *maande*. *'Januarie* (January), *'Februarie* (February), *Maart* (March), *A'pril* (April), *Mei* (May), *'Junie* (June), *'Julie* (July), *Augustus* (or *'xostoes*, August), *Sep'tember* (September), *Ok'tober* (October), *No'vember* or *'November* (November), *De'sember* or *'Desember* (December).

#### Vocabulary

*Hier is . . .*, Here are, Here is . . .

*Daar is . . .*, There are, There is . . .

*'stukkend*, broken, from *stuk*, n., part, piece. As adv. *stukkend* occurs in the phrases *stukkend breek* (break up, from *breek*, v., break) and *stukkend skeur* (tear up, tear to pieces, from *skeur*, v. and n., tear).

*lees*, read.

*jaar*, year.

*dra*, carry, bear, wear.

*eksamen*, *ek'samən*, examination, pl. *eksamens*.

*'besem*, broom, pl. *besems*.

*be'diende*, servant, pl. *bediendes*, from *dien*, v., serve, and *be'dien*, v., serve, attend to, wait upon.

*vee*, v., sweep.

*ver'koop*, v., sell; cf. *koop*, v., buy.  
'*niggie*, niece, cousin, pl. *niggies*, fem. of *neef*.

*Exercise 2. Translate into English :*

Ek is 'n seun. Jy het twee broers en drie susters. Hy is sewentien en sy is vyftien. U praat met ons en ons praat met u. Hulle skryf aan my. Sy praat van hom. Julle skryf aan hulle, en hulle skryf aan julle. Jan se neefs woon op plase. Daar is twintig mooi tuine in die stad. Ek weet daarvan. Die winkeliers het geweet. Julle koop mooi juwele in die winkels van die juweliers. Die kaptein se twee broers is prokureurs. Hier is elf roers : die sestien korporaals skiet daarmee. Die wiel van die wa is stukkend. Die brug is sterk; hulle loop daaroor. Die moeders skryf aan die meisies. Die generaals praat met die kapteins. Dis 'n groot plaas.

*Exercise 2a. Translate into Afrikaans :*

The pretty girls read many novels. The girl's brothers are shopkeepers. She walks over the bridge. The wall is clean : he sits on it. There are twelve months in the year. We wear thick overcoats in July. You (sing., informal) write examinations in June and December. Jan's father and Piet's uncle are captains. They write to you (sing., informal). You (pl., informal) talk about her. The disease is dangerous; we are afraid of it. The attorneys will (careful!) write. The danger is big. Anna's uncles are farmers. The big farm is Uncle Willem's. Here are thirteen brooms : the servants sweep with them. The jewellers sell jewels. The fathers write to the boys. Piet has many nieces.

CHAPTER XI.

AGAIN *IS* and *HET*; SEQUENCE OF WORDS;  
REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS AND REFLEXIVE VERBS;  
PLURALS; NUMERALS

*The verbs is and het*

The present infinitive of the verb consists of the basic form of the verb, sometimes preceded by *te* or *om te*. E.g. *om te skryf* (to write). The verbs *is* and *het* are somewhat more difficult than the regular verbs.

*The verb is*

The full present infinitive is *om te wees* (to be), the past infinitive *om gewees to hê* (to have been), the present participle *synde* (being)—not often used—and the past participle *gewees* (been).

The present tense is *is* for all persons (Eng. "am", "are", and "is").

The past tense in *was* for all persons (Eng. "was" and "were"). This serves both as present perfect (has been, have been) and as simple past tense (was, were). It is also used to convey the sense of the past perfect (had been), but there is a separate past perfect form: *was gewees*. If *was gewees* is used, "I had been there" becomes *Ek was daar gewees* (note sequence of words) instead of *Ek was daar*. (There is also a verb *was*, meaning "wash", and a noun *was*, meaning "wax".)

The future tense is *sal wees* (shall be, will be). "I shall be there" becomes *Ek sal daar wees*. (Note sequence of words.) In English both "shall" and "will" are used to form the future; in Afrikaans only *sal*. *Ek wil daar wees* means "I want to be there".

There is a future perfect tense: *sal gewees het* (shall have been). In English the two auxiliaries come first, followed by the past participle "been"; in Afrikaans the past participle *gewees* comes before the final auxiliary. In a simple sentence the past participle and the final auxiliary go to the end: *Ek sal daar gewees het* (I shall have been there).

*Sequence of Words*

In very simple sentences the word order in Afrikaans is similar to that in English, i.e. the subject comes first and is followed by the verb, and this is followed by the object, if any. E.g. *Ek skryf 'n brief* (I write a letter).

In sentences with compound verbal forms and objects or extensions differences occur. In English a first auxiliary, followed by an infinitive or a past participle, is seldom separated from such an infinitive or past participle: if there is an extension of time or place, etc., or an object, this extension or object comes last. In Afrikaans the extension and/or object come after the first auxiliary, and the other verbal forms go to the end of the sentence. This applies e.g. to past and future tenses. E.g. *Ek sal my vriend môre sien* (I shall see my friend tomorrow); *Ek het hom gister gesien* (I saw him yesterday); *Ek wil boeke hê* (I want some books, lit. I want to have books—note *wil hê*, want to have, want). Sometimes the extension may precede the object. E.g. *Ek het gister die brief geskryf* (I wrote the letter yesterday).

Where there are two extensions, one of time and one of place, the extension of time is usually placed last in English; in Afrikaans it comes first. E.g. *Ek het gister hier gestaan* (I stood here yesterday); *Ek sal môre daar wees* (I shall be there tomorrow).

*The verb het*

The full present infinitive is *om te hê* (to have), the past infinitive is *om gehad to hê* (to have had), the present participle *hebbende* (having)—hardly ever used—and the past participle *gehad* (ḡafat, had).

The present tense is *het* for all persons (Eng. “have” and “has”).

The past tense is *had* or *het gehad*. These forms are equal to the English “had” (simple past), and “have had” and “has had” (present perfect), but they are both used as simple past tenses, with a preference for *het gehad*. Eng. “I had a hat” becomes *Ek het 'n hoed gehad*. Note: the object comes between the auxiliary and the past participle. When unstressed, *het* is pronounced 't (ət).

There is also a past perfect form: *had gehad* (had had).

The future tense is *sal hê* (shall or will have) for all persons. Eng. “She will have a pen” becomes *Sy sal 'n pen hê*. Note: the object comes between the auxiliary and the bare infinitive *hê*.

There is also a future perfect form: *sal gehad het* (shall or will have had). Note the formation: *sal*, followed by the past participle, followed by the auxiliary *het*. The verbal forms *gehad het* in a simple sentence go to the end, and the object or extension follows immediately on the first auxiliary. Eng. “She will have had a dress” becomes *Sy sal 'n rok gehad het*.

*Plurals in -ens, -ere, -ers*

The plurals of some nouns are formed by adding *-ens* (or *-ns*), *-ere*, or *-ers*. E.g.

*wa* (wagon)—*waens*; *nooi* (girl, sweetheart)—*nooiens*; *'hawe* (harbour)—*hawens*; *ge'voel* (feeling, from *voel*, v., feel)—*gevoelens*; *'wese* (being, from *wees*, to be)—*wesens*.

*volk* (nation)—*volkere*; *lied* (song)—*liedere*; *goed* (goods, things, stuff)—*goedere* (goods).

*lam* (lamb)—*lammers* (note double *m*); *maat* (companion)—*maters* or *maats*; *kind* (child)—*kinders*.

*Reflexive Pronouns and Reflexive Verbs*

The reflexive pronouns in Afrikaans are identical with the objective forms (see Chap. X): *my*; *jou*, *u*; *hom*, *haar*; *ons*; *julle*, *u*; *hulle*.

Some verbs are occasionally reflexive. E.g. *Ek was my* (I wash myself). But, as in English, some verbs are always reflexive. Here are some examples. Note that some verbs are reflexive in Afrikaans, whereas their counterparts in English are not. *Jy misgis jou* (You are mistaken, lit. You mistake yourself; *mis'gis*, be mistaken, from *mis*, amiss, wrong, and *gis*, v., guess). *Hy gedra hom* (He behaves himself; *ge'dra* from *dra*, carry, bear). *Sy bekommer haar oor haar kind* (She is concerned about her child; *be'kommer* from *'kommer*, n., care, anxiety). *Ons beroep ons op die wette van die land* (We appeal to the laws of the country; *beroep* from *roep*, call). *Julle bemoei julle met ander mense se sake* (You meddle with the affairs of other people, lit. You concern yourselves with, etc.; *mense*, pl. of *mens*, human being, person; *sake*, pl. of *saak*, affair, case, matter, business, concern). *Hulle bevind hulle in die*

*moeilikheid* (They find themselves in trouble—not the use of *die*; *be'vind*, from *vind*, find; *'moeilikheid*, from *'moelik*, difficult).

Similarly: *Ek haas my* (I hurry; *haas* is also a n., hurry). *Ek herinner my (sien'raer*, I recollect). *Hy ontferm hom oor my* (He takes pity on me). *Ek skaam my vir jou* (I am ashamed of you). *Hy verbeel hom baie* (He fancies himself, lit. He imagines himself much, or He imagines much to himself). *Sy het haar verspreek* (She made a slip of the tongue; *verspreek* from *spreek*, talk, speak). *Ek verwonder my oor sy vindingrykheid* (I am surprised at his resourcefulness; *verwonder* from *wonder*, v. and n., wonder; *vindingrykheid*, lit. richness in finding, from *vindingryk*, resourceful, *vind*, v., find, and *ryk*, rich). *Hy steur hom aan haar kri'tiek* (He cares about her criticism, lit. He disturbs himself about, etc.). *Ek vererg my vir hom (fær'err*, I become angry with him, lit. I annoy myself at him).

The reflexive forms of the pronouns, *myself*, *jouself*, *homself*, *haarself*, etc., also exist in Afrikaans, but are used only for special emphasis. E.g. *Ek vergewe hom maar nie myself nie* (I forgive him but not myself—for the double *nie*, see Chap. XIX). For emphasis the word *self* is often used as a separate word. E.g. *Hy doen dit self* (He does it himself). *Ek sal self met hom praat* (I shall speak to him myself, or I myself shall speak to him).

#### Plurals in -te and -de

Certain nouns which in Dutch ended in *-st*, *-kt*, *-pt*, *-gt* (*-cht*), and *-ft*, have lost the *t* in Afrikaans in the singular, but regain it in the plural. Hence we have the following: *nes* (nest)—*nete*; *produk* (*pro'dœk*, product)—*produkte*; *amp* (post, position)—*ampte*; *vrug* (fruit)—*vrugte*; *lig* (light)—*ligte*; *ge'skrif* (piece of writing, document, from *skryf*, write)—*geskryfte*; *krag* (power)—*kragte*; *angs* (fear, terror, anxiety)—*angste*; *as* (axle)—*aste*, to be distinguished from *as* (ash)—*asse*; *bors* (breast, chest)—*borste*; *dis'trik* (district)—*distrikte*; *ge'wig* (weight; akin to *weeg*, v., weigh)—*gewigte*; *ge'veg* (fight, battle, from *veg*, v., fight)—*gevegte*; *insek* (insect)—*insekte*; *kis* (box, case, chest, coffin)—*kiste*; *kneg* (servant)—*knegte*; *mag* (power, force)—*magte*; *'opbrings* (proceeds, output, yield)—*opbringste*; *toeris* (*tu'ræs*, tourist)—*toeriste*.

Similarly, there are a few nouns which in Dutch ended in *-fd* and *-gd*, and which have lost the *d* in Afrikaans in the singular, but regain it in the plural. E.g. *hoof* (head)—*hoofde*; *deug* (virtue)—*deugde*.

An exception is: *hemp* (shirt)—*hemde*.

#### Numerals: 21–39

*Een-en-twintig* (twenty-one); *twee-en-twintig* (twenty-two); *drie-en-twintig* (twenty-three); *vier-en-twintig* (twenty-four); etc., until we come to *'dertig* (thirty); then *een-en-dertig* (thirty-one); *twee-en-dertig* (thirty-two); etc., up to *nege-en-dertig*. Note that in Afrikaans the digits are mentioned first, whereas in English the tens are mentioned first.

#### Vocabulary

*leef*, v., live, be alive. Like some other verbs, ending in *-f*, this verb has an alternative form, *leuwe*.

*be'langrik*, *be'langrêk*, important, from *be'lang*, importance, interest, pl. *belange*, interests.

*in die stad*, in the city, or in town. *Stad* normally means “city”, and *dorp* means “town”.

*ver'wag*, expect, from *wag*, wait.

*be'stuurder*, manager, from *bestuur*, v., manage, direct, from *stuur*, v., send, steer, and n., steering gear.

*'goederetrein*, goods-train, from *goedere*, and *trein*, train.

*'eendag*, one day, some day (indefinite occasion); this can refer either to the past or to the future. *Een dag* (written as two words) means one particular day.

*na die stad*, to the city, to town.

*ge'noeg*, enough.

*geld*, money. There is also a verb *geld*, be applicable, be in force, hold good.

*ver'lede week*, *maand*, etc., last week, month, etc. *Verlede* also occurs as noun in *die verlede*, the past.

*ge'sond*, healthy, well. From this is derived *ge'sondheid*, health.

*aan'staande week*, *maand*, etc., next week, month, etc.

*op die dorp*, in town, in the village.

*'sanger*, singer, from *sing*, v., sing.

*Duits*, German (the language), also a., German.

*gaan*, go.

*dorp toe*, to the village, to town.

*passa'sierstrein*, passenger-train, from *passasier*, passenger, pl. *passasiers*.

*betaal*, v., pay.

*sa'laris*, salary, pl. *salarisse*.

*Exercise 3. Translate into English :*

Die groot seun speel met dertien maats. Die volkere leef in vrede. Die groot generaal het baie deugde gehad. Die hoofde het gister die briewe geskryf. Lord Milner se geskifte is belangrik. Jan wil (careful!) in die stad wees. Hy sal twee hemde in die winkel koop. Ons verwag dertig gaste. Die bestuurder se amp was belangrik. Hy het die goederetreine beheer. Die treine vervoer die goedere. Piet was op die plaas. Daar was agt-en-dertig lammers. Daar is baie ligte in die straat. Die voëls bou neste. Daar sal baie neste in die bome wees. Piet sal eendag 'n plaas hê. Hy haas hom na die stad. Hulle bemoei hulle met ander mense se sake.

*Exercise 3a. Translate into Afrikaans :*

The two brothers had five shops and three farms. The children will (careful!) have enough money. She has many jewels. We shall have many blankets. He was very sick last Thursday. I saw him yesterday. He will be well tomorrow. They will be in town next Saturday. The great singer will sing twenty-five songs in German. She wants some fruit. (This "some" is not translated in Afrikaans; just say *vrugte*). She will go to the village. She will buy the fruit there. The post of the manager will be important. He will manage the passenger-trains. She takes pity on him. He pays the salaries himself.

*Write out in words :* 18, 24, 29, 33, 37, 14.

CHAPTER XII.

PERSONAL POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS ; INDEFINITE PRONOUNS ; PLURALS ; NUMERALS

*Personal Pronouns—Possessive Forms*

The possessive forms of the personal pronouns are :

- (1) Attributive adjectival forms ; *my* (my) ; *jou, u* (your, sing.) ; *sy* (his), *haar* (her) ; *ons* (our) ; *julle* or *jul, u* (your, pl.) ; *hulle* or *hul* (their).
- (2) Predicative adjectival and independent forms : *myne* (mine) ; *joue* or *joune* (yours, sing.) ; *syne* (his), *hare* (hers) ; *ons s'n* (ours) ; *julle s'n* (yours, pl.) ; *hulle s'n* (theirs).

Examples of use : *Dit is my boek, jou boek, sy boek* (his book), *haar boek, ons boeke, julle boeke* or *jul boeke, u boek* (your book—formal, sing. or pl.), *hulle boeke* or *hul boeke*. *Die boeke is myne, joue* or *joune, syne* (his), *hare, ons s'n, julle s'n, hulle s'n*. We can also say : *Die boeke is van my, van jou*, etc.

The polite or formal *u* (you) presents some difficulty. The attributive adjectival form is *u*, e.g. *Dit is u hoed, u jas, u handskoene* (gloves, lit. hand-shoes, from *hand* and *skoene*, shoe) ; but the rub lies with the predicative and independent form. Although a form *u s'n* is sometimes heard, it feels uncomfortable, and many speakers and writers avoid it and limit themselves to the forms : *Die hoed is van u, Die hoed behoort aan u* (The hat belongs to you ; *behoort aan*, belong to), and *Dit is u hoed*.

The word *sy* can mean either "she" (nominative) or "his" (possessive). (There is also a noun *sy* (silk) and a homonym meaning "side".) The independent forms can also be used substantively. E.g. *Myne is goed* (Mine are, or is good), etc.

A form like "He is a friend of mine" (a double possessive) does not occur in Afrikaans. It is rendered by *Hy is 'n vriend van my* or *Hy is een van my vriende* (He is one of my friends).

As Afrikaans has no form corresponding to English "its", the rendering of this possessive may prove slightly difficult. Usually the masculine *sy* is used. E.g. *Roep die hond en gee*

*hom sy kos* (Call the dog and give it its food). *Draai die tafel op sy kant* (Turn the table on its side; note *kant*, n., side; we could also have written: *op sy sy*). If it is known that an animal is a female, the feminine *haar* is used. E.g. *Waar is die kat?* *Hier is haar kos.* (Where is the cat? Here is its food.) In Afrikaans, trains, ships and motor-cars are referred to as masculine (*hy, hom, sy*) whereas in English they are referred to as feminine ("she", "her").

#### Indefinite Pronouns

Indefinite pronouns that frequently occur, are: *iets* (something); *'iemand* (someone); *'n mens* or just *mens* (one), *mense* (people); *'enigeen* (anyone, from *'enige*, attr. a., any, and *een*, one); *'elkeen* (everyone, each one, from *elk*, each), *'iedereen* (everyone, each one, from *'ieder*, each); *'almal* (all), *'algar* (all), *'alles* (everything); *'sommige* (some), *party* (*pər'təi*, some). The form "One must do one's work" is rendered by *'n mens moet jou werk doen*: note the use of the personal pronoun. Likewise: *'n Mens weet jy moet werk* (One knows one must work).

Special notes are necessary on the forms with *al-*, and on *mekaar* and *ander*.

The word *al*, appearing in some of these compounds, means "all". It is used in this form before a noun, preceded by the definite article. E.g. *Al die matrose* (All the sailors; *ma'troos*, sailor). Before a noun without the article the form *'alle* is used. E.g. *Alle mans moet help* (All men must help). Where "all" is used as a noun or pronoun, referring to persons, the Afrikaans word is *almal* or *algar*. E.g. *Almal het gekom behalwe Jan* (All came except Jan; *be'halwe*, except). *Hulle het almal gaan ry* (They all went riding). *Algar het gaan swem* (All, or Everyone went swimming). Note: *ons almal*, all of us. "Everything" is rendered by *alles*. E.g. *Ons het alles gesien* (We saw everything). As an adverb the Afrikaans word *al* means "already" in statements and "yet" in questions. E.g. *Ek het hom al gesien* (I have already seen him). *Het jy al die brief geskryf?* (Have you written the letter yet?)

*Me'kaar* can mean "each other" or "one another", and *'bymekaar* means "together". E.g. *Die twee mans praat met mekaar* (The two men talk to each other). *Die drie vriende*

*help mekaar* (The three friends help one another). *Hulle sit bymekaar* (They sit together).

'*Ander* means "other" or "another" but is used in various expressions. E.g. *'n ander* (another); *'n ander dag* (another day); *die ander dag* (a few days ago). It is also used as a plural to translate "others": *die ander* (others, the other people, the other books, etc.). Take care not to use *anders* to render "others"; *anders* means "otherwise", "different" or "else".

#### Plurals of Nouns—elided -g-

The student will remember that most monosyllabic nouns take *-e* in the plural. When such a noun ends in a *-g*, preceded by a vowel or a diphthong, the *g* is usually dropped between the two vowels in the plural, and the vowel (if it is a short vowel) is lengthened, and sometimes even altered. E.g. *dag* (day)—*dae* ('*dā:ə*, days; note lengthening of vowel); *weg* (road, way)—*weë* ('*ve:ə*, roads, ways; note change in vowel); *plaag* (plague)—*plae* ('*plā:ə*, plagues); *vlieg* (fly)—*vlieë*; *oog* (eye)—*oë*; *'oorlog* (war)—*'oorloë*.

In some cases the *g* may be retained in the plural, and then there are two alternative plurals. Most of these nouns contain a short vowel, and when the *g* is retained it has to be written double in the plural to keep the vowel short—and this double *gg* is often pronounced like the Eng. *g* in "get" (*g*). E.g. *brug* (bridge)—*brûe* or *brugge*, '*brœgə* (bridges); *eg* (harrow)—*êe* or *egge*, '*ɛgə* (harrows); *rug* (back)—*rûe* or *rugge* (backs). Of the plural of *brug* there is also the possible form *brûens* ('*brœ:əns*). *Rug* can also mean the "ridge" or "back" of a hill; and then the plurals are: *rûens* ('*rœ:əns*) or *ruggens* ('*rœgəns*).

#### Plurals of monosyllabic Nouns ending in -f

In English we have plurals like "wolves" from "wolf". Similarly in Afrikaans monosyllabic nouns, ending in *-f* (where the *f* is preceded by a vowel, or by *l* or *r*), change the *f* to *w*, when the *-e* of the plural is added, to reflect the change in pronunciation from *f* to *v*. The usual spelling-rules apply: if the vowel is long and written with the vowel sign doubled, one of the signs is dropped in the open syllable of the plural;

if the vowel is short, the *f* becomes *ww* in the plural in order to keep the vowel short. E.g. *graaf* (spade—allied to *gra*, dig, and *graf*, grave)—*grawe*; *wolf* (wolf)—*wolwe*; *kloof* (ravine)—*klowe*; *sif* (sieve)—*siwwe*; *gerf* (sheaf)—*gerwe*; *rif* (ridge, reef)—*riwwe*; *hoef* (hoof)—*hoewe*; *lyf* (body, figure)—*lywe*. Note: *kalf* (calf)—*kalwers*. There is also a verb *kalf* or *kalwe*, “to calve”; a verb *sif*, to sieve; and a verb *kloof* or *klowe*, to cleave, split in two.

*Plurals of monosyllabic Nouns ending in -d*

The plurals of monosyllabic nouns, ending in *-d*, fall into various sub-groups:

Some retain the *-d*. E.g. *hoed* (hat)—*hoede*.

Some drop the *-d*. E.g. *tyd* (time)—*tye*; *kruid* (herb)—*kruie*.

Some retain the *-d* but change the vowel. E.g. *stad* (city)—*stede*; *lid* (member)—*lede*; *smid* (blacksmith)—*smede*.

Some drop the *-d* and change the vowel as well. E.g. *blad* (page—of a book; newspaper, periodical)—*blaaië* (*'blaië*); *pad* (road, path; a road in a town is called a *weg*, elsewhere a *pad*)—*paaië*.

*Numerals: 40-100*

*'Veertig* (forty); *'vyftig* (fifty); *'sestig* (sixty); *'sewentig* (seventy); *'tagtig* or *'taggentig*, *'taxəntəx* (eighty; note the initial *t*); *'negentig*, *'ne:gəntəx*, or *'neəntig* (ninety); *'honderd* (hundred; note position of the *r*).

*Vocabulary*

*'arbeider*, labourer, pl. *arbeiders*, from *'arbei*, v., labour, work, related to *'arbeid*, n., labour, work.

*'sommige*, attr. a. and indefinite pron., some.

*'reënjas*, raincoat, from *reën*, n. and v., rain, and *jas*, overcoat, pl. *-jasse*.

*reeds*, already.

*potlood*, *'pɔtlo:t*, lead pencil, pencil, pl. *potlode*, *'pɔtlo:də*, from *lood*, lead.

*bees*, beast, cow, ox or bull, one head of cattle, pl. *beeste*.

*tel*, v., count.

*ken*, v., know—for the difference between *ken* and *weet*, both verbs meaning “know”, see Chap. XXXI.

*niks*, nothing.

*werk*, v. and n., work.

*dikwels*, *'dəkwəls*, often.

*nag*, night, pl. *nagte*.

*koud*, a., cold.

*warm*, warm, hot.

*Exercise 4. Translate into English:*

Ek sal jou die briewe gee. Dit (translate “They”) is joune. Die hoede en jasse is julle s'n. Hulle s'n is ook hier. Die winkel behoort aan ons. Dit is ons s'n. Die arbeiders werk met hulle grawe en pikke. Die tye is moeilik. (Translate “Times are . . .” Note the use of *die*.) Haar rug is seer. Die medisyne is hare. Die kind skeur die blaaië van jou boek. Almal was siek. Hulle oë en nekke was seer. Die wolwe is in die klowe. Hy het alles verloor, sy plase, sy huise en sy geld. Iemand sal hom help. Almal help mekaar. Daar was 'n honderd mense. Party was lede van die klub. Al die mense praat met mekaar. Elkeen sal sy eie huis hê. Hulle sal almal bymekaar woon. Sommige is siek, ander is gesond.

*Exercise 4a. Translate into Afrikaans:*

She gives me my gloves. They are mine. Some people have hats, others have overcoats. There were fifty-nine people. All of them had their raincoats with them. We gave him his books and his letters. I have already given you your (sing. informal) pen and your pencil. There are ninety-two head of cattle on his farm. They are his. He counts them all. He knows everyone. Some have money, others have nothing. The labourers work on the road (translate *pad*). The roads will be good. Each one does his work. They see each other often. Everything goes well (translate *goed*). There have been many wars, and there will be many wars. There are thirty-one days in March. The nights are cold in July, but the days are warm.

*Write out in words: 41, 56, 62, 77, 83, 94, 100.*



## CHAPTER XIII.

ADJECTIVES—INFLECTION; PLURALS;  
NUMERALS*Adjectives—Inflection in Attributive Position*

Many adjectives can be used either predicatively, e.g. *Die man is sterk* (The man is strong), or attributively, e.g. *die sterk man* (the strong man). This adjective, *sterk*, remains unchanged, but in the attributive position many adjectives in Afrikaans are inflected, the inflection consisting of the addition of an *-e*, with the accompanying changes of spelling and elision, that are also found in the plurals of nouns where *-e* is added to form the plural. This inflection is foreign to English; hence the student should study what follows very carefully and memorise the examples. The matter is made somewhat complicated by elastic usage and exceptions.

In brief, the rules governing this inflection can be stated as follows: (1) adjectives of more than one syllable, with a few exceptions, and (2) monosyllabic adjectives ending in *-d*, *-f*, *-g* and *-s* are inflected. Here are examples of this phenomenon:

(1) *Adjectives of more than one syllable:*

*Die weer is aangenaam* (The weather is pleasant)—*Dit is aangename weer* (It is pleasant weather). Likewise: *'maklik* (easy)—*Dit is maklike werk* (This is easy work); *'algemeen* (general)—*van algemene belang* (of general importance); *'treurig* (sad)—*'n treurige ge'sig* (a sad face, or sight); *'lelik* (ugly)—*lelike mense* (ugly people); *ge'trou* (faithful, from *trou*, n., faithfulness, also a., true, faithful)—*'n getroue vriend* (a faithful friend); *ge'meen* (mean, vulgar, common)—*'n gemene daad* (a mean, low deed; *daad* is allied to *doen*, do); *'ieder* (each) when used as a.—*iedere keer* (each time).

The exceptions include adjectives that end in *-er* and *-el* but even here the inflection sometimes occurs. E.g. *'donker* (dark)—*'n donker nag* or *'n donkere nag* (a dark night; *donker* is also a noun, meaning "dark", "darkness"; *'edel* (noble)—

*'n edel vrou* or *'n edele vrou* (a noble lady or woman); *'seker* (certain)—*sekere mense* (certain people). *'Ekstra* (extra) is never inflected—*ekstra mense* (extra people). Where the predicative form of the adjective already ends in *-e*, no further *-e* is added in the attributive position. E.g. *te'vrede* (satisfied, at peace, content, from *vrede*, peace): *die kind is tevrede* — *die tevrede kind*.

(2) *Monosyllabic Adjectives:**Those ending in -d*

*hard* (**hart**, hard)—*'n harde (hardə) stuk hout* (a hard piece of wood; note the "of" is not rendered by *van* in Afr. in this phrase using *stuk*, n., piece); *blind* (blind)—*'n blinde man* (a blind man); *rond* (round)—*'n ronde gat* (a round hole; pl. *gate*, **'xɑ:ʔə**).

Where the *d* is preceded by a diphthong or long vowel it usually falls away in the inflected form. E.g. *wyd* (wide)—*'n wye pad* (a wide road); *koud* (cold)—*'n koue wind* (a cold wind). In the phrase for "cold water" the *d* is dropped but the *-e* not necessarily added; hence *koue water* or *kou water*.

Sometimes the original vowel is changed. E.g. *goed* (good)—*'n goeie daad* (**'xuiə**, a good deed); *dood* (dead)—*'n dooie hond* (**'do:ɪə**, a dead dog).

The adjective *wreed* (cruel) retains its *d*: *'n wrede mens* (a cruel person).

*Those ending in -g*

Where the *g* is preceded by a diphthong or long vowel it is usually dropped in the inflected form. E.g. *droog* (dry)—*droë klere* (dry clothes); *laag* (low)—*'n lae vlak* (a low level). (There is also a noun *laag*, meaning "layer", "stratum".)

If the *g* represents an original *cht* in Dutch, of which the *-t* has disappeared in the predicative form, the *t* returns in the inflected attributive form. E.g. *sleg* (bad)—*'n slegte daad* (a bad deed); *lig* (light)—*ligte*; *sag* (soft)—*sagte*; *dig* (closed, shut; dense, thick)—*'n digte mis* (a thick mist or fog); *eg* (genuine)—*egte dia'mante* (genuine diamonds); *'onverwag* (unexpected, from *verwag*, v., expect, from *wag*, v., wait)—*onverwagte nuus* (unexpected news; *nuus* allied to *nuut*, new).

Adjectives ending in *-ng* do not fall under this group, since *ng* represents a separate sound.

*Those ending in -f*

If the *-f* is preceded by a long vowel or a consonant, it becomes *w* in the inflected form. E.g. *doof* (deaf)—*'n dowwe man* (a deaf man); *half* (half)—*'n halwe waarheid* (a half truth; *'waarheid* from *waar*, true; the opposite of *waar* is *'onwaar*, untrue); *styf* (stiff)—*'n stywe been* (a stiff leg).

If the *f* is preceded by a short vowel it becomes *ww* in the inflected form. E.g. *dof* (vague, indistinct, dull)—*'n dowwe geluid* (a dull or vague sound; *ge'luid* allied to *luid*, loud).

*Those ending in -s*

*fluks* (diligent)—*'n flukse werker* (a diligent worker).

If the *s* represents an original *st* in Dutch, of which the *t* has disappeared in the predicative form, the *t* returns in the inflected attributive form. E.g. *woes* (wild)—*'n woeste landstreek* (a wild region; *'landstreek* from *land*, land, and *streek*, region); *juis* (exact, correct, just)—*'n juiste ver'slag* (a correct report); *'onbeslis* (undecided; opposite of *beslis*, decided, allied to *be'sluit*, v., decide, n., decision)—*'n onbesliste houding* (an undecided attitude; *'houding* from *hou*, v., hold, keep).

A few monosyllabic adjectives, ending in *-s*, generally remain uninflected. E.g. *fris* (fresh, cool; healthy, well-built)—*'n fris wind* (a fresh or cool wind), *'n fris seun* (a healthy boy); *los* (loose; there is also a verb *los*, let go, let loose, loosen)—*los hare* (loose hair; note the use of the pl. of *haar*, a single hair, when referring to a person's hair); *vars* (fresh)—*vars groente* (fresh vegetables; *'groente* from *groen*, a., green). Some adjectives are used both with and without the inflection. E.g. *kras* (strong, severe of speech or action)—*kras* or *krasse optrede* (severe action; *'optrede* from *'optree*, v., take action, lit. step up).

*Special Forms of Attributive Adjectives*

A few monosyllabic adjectives have special predicative and attributive forms. E.g. *nuut* (new)—*'nuwe*—*'n nuwe hoed* (a new hat); *oud* (old)—*ou*—*'n ou man* (an old man); *jonk* (young)—*jong*—*'n jong seun* (a young boy); *lank* (long)—*lang*—*'n lang reis* (a long journey). Hence we say *Die meisie is jonk* (The girl is young) but *die jong meisie* (the young girl).

From these explanations it will be deduced that monosyllabic

adjectives, ending in vowels or in *k*, *p*, *t*, *l*, *m*, *n*, *ng* and *r* are usually not inflected in the attributive position. E.g. *Die man is skelm*—*Hy is 'n skelm man* (*skelm*, knavish, cunning, sly). There are, however, exceptions, viz.:

- (a) A few solitary adjectives. E.g. *naak* (naked)—*naakte*—*die naakte waarheid* (the naked truth); *puur* (pure, sheer, nothing but)—*'n pure man* (a real man), *pure sand* (nothing but sand); *ru* (rough)—*ruwe*; *slu* (sly)—*slue*, *sluwe*, or uninflected *slu*; *sku* (shy, timid)—*skuwe*, or uninflected *sku*; *naar* (unpleasant, horrid, bilious, nasty)—*nare*.
- (b) Adjectives that are not usually inflected, may be inflected if they bear heavy emphasis or if they are used metaphorically. E.g. *groot* (great, big)—*'n groot wa* (a big wagon) but *grote hemel!* (great heavens!).

A few adjectives are used only attributively and a few usually only predicatively. E.g. *ver'skeie* (several) is used only attributively; and *'nakend* (naked) is used only predicatively.

*Plurals—Lengthening of the Vowel*

The plurals of a small group of nouns, containing short vowels, break the spelling-rules in that the final consonant is not doubled when the *-e* is added for the plural. This happens because the vowel is lengthened (and sometimes changed) in the plural. E.g. *glas* (*xlas*, glass, tumbler)—*glase* (*'xla:sə*); *spel* (game)—*spele*; *god* (*xət*, god, idol)—*gode* (*'xə:də*); *hof* (court of law)—*howe*; *dal* (dale, valley)—*dale*.

To these must be added a few nouns of two syllables, with the stress on the second syllable. E.g. *ge'brek* (failing; allied to *breek*, v., break)—*gebreke*; *bevel* (command; allied to *beveel*, v., command)—*bevele*; *gebed* (prayer; allied to *bid*, v., pray)—*gebede*; *gebod* (*xə'bot*, command; related to *ge'bied*, v., command, order)—*gebooie* (*xə'bo:iə*, commandments, also banns).

In the plural of *skip* (*skəp*, ship) the vowel is altered and lengthened—*skepe* (*'ske:pə*).

*Numerals: 101-1,000,000*

*'n Honderd-en-een* or *eenhonderd-en-een* (a hundred and one, or one hundred and one); *'n honderd-en-twee* (a hundred and two); etc., up to *eenhonderd-en-twintig* (one hundred and twenty). Then: *eenhonderd een-en-twintig* (121); *eenhonderd*

*twee-en-twintig* (122); etc., except that with the complete decades the *en* again comes in after the *honderd* and the numeral is written as one word: *eenhonderd-en-dertig* (130); *tweehonderden-veertig* (240); etc.

'*n* *Duisend* ('*doeysent*, a thousand); *eenduisend eenhonderd* (1,100); *eenduisend tweehonderden-vyftig* (1,250); *drieduisend vier-honderd twee-en-sestig* (3,462);

'*tienduisend* (10,000); *eenhonderdduisend* (100,000); '*n* *mil'joen* (a million).

Years are usually referred to by the hundreds, e.g. 1954: *negentienhonderd vier-en-vyftig*, or just *negentien-vier-en-vyftig*.

Note the expressions: *honderde skepe* (hundreds of ships), *duisende soldate* (thousands of soldiers)—the "of" is not translated literally.

### Vocabulary

The attributive form of adjectives will henceforth, where necessary, be indicated in brackets after the adjective, e.g. *leeg*, a., (*leë*), empty; *reg*, a., (*-te*), right, correct; *op'reg*, a., (*-te*), sincere. If it has both an inflected and an uninflected form, these will be indicated as follows: *arm*, a., (—, *-e*), poor.

*reisiger*, '*reisaxor*, traveller, from *reis*, v. and n., travel, journey. *waai*, v., blow (of wind); wave. The other verb for "blow" is *blaas*, e.g. *Hy blaas die rook in die lug* (He blows the smoke in, or into the sky, or air).

'*vriendelik*, friendly, from *vriend*, friend. From *vriend* is derived '*vriendskap*, friendship. The same suffix occurs in '*blydschap*, gladness, joy, happiness, from *bly*, a., glad.

*lei*, v., lead.

'*stadig*, slow, slowly.

*boot*, n., boat.

*stoom*, v. and n., steam.

*oor*, prep., over, across.

*breed*, a., (*breë*), broad.

*ten laaste*, at last.

*be'reik*, v., reach, attain.

*stu'dent*, student.

*kor'rek*, a., (*-te*), correct.

'*antwoord*, n., answer, reply, from *woord*, word; there is also a verb '*antwoord*, answer, reply.

*hoor*, v., hear.

*slegs*, only, merely.

*hard*, a., (*-e*), hard, loud.

*drink*, v., drink.

*uit*, prep., out, out of.

*os*, ox.

*trek*, v., pull, move, move residence.

*swaar*, heavy. There is also a noun *swaar*, hardship.

### Exercise 5. Translate into English:

Die ou dame se gebede is opreg. Ons gehoorsaam die streng bevele. Die stout seuns speel gevaarlike spele. Hy is bang vir die naakte waarheid. Die pad is lank en die reisiger is moeg. Die klere was nuut en skoon. Die lui kinders dra ou, vuil klere. Die wrede man skop die dooie hond. Dit is 'n slegte daad. Die koue wind waai oor die nat grond in die vroeë oggend. Die dapper man reis deur 'n woeste landstreek. Hy is jonk en gesond. Hy geniet 'n aangename vakansie. Hier is 'n leë, skoon glas. Suiker is soet. Die vloer is vuil. Daar is allerhande boeke in die groot biblioteek. Die afstand van Kaapstad na Johannesburg is byna 'n duisend myl. Die tien geboeie.

### Exercise 5a. Translate into Afrikaans:

A friendly young man helped the weak old lady. It was a good deed. A dog leads the blind man. The slow boat steams across the broad river. The brave sailors reached dry ground at last. The diligent students will give the correct answers. The deaf woman hears only loud sounds. The man is old, the boy is young. They drink cold water out of clean tumblers. The rich man wears new clothes. The poor (used metaphorically) man is a tired traveller on a long road. The strong oxen pull the heavy wagons.

Write out in words: 2,436,579; 21,206; and the years: 1939; 1652; A.D. 1125 ("B.C." is indicated in Afrikaans by *v.C.* (*voor Christus*, before Christ), and "A.D." by *n.C.* (*na Christus*—*na* meaning "after", written after the numeral.)

VERBS—PRESENT TENSES; SEPARABLE AND  
INSEPARABLE COMPOUND VERBS; PLURALS;  
ORDINAL NUMERALS

*Verbs—The Present Tense*

Apart from the simple tenses (see Chap. X) English has, in each of the three main tenses (present, past and future), three other tenses, viz. continuous, perfect and perfect continuous. These are rendered in a variety of ways in Afrikaans. Here we shall deal with the present tense.

The present continuous "I am writing" is rendered either by the simple present *Ek skryf*, or by phrases such as:

*Ek is besig om te skryf* (I am busy writing). After 'besig the full form of the infinitive with *om te* is used, where in English one uses the present participle.

*Ek is aan die skryf* (I am a-writing, lit. more or less, I am on the writing; cf. "I am on the go").

The present perfect "I have written" is rendered by *Ek het geskryf*, which is also equal to the simple past tense "I wrote".

The present perfect continuous "I have been writing" is rendered by such phrases as *Ek was besig om te skryf* (I was busy writing), and *Ek was aan die skryf* (I was a-writing). Sometimes the present perfect continuous is used in English to indicate an action that began in the past but continues into the present. E.g. "I have been here for the past five weeks". This is rendered in Afrikaans by using the present tense plus the temporal adverb *al* (already): *Ek is al die afgelope vyf weke hier*. 'Afgelope' (past, finished, ended) is derived from the separable verb 'afloop' (see below), lit. run down, flow off.

As in English, but to a larger extent, temporal adverbs or phrases are used to determine the subsidiary tenses. In the present tense, e.g., we use *nou* (now); *al*, *reeds* or *alreeds* (already); *nou net*, so 'ewe or so pas (just, just a short while ago).

*Compound Verbs—Separable and Inseparable*

There are many compound verbs in Afrikaans, consisting of a preposition or some other word, plus the real verb. E.g. 'uitnooi (invite, from *uit*, out, plus *nooi*, v., invite; lit. invite out); 'wegry (ride away, ride off, from *weg*, away, plus *ry*, v., ride); *voor'spel* (foretell, prophesy).

These verbs are divided into two groups: the inseparable compounds (which usually have the stress on the last part) and the separable compounds (which usually have the stress on the first part). In the formation of the tenses, the infinitives, the participles, etc., there are important differences between these groups.

The inseparable compounds are treated as ordinary simple verbs, except that the past participle is formed without the *ge-*; hence the past tenses become *Ek het voorspel* (I foretold), etc. The full infinitive is regular: *om te voorspel* (to foretell).

It is the separable compounds that present more variations from the regular pattern. In the full infinitive the parts of the verb are separated, the *om* comes before the first part, and the *te* between the two parts of the verb: *om weg te ry* (to ride off); *om uit te nooi* (to invite). In the infinitive with *te* only, the *te* also falls between the separated parts of the verb: *weg te ry*, *uit te nooi*. In the bare form of the infinitive the compound is retained unseparated: *wegry*, *uitnooi*. These forms and their uses are dealt with in Chap. XXV.

The past participles of the separable compounds are formed by inserting the *ge* between the two parts of the compound verb, but writing the whole as one word: *weggerij* (ridden off), *uitgenooi* (invited). This occurs regularly except where the second part of the compound is a verb which does not take a *ge-*, like *betaal* (pay). The past participle of the separable compound then also does not take the *ge*, so that the past participle of, e.g., 'uitbetaal (pay out) remains *uitbetaal*, and the past tense *het uitbetaal* (paid out).

The separation of the two parts of a separable compound verb also takes place in the simple present tense, but here something else also happens: the two parts of the verb are inverted; hence, *Ek ry weg* (I ride off). If there is an object or an extension, it comes between the two inverted parts of the

separable compound. E.g. *Ek ry vandag weg* (I ride off today); *Ek nooi hulle uit* (I invite them). This separation and inversion of the parts of a separable compound does not take place in a subordinate clause in the present tense. There the verb retains its ordinary compound form. E.g. *Wanneer ek hulle uitnooi, . . .* (When I invite them, . . .); *As ek wegry, . . .* (If I ride off, . . .). (See Chap. XXIX and XXX.) Some exceptions will be dealt with later.

It is important to remember that in the separable verbs the first part of the verb retains much of its original meaning (that is why it carries the stress), and that the two parts are not felt to be a close unity. In the inseparable verbs the first parts have lost much of their original meanings, and the two parts are felt to be a close unity. The student will realize how necessary it is to distinguish between separable and inseparable compounds. In the following chapters lists of such verbs will be given that have to be memorized—with the stresses.

#### Nouns with Two Plurals

Some nouns have two plurals, which are used without difference in meaning. E.g. *bed* (bed)—*bedde, beddens*; *lewe* (life)—*lewes, lewens*; *volk* (nation)—*volke, volkere*; *vrou* (woman, wife)—*vroue, vrouens*.

Sometimes there are two plurals, with different meanings, of which the sing. forms look and sound alike although carrying different meanings. E.g. *las* (joint (in wood, etc.))—*lasse*, and *las* (load, burden, difficulty)—*laste*; *maat* (companion, comrade)—*maats* or *maters*, and *maat* (measure, measurement)—*mate*; *saal* (hall)—*sale*, and *saal* (saddle)—*saals*; *gas* (gas)—*gasse*, and *gas* (guest)—*gaste*.

Sometimes two meanings have become attached to the same original word and these meanings are reflected in different plurals. E.g. *letter* (letter)—*letters* (letters of the alphabet), *lettere* (literature, fine arts); *man* (man, husband)—*mans* (men, husbands), *manne* (heroes, men, units); *lid* (joint, member or limb of body)—*ledemate* (limbs), and *lid* (member of club, etc.)—*lede*; *bad* (bath)—*baddens*, and (*swem*)*bad* (swimming bath)—(*swem*)*baaie*.

#### Ordinal Numerals

Of the first twenty numbers *een*, *agt*, and *twintig* have *-ste* added; the rest take *-de*. As in English, some numerals

undergo slight changes when the ordinals are formed from the cardinals.

*eerste* (first), *tweede* (second—note the spelling), *derde* (third), *vierde* (fourth), *vyfde* (fifth), *sesde* (sixth), *sewende* (seventh—note the *n*), *agste* or *agste* (eighth), *negende* or *neënde* (ninth), *tiende* (tenth), *elfde* (eleventh), *twaalfde* (twelfth), *dertiende* (thirteenth), *veertiende* (fourteenth), *vyftiende* (fifteenth), *sestiende* (sixteenth), *sewentiende* (seventeenth), *agtiende* (eighteenth), *negentiende* or *neëntiende* (nineteenth), *twintigste* (twentieth).

From *twintig* upwards all ordinal numbers take *-ste*, except those where the cardinals end in *twee*, *drie*, etc., up to *sewe*, and in *nege*, *tien*, etc., up to *negentien*—these again take *-de*. E.g. *dertigste*, *een-en-dertigste*, *veertigste*, *honderdste*, *duisendste*, *honderd-en-tweede*, *vierhonderd-en-tiende*, *tweeduisend vyfhonderden-negende*.

Of *eerste* there is an adverbial form: *eers* (first). E.g. *Hy het eers die moeder gesien en toe die kind* (He first saw the mother and then the child). *Eers* can also mean “formerly”, “not before”. The pred. a. and adv. *eens* means “once”, “even”, “just”, “unanimous”.

#### Vocabulary

From here onwards, except after monosyllabic verbs, which all take *ge-*, and the group mentioned in Chap. X, which never take *ge-*, the form of the past participle will be indicated in the Vocabularies in brackets after the verb. Where the past participle has the same form as the bare infinitive, a dash will be placed between the brackets.

*kuiër*, <sup>1</sup>*køeyør*, v., (*ge-*), visit; n., visit.

*kuiër by mense*, visit people, spend a holiday with people or at their place.

*ont'vang*, receive.

*graag*, gladly, readily, with pleasure, willingly, very much, really.

*hy ontvang graag gaste*, he likes receiving guests, lit. he gladly receives guests.

<sup>1</sup>*opstaan*, (*opge-*), —this indicates that it is a separable verb), stand up, get up, rise, from *staan*, v., stand.

<sup>1</sup>*opsaal*, (*opge-*), saddle, lit. saddle up, from *saal*, n., saddle.

<sup>1</sup>*lewendig*, lively, alive, from *lewe*, v. and n., live, life. The same

- suffix occurs in *'spoedig*, a. and adv., soon, speedy, speedily, from *'spoed*, n. and v., speed.
- 'perd*, *'pêrt*, horse, pl. *'perde*, note pronunciation *'pɛ:rə*.
- 'opklim*, (*'opge-*), climb up, mount, from *'klim*, v., climb.
- 'buurman*, neighbour, pl. *'bure*.
- 'aankom*, (*'aange-*), arrive, from *'kom*, come, get. Cf. *'inkom*, (*'inge-*), come in, come into, enter.
- 'melkkamer*, milk-room, dairy, from *'melk*, milk, and *'kamer*, room.
- 'emmers melk*, pails of milk, sing. *'emmer*; note, no prep. in Afr. phrase.
- op die lande* or *'lande'rye*, in the fields (cultivated fields). There is also a verb *'land*, meaning "land".
- 'saamstap*, (*'saange-*), walk together, from *'stap*, v., walk, go on foot, also n., pace, step, and *'saam*, together; *'saamstap met*, walk with, accompany. Cf. *'aanstap*, (*'aange-*), walk on, step out; *'afstap*, (*'afge-*), walk down, cover on foot.
- vir die derde keer*, for the third time, from *'keer*, n., turn, time. We can also say *vir die derde maal*, from *'maal*, n., time. There is also a verb *'maal*, meaning "grind" (of corn, etc.).
- 'regmaak*, (*'regge-*), repair, lit. make right, from *'reg*, right, correct, and *'maak*, v., make.
- 'oorneem*, (*'oorge-*), take over, from *'oor*, over, and *'neem*, v., take.
- 'haak*, v. and n., hook; *'haak aan*, hitch on, fasten to, couple to; there is a separable v., *'aanhaak*, (*'aange-*), couple, fasten, hook on.
- 'ploeg*, v. and n., plough; pl. of n. *'ploë*.
- 'dan*, then.
- 'omploeg*, (*'omge-*), trans. v., plough, lit. plough up or over.
- 'plaashuis*, farmhouse.
- 'hoog*, (*'hoë*), high.
- 'stoep*, stoep, veranda.
- 'groet*, greet.
- 'koffie*, coffee.
- 'bring*, bring.
- 'skinkbord*, *'skønkbort*, tray, from *'skink*, pour, serve, and *'bord*, plate, board.
- 'stomend*, steaming, from *'stoom*, v., steam.
- 'koppie*, cup; *'koppie koffie*, cup of coffee; note, no prep. in Afr. phrase.

- gaan sit*, sit down, lit. go sit.
- 'gasvryheid*, *'xasvryheid*, hospitality, from *'gas*, guest; *'vryheid*, freedom, from *'vry*, free.
- 'boodskap*, message, pl. *'boodskappe*.
- 'be'spreek*, discuss, from *'spreek*, v., talk.
- tot siens*, good-bye, lit. till seeing, from *'sien*, v., see.
- 'te'rugloop*, (*'terugge-*), walk back, from *'terug*, *'tê'roex* or *'trœx*, adv., back, and *'loop*, walk.
- 'te'rugkeer*, (*'terugge-*), return, lit. turn back, from *'keer*, v., turn.

*Exercise 6. Translate into English :*

(Especially in the country it is customary, in Afrikaans, to refer to an adult man who is a good friend of the family as *Oom* (uncle) or *Neef* (nephew or cousin), although he is no actual relative. Likewise *Tante* (aunt) and *Niggie* (niece or cousin). Retain these titles in the translation, as they are retained in Exercise 6a below, even though they are not customary in English, where we should use Mr., Mrs. and Miss).

Hy het reën voorspel. Ek kuier by my Oom Willem op sy plaas. Hy ontvang graag gaste. Ons staan vroeg op. Dit is 'n heerlike oggend. Die bediendes saal twee lewendige perde op. My oom en ek klim op en ry weg na die plaas van Oom Willem se buurman, Oom Jan Botha. Hulle is al die afgelope twintig jaar bure, en Oom Willem en hy is ou maats. Ons kom op sy plaas aan. Die voorman en twee natuurle loop van die stal na die melkkamer met die emmers melk. Hulle was besig om die koeie te melk. Die voorman sê sy baas is reeds op die lande, en hy stap saam met ons daarheen. Oom Jan is besig om aan 'n stukkende trekker te werk. Die trekker het gister vir die derde keer gebreek. Oom Jan het dit so pas reggemaak. Dit loop nou weer.

*Exercise 6a. Translate into Afrikaans :*

The foreman takes over the work. He first couples the plough to the tractor. He then climbs upon the tractor and ploughs the ground. (In these last two sentences the adv. of time is placed after the verb: *Hy haak eers . . .*; and *Hy klim dan . . .*). We walk back to the farmhouse with Uncle Jan. His wife has seen us, and is waiting on the high stoep. She greets us. Her pretty daughter has made coffee and brings a tray with steaming cups

of coffee. We sit down and enjoy the friendly hospitality. We have drunk the coffee and my uncle gives Uncle Jan an important message. My uncle received the message from the attorney in town. My uncle and Uncle Jan discuss the matter. We say good-bye, mount our horses and return to my uncle's farm.

*Write out in words* : 2nd, 4th, 8th, 14th, 20th, 25th.

## CHAPTER XV.

ADJECTIVES—COMPARISON; SEPARABLE AND  
INSEPARABLE VERBS; DATES*Adjectives—Degrees of Comparison*

The comparative degree of adjectives is usually formed by adding the suffix *-er*, and the superlative by adding *-ste*. E.g. *'aangenaam* (pleasant)—*aangenamer* (more pleasant)—*aangenaamste* (most pleasant); *skerp* (sharp)—*skerper*—*skerpste*. The superlative presents little difficulty: *-ste* is regularly added. When an adjective already ends in *-s*, the superlative has two *s*'s. E.g. *vas* (firm, fast, tied fast, tight)—*vasste*. (There is also a verb *vas*, meaning "fast").

When adding the *-er* for the comparative, the student must bear in mind the various spelling-rules that become applicable, viz.:

(1) Dropping one letter sign of a long vowel, e.g. *bleek* (pale)—*bleker*—*bleekste*.

(2) Doubling a final single consonant after a short vowel, e.g. *dun* (thin)—*dunner* (thinner—Eng. also has two *n*'s here)—*dunste*.

(3) Dropping a final *-d* or *-g* when it comes between two vowels after the addition of the *-er*, e.g. *breed* (broad)—*breër* (broader)—*breedste* (broadest); *koud* (cold)—*kouer* (colder)—*koudste* (coldest); *hoog* (high)—*hoër* (higher)—*hoogste* (highest); *vroeg* (early)—*vroeër* (earlier)—*vroegste* (earliest); *laag* (low)—*laer* (lower)—*laagste* (lowest). (There is also a noun *laer*, meaning "camp", "lager".) An exception here is *wreed* (cruel), which retains the *d* in the comparative: *wreder*—*wreedste*.

(4) Changing a final *f*, when it comes between two vowels, to *w* (if the preceding vowel is long) and to *ww* (if the preceding vowel is short), e.g. *doof* (deaf)—*dower* (more deaf)—*doofste* (deafest); *dof* (vague, dim (of light))—*dowwer*—*dofste*.

(5) Inserting a *t* between the adjective and the *-er*, where the adjective ends in a *-g* or an *-s*, and these sounds were originally

-gt (-cht) or -st in Dutch, e.g. *lig* (light)—*ligter* (lighter)—*ligste* (lightest); *sleg* (bad)—*slegter* (worse)—*slegste* (worst); *vas*—*vaster*—*vasste*; *woes* (wild)—*woester*—*woesste*.

There are some exceptions to the rules set out here. Adjectives ending in -r have a -d- inserted before the -er of the comparative is added. E.g. *ver* (far)—*verder* (farther)—*verste* (farthest); *suur* (sour)—*suurder*—*suurste*; *maer* (<sup>ma:ər</sup> or <sup>ma:r</sup>, lean, skinny)—*maerder*—*maerste*; <sup>1</sup>*bitter* (bitter)—*bitterder*—*bitterste*; *seer* (sore, painful)—*seerder*—*seerste*.

Then there are some irregular forms. The most common ones are: *goed* (good)—*beter* (better)—*beste* (best); *baie* (many, much)—*meer* (more)—*meeste* (most); *min* (little)—*minder* (less)—*minste* (least); *kwaad* (usually a pred. a., angry)—*kwater*—*kwaatste*; *nuut* (new)—*nuwer*—*nuuste*; *na*<sup>1</sup>*by* (near, usually adv. or pred. a.)—*nader*—*naaste* (nearest—often used attributively). The forms *meer* and *meeste* also serve for *veel* (many, much); and the forms *minder* and *minste* also serve for *bietjie* (<sup>1</sup>*bi:ci*, little) and <sup>1</sup>*weinig* (little, few). The forms *nader* and *naaste* are derived from *na*, prep., meaning “near”, usually used in the phrase *na aan* (near to). *Naaste* also occurs as noun, meaning “neighbour”, “fellow creature”; and *nader* also occurs as verb, meaning “come nearer”, “approach”. <sup>1</sup>*Enig* (only, unique) has no comparative form, but there is a superlative form <sup>1</sup>*enigste* (only, sole).

The adjectives *ru* (rough), *sku* (shy) and *slu* (sly) have a *w* before the -er of the comparative: *ru*—*ruwer*—*ruuste*; *sku*—*skuwer*—*skuuste*; *slu*—*sluwer*—*sluuste*.

The student will remember that the adjective *jong* (young) has a separate predicative form, *jonk*; no such difference of forms is found in the comparative and superlative: for both predicative and attributive positions, they are *jonger*—*jongste*. Likewise: *lang*, *lank* (long)—*langer*—*langste*.

There is in Afrikaans also a fortifying prefix *aller-* (of all) which can be added to the superlative forms to express a very high degree of the quality indicated by the adjective. E.g. *die allergrootste* (the greatest of all).

*Meer* (more) and *mees* (most, an adverbial form of *meeste*) are also used for forming degrees of comparison, but less frequently than “more” and “most” in English, their use being generally restricted to the degrees of comparison of past participles of

verbs, when used as adjectives, and to adjectives ending in -e in the predicative, positive form. E.g. *be'skadig* (*de-*), (damaged, from *be'skadig*, v., damage)—*meer beskadig*—*mees beskadig*; *ver<sup>1</sup>late* (deserted, forsaken, lonely, from *ver<sup>1</sup>laat*, v., desert, forsake, abandon, from *laat*, let, leave)—*meer verlate*—*mees verlate*; *tevrede* (satisfied)—*meer tevrede*—*mees tevrede*.

#### Common Phrases in Comparisons

“At last” is rendered by *ten laaste*; “at least” by *ten minste* or *minstens*; “at most” by *uiters*. “Too” in phrases like “too long” is rendered by *te*, e.g. *te lank*, *te groot* (too big).

“As . . . as” is expressed by *so . . . soos*; and “than” by *as* in comparisons. E.g. *so groot soos* (as great, or big as); *groter as* (greater than).

“More and more” is rendered by *al hoe . . .* E.g. *al hoe sterker* (stronger and stronger), *al hoe vaker* (more and more sleepy, from *vaak*, sleepy).

#### Superlative in Comparing Two Persons or Objects

In comparing two persons or objects we can say either *Jan is groter as Piet* (Jan is bigger than Piet) or *Jan is die grootste van die twee* (Jan is the bigger of the two, lit. biggest). In the latter construction the superlative is used in Afrikaans even when comparing two objects or persons, whereas in English the comparative is used for two, and the superlative for more than two.

#### Adjectives used as Nouns

Adjectives can be used as nouns. In the singular an -e is added and the plurals all take -s. E.g. *die sieke* (the sick one), pl. *siekes*; *die dooie* (the dead one)—*die dooies*. The English “one” in such phrases is not translated literally in Afrikaans.

#### Separable Verbs

<sup>1</sup>*wegkruip*, (*wegge-*), hide oneself, lit. creep away, from *kruip*, v., creep, crawl, and *weg*, away, off.

<sup>1</sup>*deurkruip*, (*deurge-*), crawl through, from *deur*, through.

<sup>1</sup>*wegloop*, (*wegge-*), walk off, walk away, run away, desert.

<sup>1</sup>*weghardloop*, (*wegge-*), run away, flee, from <sup>1</sup>*hardloop*, run, lit. walk hard.

<sup>1</sup>*weggaan*, (*wegge-*), go away.



- <sup>1</sup>*voorstel*, (*voorge-*), propose a motion, suggest a plan, introduce, lit. place forward, put in front, from *voor*, in front, before, in front of, and *stel*, place; *iemand voorstel aan*, introduce someone to.
- <sup>1</sup>*voorskryf*, (*voorge-*), prescribe.
- <sup>1</sup>*voortgaan*, (*voortge-*), go on, proceed, continue, from *voort*, forth, onwards.
- <sup>1</sup>*uitroep*, (*uitge-*), exclaim, lit. cry out, call out.
- <sup>1</sup>*uittrek*, (*uitge-*), pull out, march out; undress. The opposites are: <sup>1</sup>*intrek*, move in; and <sup>1</sup>*aantrek*, dress.
- <sup>1</sup>*uithaal*, (*uitge-*), take out, fetch out.
- <sup>1</sup>*uitsteek*, (*uitge-*), stick out, project; extend.
- <sup>1</sup>*uitkyk*, (*uitge-*), look out.
- <sup>1</sup>*uitsoek*, (*uitge-*), select, lit. seek out.
- <sup>1</sup>*waarneem*, (*waarge-*), observe; act as substitute.
- <sup>1</sup>*ronddra*, (*rondge-*), carry about, from *rond*, adv., about.
- <sup>1</sup>*vuilsmeer*, (*vuilge-*), make dirty, dirty, lit. smear dirty, from *smeer*, v., smear, and *vuil*.
- <sup>1</sup>*slegsê*, (*slegge-*), scold, give someone a dressing gown, lit. say bad.
- <sup>1</sup>*stilstaan*, (*stilge-*), stand still, from *staan* and *stil*, still, quiet, motionless, silent.
- <sup>1</sup>*visvang*, (*visge-*), fish, lit. catch fish, from *vang*, v., catch, *vis*, v. and n., fish. From *vang* derives *vangs*, n., catch.
- <sup>1</sup>*wortelskiet*, (*wortelge-*), take root, lit. shoot root, from <sup>1</sup>*wortel* root, carrot, and *skiet*, v., shoot.
- <sup>1</sup>*toestem*, (*toege-*), agree, from *stem*, n., voice, vote, v., vote.
- <sup>1</sup>*aanraai*, (*aange-*), advise, from *raai*, v., advise, guess.
- <sup>1</sup>*opkom*, (*opge-*), rise—of the sun, lit. come up.
- <sup>1</sup>*ondergaan*, (*onderge-*), go under, go down, set—of the sun.
- <sup>1</sup>*afkom*, (*afge-*), come down, get off.
- <sup>1</sup>*opklouter*, (*opge-*), scramble up, climb up.
- <sup>1</sup>*optel*, (*opge-*), pick up, lift; add up, from *tel*, v., count.
- <sup>1</sup>*oplig*, (*opge-*), lift up, raise.
- <sup>1</sup>*neersit*, (*neerge-*), put down.
- <sup>1</sup>*opspring*, (*opge-*), jump up, bounce.
- <sup>1</sup>*oploop*, (*opge-*), walk up, increase.
- <sup>1</sup>*opeet*, (*opgeëet*), eat up, consume.

#### Inseparable Verbs

*weerlê*, (—), refute, lit. lay against.

- aan'vaar*, (—), accept, begin, assume duty.
- oor'handig*, (—), hand over.
- onder'teken*, (—), sign, lit. under-sign, from <sup>1</sup>*teken*, v., sign, draw, and *onder*, under; cf. "underwrite".
- onder'skat*, (—), underestimate, from *skat*, v., estimate, value, assess.
- agter'volg*, (—), pursue, lit. follow after, from *volg*, v., follow, <sup>1</sup>*agter*, after, behind.
- om'singel*, (—), surround; the prep. *om* can mean "round".
- vol'hard*, (—), persevere.
- mis'bruik*, (—), misuse, abuse, from *mis*, amiss, wrong; allied to *ge'bruik*, v., use, n., use, usage.
- mis'handel*, (—), ill-treat; allied to *be'handel*, v., treat, deal with.
- oor'eet*, (—), overeat, from *oor*, over, *eet*, v., eat.
- ont'staan*, (—), begin, originate, arise. The same word serves as noun, meaning "origin", "beginning".
- ver'volg*, (—), pursue, persecute, prosecute. There is a noun *ver'volg* meaning "continuation", "sequel". *In die vervolg* means "in future".

#### Dates

As in English, dates are indicated in various ways. The date 12.1.1954 can be written like that, or *12 Januarie 1954* or *12 Jan. 1954*. Likewise 23.2.1955 can be written *23 Februarie 1955* or *23 Feb. 1955*. In Afrikaans there is no comma between the name of the month and the numeral indicating the year. The abbreviations of the months are: *Jan.*, *Feb.*, *Apr.*, *Jun.*, *Jul.*, *Aug.*, *Sept.*, *Okt.*, *Nov.*, and *Des.* *Maart* and *Mei*, being short, are not abbreviated.

#### Vocabulary

- <sup>1</sup>*uitgawe*, edition; expenditure, from <sup>1</sup>*uitgee*, (*uitge-*), give out, spend; publish.
- <sup>1</sup>*pragtig*, beautiful, from *prag*, splendour.
- <sup>1</sup>*uitsig*, n., view; *sig* comes from *sien*, v., see.
- be'merk*, v., notice, from *merk*, v. and n., mark.
- laat*, a., (—, *late*), late; adv., late.
- tempera'tuur*, temperature.
- sak*, intr. v., sink.

*le'moen*, orange—the fruit.

*'suurlemoen*, lemon, lit. sour orange, from *suur*, sour.

*ge'lukkig*, happy, from *ge'luk*, n., happiness, good luck, good fortune.

*deel*, n., part; v., divide.

*slim*, a., (—, *-me*), clever, smart, cunning.

*konstabel*, *kō'stu:bəl*, constable, policeman.

*dief*, thief; pl. *diewe*.

*'bende*, n., gang; pl. *bendes*.

*buit*, booty, loot.

*die po'lisie*, the police.

In the following two exercises some adverbs are introduced of which the forms and degrees of comparison are the same as those of the adjectives, both in English and in Afrikaans.

*Exercise 7. Translate into English :*

Hy het 'n vroeër uitgawe van die boek. Ek het 'n later uitgawe. Die weer word warmer. Die son kom op. Dit word ligter. Die kinders staan vroeg op. Die jongste van die twee seuns vang vis in die rivier; die oudste klim die berg op. (Note position of the prep. *op*; the phrase means "climbs up the mountain". *Klim op die berg* would mean "climb on to the mountain".) Hy word al hoe moeër. Hy stop om te rus en gaan sit op 'n rots. Die grond is natter as die rotse. Hy het 'n hoë punt bereik, maar hy volhard en klim hoër. Hy kom nader aan die kruin van die berg. Hy staan ten laaste op die hoogste punt en geniet 'n pragtige uitsig. Hy keer dan terug en klim al hoe laer. Hy bemerk sy broer by die rivier. Die broer het drie visse gevang. Een van hulle is klein, maar die tweede is groter, en die derde is die grootste.

*Exercise 7a. Translate into Afrikaans :*

The days become shorter and the nights longer and colder. The sun rises later and sets earlier. The temperature sinks lower. The dim light becomes dimmer. July and August are the coldest months of the year. The orange is sour but the lemon is more sour. The most beautiful (use *mooi*) lady wears her newest clothes. She now feels more satisfied. I feel less happy; I wear my oldest clothes. This is the wildest and most deserted part of our country. Pieter's plan is good but Jan's

plan is the better of the two. Jan is more clever than Pieter. The cruel man ill-treats his dogs. The policemen pursue the thieves. They go farther and farther. They have surrounded the gang. The thieves hand over their booty to the police.

*Write in Afrikaans :* 3 Apr., 1929.

IMPERSONAL VERBS; PREPOSITIONS;  
 DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS; FRACTIONS;  
 SEPARABLE AND INSEPARABLE VERBS; PLURALS

*Impersonal Verbs*

More often than in English a sentence in Afrikaans is constructed with *dit* (it) as subject, where the *dit* does not indicate a particular thing or person. This happens with the impersonal verbs, where this particular construction is usually obligatory. E.g. *Dit reën* (It is raining). *Dit hael* (Hail is falling). *Dit het verlede nag geryp* (There was a frost last night, lit. It frosted last night; the v. is *ryp*). *Dit gaan goed met hom* (He is keeping well, lit. It goes well with him). *Dit spyt my* (I am sorry, I regret it; cf. *spyt*, n., regret, sorrow). *Dit staan jou vry om te gaan* (You are free to go, You are at liberty to go, lit. It stands you free to go; the v. is *'vrystaan*, (*vryge-*), be permitted). *Dit verwonder my om so 'n verhaal te hoor* (I am surprised to hear such a story, lit. It causes me wonder to hear such a story; *so 'n*, such a; another word for "story" is *'storie*). *Dit ge'val my* (It pleases me; here we can also use the verb with a particular subject, e.g. *Sy geval my*, She pleases me).

*Prepositions*

Various prepositions have already been introduced and the student will have noticed that, whereas some can be translated easily there are others of which the usage is very idiomatic, as also in English and other languages. The examples should be studied carefully and memorised, and the student should bear in mind that it is impossible to deal fully here with the prepositions in Afrikaans. Only a selection can be discussed in this and the following chapters.

(1) *Aan*. *Aan* often has the meaning of Eng. "to", e.g. *Ek heg waarde aan sy opinie*, *o'pini* (I attach worth or value to his opinion); *Ek sal 'n brief aan die man stuur* (I shall send a letter to the man). It also has the meaning of Eng. "of", "from",

"on", or "at". E.g. *Ek dink aan jou* (I think of you). *Hy ly aan hoofpyn* (He suffers from headaches; *'hoofpyn* from *hoof*, head, *pyn*, pain; note the sing. in Afr. and the pl. in Eng.). *Die gesin sit aan tafel* (The family are sitting at table; *ge'sin*, family, refers to father, mother and children; *fa'milie*, family, includes wider relationships). The usual prep. for Eng. "on" is *op*, but sometimes "on" has to be translated by *aan*. E.g. *Daar is baie appels aan die bome* (There are many apples on the trees).

(2) *Agter*. *Agter* can be used where "after" is used in English to indicate motion. E.g. *Hy hardloop agter die dief aan* (He runs after the thief). Note the two prepositions in this phrase in Afr., one before the object governed, and one after. We shall return to this later. Most often *agter* is used to indicate place, and is equivalent to Eng. "behind". E.g. *Hy staan agter my* (He stands behind me). *Agter* cannot be used to express time as in "after the holidays", nor to render "look after the children". Here the Afr. phrases are: *na die vakansie*, and *sorg vir die kinders* (provide for, or take care of the children) or *pas die kinders op* (mind the children; *'oppas*, (*opge-*), take care of, be careful). For the imperative forms see Chap. XXVII.

(3) *In*. *In* means "in", e.g. *Hy sit in die tuin* (He sits in the garden); and Eng. "into" is often rendered by repeating the *in* after the object governed: *Hy gaan in die huis in* (He goes into the house).

(4) *Met*. A basic meaning of *met* is "with", but it is also used where in English we use "to", "in", "on" or "at". E.g. *Ek is tevrede met sy werk* (I am satisfied with his work). *Hy praat met haar* (He talks to her). *Ek is teleurgesteld met haar* (I am disappointed in her; *te'leurgesteld* comes from *te'leurstel*, (*teleurge-*), disappoint). Note the idioms: *Hy gooi die hond met 'n klip* (He throws a stone at the dog); *met vakansie* (on holiday); *Ek is hiermee besig* (I am busy on this, lit. with this, or herewith); *met ander tye* (at other times).

*Demonstrative Pronouns*

The forms "this" and "that" can both be rendered by *dit* or *dié* (with acute accent). "This" can also be rendered by *hier* (here) plus *die*: *hierdie*; and "that" by *daar* (there)

plus *die* : *daardie*. *Dit* can also be used substantively, e.g. *Dit is myne en dit is joue* (This is mine and that is yours)—said with suitable inflections or gestures to mark the difference between the two *dit*'s. The other forms can be used substantively or adjectivally. E.g. *Hierdie boeke is myne en daardie is joue* (These books are mine and those are yours). These forms are both singular and plural; hence the word "these" is rendered by *hierdie*, *dié* and *dit*, and "those" by *daardie*, *dié* and *dit*. Substantive "those" can also be rendered by *diegene*.

The form "this one" is translated by *hierdie een* or *dié een*; and "that one" by *daardie een* or *dié een*. "The same" is *die'selfde*, and "such like" is *'dergelike*. "Such", the attr. a., is translated by *'sulke*.

The forms of "that" and "those", used substantively after prepositions, are similar to the objective forms of the third personal pronoun (see Chap. X). Hence we have *daarvan* (of that, of those, about that, about those); *daaroor* (of that, of those, about that, about those); *daarop* (on that, on those); *daarmee* (with that, with those); *daaruit* (out of that, from that, thence); *daarby* (in addition to that, besides); *daarsonder* (without that, without those; the prep. *'sonder* means "without"); etc. Similarly the forms of "this" and "these", used substantively after prepositions, are rendered by *hier* plus the preposition. Hence: *hiervan* (of this, of these, about this, about these); *hierin* (in this, in these); *hieroor* (of this, of these, about this, about these); *hiermee* (with this, with these, herewith). These forms with *hier-* and *daar-* are used when referring to inanimate objects, actions, etc.

#### Fractions

The noun "half" is rendered by *'halfte* in Afrikaans: *die helfte* (the half of something), *'n helfte* (a half). The adjective is *half*, (—, *halwe*): *'n half jaar* or *'n halwe jaar* (half a year), etc. In the last form the indefinite article in English follows "half", in Afrikaans it precedes *halwe*.

"A year and a half" is rendered by *'n jaar en 'n half* or *anderhalf jaar*.

Then we have: *'n derde* (a third), *tweederdes* (two thirds), *'n kwart* (a quarter, a quart), *driekwart* (three quarters—in Afr. the sing. form is used). Note, however: *'n kwar'taal* (a term

of three months, one quarter of a year); *'n kwar'tier* (a quarter of an hour); *'driekwartier* (three quarters of an hour).

From here the forms become regular. E.g. *'n agste* (an eighth), *vyf-agstes* (five eighths), *sewe-twaalfdes* (seven twelfths), etc.

"The whole year," etc., is rendered by *die hele jaar*, etc., from *heel*, a., (*hele*), whole. "For a whole year," etc., is rendered by *'n hele jaar lank*, etc., from *lank*, adv., long, for a long time.

#### Separable Compound Verbs

*'oopmaak*, (*oopge-*), tr. v., open, lit. make open, from *oop*, a., open.

*'oopgaan*, (*oopge-*), intr. v., open, lit. go open.

*'toemaak*, (*toege-*), tr. v., close, lit. make closed, from *toe*, a., closed, shut.

*'toegaan*, (*toege-*), intr. v., close, lit. go closed.

*by'eenkom*, (*byeenge-*), come together; *by'een*, together, from *een*, one.

*'blootstel aan*, (*blootge-*), expose to, from *bloot*, a., (*blote*), naked.

*'deelneem aan*, (*deelge-*), take part in.

*'neerval*, (*neerge-*), fall down, from *neer*, down, downwards, *val*, v., fall. There is also a noun *val* (fall, trap) which occurs in *'waterval* (waterfall(s))—note sing. in Afr.

*'leeggooi*, (*leegge-*), pour out until empty, empty by pouring out, from *leeg*, a., empty, *gooi*, v., pour, throw.

*'volgooi*, (*volge-*), pour in until full, fill by pouring in, from *vol*, a., (—, *-le*), full.

*'volmaak*, (*volge-*), fill, lit. make full.

*'volskink*, (*volge-*), pour full, fill up.

*'saamneem met*, (*saamge-*), take along with one, from *saam met*, together with.

*na-aap*, (*nageaap*), imitate, ape, from *aap*, n., ape, monkey.

*'omgooi*, (*omge-*), throw over, from *oor*, adv., over.

*'staatmaak op*, (*staatge-*), depend on, reckon on.

#### Inseparable Compound Verbs

*mis'luk*, (—), fail; allied to *ge'luk*, impers. v., succeed: *dit geluk my*, I succeed.

- om'vat*, (—), include, embrace, lit. take round, from *vat*, v., take, grasp.  
*onder'myn*, (—), undermine, from *myn*, n., mine.  
*vol'tooi*, (—), finish, complete.  
*onder'skep*, (—), intercept, from *skep*, v., scoop, ladle. There is also a verb *skep*, meaning "create".  
*onder'streep*, (—), underline, from *streek*, n., line, stroke, dash.  
*onder'vra*, (—), question someone, from *vra*, v., ask.  
*onder'steun*, (—), support, from *steun*, v., and n., aid, support, help.  
*oor'tref*, (—), surpass, from *tref*, v., strike, hit.  
*oor'win* or *oor'wen*, (—), conquer, vanquish, be victorious, from *wen* or *win*, v., win.  
*oor'heers*, (—), dominate, from *heers*, v., rule.

#### Plurals of Compound Nouns in -man

These compounds show some irregularities. We have already had *buurman*—pl. *bure*, and *voorman*—pl. *voormanne*. Some of the others have *-mans* or *-manne* as plurals, some have *-lui* or *-liede* (i.e. people) instead of *-mans* or *-manne*, and some drop the *-man* and take the plural of the first part of the compound. E.g. *'werksman* (labourer)—*werksmanne* or *werklui*; *'ambagsman* (artisan, tradesman, from *'ambag*, n., trade, craft)—*ambagsmanne* or *ambagslui*; *'staatsman* (statesman, from *staat*, n., state)—*staatsmanne*; *'koopman* (merchant, lit. buying man, from *koop*, v., buy)—*koopmans*, *koopmanne*, *koopliede*, or *kooplui*; *'timmerman* (carpenter, from *'timmer*, do carpentry)—*timmermans*; *'seeman* (mariner, from *see*, sea)—*seelui*; *'landsmán* (one living on land)—*landsliede*; *'Engelsman* (Englishman)—*Engelse*; *'Fransman* (Frenchman)—*Franse*.

#### Vocabulary

From here onwards the plurals of nouns, where necessary, will be indicated in brackets after the noun, e.g. *'oefening*, n., (-e, -s), exercise, will mean that the pl. of *oefening* can be formed by adding either *-e* or *-s*.  
*'poging*, n., (-e, -s), effort, from *poog*, v., try.  
*Amerika*, a'me:rika, America.  
*'jagter*, hunter, from *jag*, v., hunt, allied to *jaag*, v., chase.

- mis skiet*, miss in shooting, from *skiet*, v., shoot, *mis*, v., miss, pred. a and adv., amiss, wrong.  
*raak skiet*, hit in shooting, from *raak*, v., touch, hit, adv. on the mark, to the point, hit, touched.  
*ag slaan op*, pay attention to, from *slaan*, v., hit, *ag*, n., attention.  
*'leermeester*, teacher, instructor, from *leer*, v., teach or learn, and *'meester*, teacher, master. Afr. has only one verb for "teach" and "learn", viz., *leer*. Note also *leer*, n., doctrine, teaching; ladder.  
*'skietoefening*, shooting exercise or practice, from *skiet* and *'oefening* from *'oefen*, (ge-), exercise, practise.  
*belang stel in*, be interested in, from *belang*, interest, *belange*, interests; cf. *be'langrik*, important.  
*'melkemmer*, milk-pail.  
*'roomafskeier*, cream-separator, from *room*, n., cream, *skei*, v., separate, divide, *'afskei*, (afge-), separate, sever, lit. separate off.  
*'sonnig*, sunny, from *son*, sun.  
*'dokter*, doctor (medical).  
*ver'sigtig*, careful(ly).  
*onbekend*, 'ombekent, unknown, from *ken*, v., know, and *be'kend*, known, well-known.  
*taak*, task.  
*sko'lier*, scholar, school-child, from *skool*, school.  
*besig hou*, keep busy, from *hou*, v., hold, keep, contain.  
*'vorige*, attr. a., former, from *voor*, before.  
*'binne*, within, inside.  
*skuit*, boat, usually a small one.  
*moed*, courage.  
*veg*, v., fight.

#### Exercise 8. Translate into English:

Dit sal môre sneeu. Hy loop in die see in. Sulke manne is gevaarlik. Dit staan julle vry om te rook. Die maer man het agter die bus aan gehardloop, maar sy poging het misluk. Die Franse staatsmanne is tevrede met die Engelse se hulp, maar ontevrede met dié van Amerika. Dit is 'n stoel, 'n mens sit hierop; daardie is 'n bed, 'n mens slaap daarop. Hy het 'n aangename droom gedroom. Hierdie meisie het 'n halwe appel geëet, en daardie meisie die ander helfte. Die twee jagters skiet na dieselfde bok. Die een skiet mis maar die ander

een skiet die bok raak. Die tweede een het ag geslaan op sy leermeester se advies en deelgeneem aan die skietoefeninge, maar die eerste een het te min belang gestel daarin. Die een oortref nou die ander. Die voorman op die plaas het die melkimmers leeggegooi en die roomafskeier volgegooi.

*Exercise 8a. Translate into Afrikaans :*

I am sorry. It rained yesterday, it is raining today, and it will rain tomorrow. You (use  *jy* ) are thinking of that sunny day last week. The doctor questioned her carefully. She was suffering from an unknown disease. The doctors have conquered many diseases. They attach much value to this opinion of his (translate:  *van hom* ). They depend on it. The new servant looks after these children, the old servant takes care of those. This boy threw a big stone at that dog. This task was difficult, the scholars were busy on it for a whole term; but that task was more difficult, it kept them busy for half a year. They completed a former task within two months. The train was three quarters of an hour late. The friendly old mariner took the children with him to his boat. The soldier fought with courage.

CHAPTER XVII.

ADVERBS—FORMS, COMPARISON, KINDS;  
CONCENTRATED SIMILES; PREPOSITIONS;  
SEPARABLE AND INSEPARABLE VERBS

*Adverbs—Forms*

In English, as in Afrikaans, the adverb sometimes has the same form as the adjective, e.g. "much" and "high", Afr.  *baie*  and  *hoog* , but often the adverb is formed by adding "-ly" to the adjective, e.g. "beautiful"—"beautifully". In Afrikaans various suffixes can be added to adjectives to form adverbs, e.g.

-lik :  *her'haalde* , attr. a., repeated, from  *herhaal* , v., repeat— *her'haaldelik* , adv., repeatedly;  *ge'woon* , a., usual, ordinary, customary— *gewoonlik* , adv., usually, ordinarily.

-liks :  *groot* , a., great, big— *grootliks* , adv., greatly, in a great measure;  *kort* , a., short, brief— *kortliks* , adv., in short, briefly.

-s :  *hoog* , a., high— *hoogs* , adv., highly, in a sentence like  *Ek is hoogs tevrede*  (I am highly satisfied). Likewise  *onverwag* , a., (-te), unexpected, opposite of  *verwag* , a., (-te), expected, from  *verwag* , v., expect— *onverwags* , adv., unexpectedly.

-elings :  *blind* , a., blind— *blindelings* , adv., blindly.

But more often than in English the adverb in Afrikaans has the same form as the adjective, especially the predicative adjective. E.g.  *Dit is 'n helder dag*  (It is a bright or clear day);  *Die son skyn helder*  (The sun shines brightly).  *Die huis is gerieflik*  (The house is comfortable);  *Ons reis gerieflik*  (We travel comfortably). Likewise :  *behoorlik* , proper, due, properly, duly. Such cases are indicated, where possible and necessary, as follows :  *helder* , bright(ly).

Where the adjective in the attributive position is inflected, the inflection forms a difference between the adjective and the adverb, which is usually not inflected. In a limited number of cases, however, the adverb is also inflected. This occurs where an adverb (usually a polysyllabic adverb) qualifies as attributive adjective (usually a monosyllabic adjective). E.g.  *'n Taamlieke groot huis*  (A fairly big house;  *'taamliek* , also a., fair, passable,

tolerable). When it qualifies a polysyllabic adjective, such an adverb is usually not inflected. E.g. 'n *Taamlik betroubare man* (A fairly dependable man; *be'troubaar*, dependable, allied to *vertrou*, v., trust, *vertrou op*, depend on).

Often, of course, there is no adverbial counterpart for a particular adjective, and vice versa.

Note the formation of the following adverbs by reduplication: *sing-sing* (while singing, a-singing); *fluit-fluit* (a-whistling, easily); *gou-gou* (very quickly, from *gou*, quickly, swiftly, soon): *kort-kort* (every now and then, frequently, repeatedly at short intervals); *nou-nou* (in a very short time, a short while ago). Also the following couple: *Hoe . . . hoe* (The . . . the . . .) in expressions and constructions like *Hoe harder jy werk, hoe gouer sal jy klaar wees* (The harder you work, the sooner will you be finished). Note: *klaar*, finished.

#### Comparison of Adverbs

Many adverbs have degrees of comparison and the suffixes for the formation of the comparative and the superlative degrees are, as for the adjectives, *-er* and *-ste* respectively. E.g. '*rustig* (at rest, restfully, from *rus*, n., rest)—*rustiger*—*rustigste*. Some forms are irregular and should be noted specially. E.g. '*dikwels* (often)—'*meermale*, '*meermaal*, or *meer dikwels* (more often)—'*meeste* (most often); *graag* (gladly)—'*liefs* or '*liewers* (rather, preferably)—'*graagste* (most gladly); '*selde* (seldom)—'*minder* (less frequently)—'*minste* (least). Sometimes *verder* (farther) is used to form the comparative, and *heel* (whole, quite, complete) to form the superlative. E.g. '*agter* (behind, at the back)—'*verder na agter* (farther behind) or *verder agtertoe* (farther backwards)—'*heel agter* (right at the back, hindmost); *bo* (above)—'*verder na bo* (farther up, higher up) or *verder boontoe* (farther upwards)—'*heel bo* (right on top, at the top); *voor* (in front)—'*verder na voor* (farther in front) or *verder vorentoe* (farther forward)—'*heel voor* (right in front); '*onder* (underneath, below)—'*verder na onder* (farther down, lower down) or *verder ondertoe* (farther downwards)—'*heel onder* (right at the bottom).

Often the superlative degree of the adverb in Afrikaans is preceded by the definite article, *die*: *Hy het die hardste gewerk* (He worked hardest).

#### Kinds of Adverbs

The following lists of adverbs, grouped into kinds, should be memorised. Some additional meanings of the words have been added. The rest of this Chapter is designed mainly to extend the student's vocabulary.

##### (1) Adverbs of Time.

*Van* is used in some adverbial forms bearing the meaning "this", e.g. *van'dag* (today), *vanmôre*, *fa'môre*, or *van'oggend* (this morning), *van'middag* (this afternoon), *va'naand* (this evening). *Eer-* (before), *oor-* (over), and *naas-* (next to, beside) are coupled to '*gister* (yesterday) and '*môre* (tomorrow) to indicate certain days, e.g.: '*eergister* (the day before yesterday), '*naaseergister* (the day before the day before yesterday, three days ago), '*oormôre* (the day after tomorrow), '*naasoormôre* (the day after the day after tomorrow, three days from now).

The following form a special group: '*smôrens* or '*soggends* (in the mornings; note the formation, *s* plus *oggend* plus *s*), '*smiddags* (in the afternoons), '*saans* (in the evenings, of an evening), '*be'dags* (by day, in the daytime), '*snags* (in the night-time).

General adverbs of time: '*aldag* (every day), '*netnou* (in a very short time, a short while ago, from *net*, just, and *nou*, now); *so pas* (just, a short while ago); '*aanstons* (presently, in a short while); '*tevore* (before, previously); *kort tevore* (shortly before); '*voorheen* (formerly); '*voortaan* (henceforth, in future); '*telkens* (repeatedly, every now and then); '*be'tyds* (in time); '*flussies* (a short while ago); '*lankal* (a long while ago, for a long time); *al lankal* (a long time ago already, for a long time already); *lank gelede* (a long time ago, from *gelede*, adv., ago, past); '*altyd* (always); *soms*, '*somtyds*, '*par'tykeer* or '*par'tymaal* (sometimes); *gou* (quickly, swiftly, soon); *weer* (again); '*dadelik* or '*on'middellik* (immediately; note spelling); '*teens'woordig* (nowadays); *vanme'lewe*, '*fanmø'le:vø* or '*famø'le:vø*, (in the old days); '*in'tussen* or '*onder'tussen* (in the meantime, meanwhile); '*sedert* or '*sinds*, '*sons*, (since); '*me'teens*, '*plotseling* or '*skielik* (suddenly); '*nouliks* or '*pas* (hardly, just); '*nog* (still, yet); '*daarna* (after that); *nou die dag* (a few days ago); '*alweer* (again); '*naderhand* (afterwards, later); *so lank* (as long as, for the time being).

(2) *Adverbs of Place.*

'*tussen* (between); '*binne* (inside, indoors); '*buite* (outside, out of doors); '*onder* (below); '*links*, '*lêgs* (to the left; also a., left-handed); '*regs* (to the right; also a., right-handed); '*op* (up); '*af* (down); '*uitme'kaar* (apart, separated, lit. out of each other); '*duskant* (on this side of, this side, from *kant*, n., side); '*anderkant* (on the other side of, on the other side); '*êrens* (somewhere); '*oral* or '*orals* (everywhere); '*rond* (round, around); '*rondom*, '*rontom*, (right round, on all sides of); '*bokant* (above, over, from *bo*, above; also n., the upper side); '*buitekant* (outside; also n., the outside); '*onderkant* (below; also n., the lower side); '*vlak by* (close by); '*om'hoog* (aloft, on high, up, upwards).

-*toe*, -*vandaan*, and -*heen* are used to indicate direction: '*boontoe* (upwards); '*ondertoe* (downwards); '*hierheen* or '*hierna'toe* (hither, this way); '*daarheen*, '*soheentoe* or '*soontoe* (thither, to that place); '*hiervandaan* (from here, hence); '*daarvandaan* (from there, thence).

(3) *Adverbs of Manner.* It is in this section that the adverb often has the same form as the predicative adjective.

*be'koorlik* (charmingly, from *bekoor*, v., charm, attract); '*effens* (slightly); '*sleg* (badly); '*hoe* (how); '*lieflik* (sweetly, from *lief*, a., (*lieuwe*), sweet, dear); '*vinnig* (fast, rapidly); '*stadig* (slowly); '*langszaam* (slowly); '*moelik* (with difficulty); '*maklik* (easily); '*ple'sierig* (happily, merrily, cheerfully, from *ple'sier*, n., pleasure, enjoyment, fun); '*duidelik* (clearly); '*hemels* (heavenly); '*kortaf* (abruptly, from *kort*, short); '*lelik* (in an ugly manner); '*reg* (correctly); '*ver'keerd* (wrong, wrongly, incorrectly); '*sag* and '*saggies* (softly); '*vreeslik* (terribly, from *vrees*, n., fear, terror, and v., fear, be afraid, dread); '*to'taal* (totally, altogether, from *to'taal*, n., total, amount); '*regop* (erect, upright, straight up, vertically).

(4) *Miscellaneous Adverbs.* Some of these also occur as conjunctions.

'*daarom* (therefore, for that reason); '*hierom* (for this reason, because of this); '*derhalwe* (therefore); '*dus* (thus, therefore, hence); '*daardeur* (by those means); '*egter* (however); '*nogtans* (nevertheless); '*nietemin* (none the less, nevertheless);

*tog* (yet; this word has a variety of meanings, see Chap. XXVII); '*daarmee* (therewith, with that); '*verder* (furthermore, moreover); '*eenmaal* or '*eenkeer* (once); '*ver'eers* or '*vir'eers* (firstly, to begin with, for the time being); '*sels* (even); '*daar'by* (in addition to, thereto); '*nog* (in addition to); '*as'ook* (as well as); '*eindelik* (at last, from '*einde*, n., end); '*in'teendeel* (on the contrary, from '*teendeel*, lit. opposite part); '*waar'skynlik* (probably, from *waar*, true, *skyn*, v., appear); '*ver'niet* (gratis, in vain, lit. for nothing); '*byna* or '*amper* (nearly); '*net* (just, exactly, only; there is also a noun, *net*, meaning "net"); '*algemeen* (generally); '*in die algemeen* (in general); '*alte* (very, too); '*boonop* (besides, moreover, in addition to); '*sover* (so far); '*so'wel* (as well as, also); '*verreweg* (by far); '*net soos*, often contracted to '*nes* (just as).

*Concentrated Similes*

Degree is sometimes expressed, as in English, by compounding two or more words, e.g. '*pikswart* (pitch black, from *pik*, n., pitch, *swart*, black). Afrikaans has many such compounds. E.g. '*skatryk* (very rich, from *skat*, n., treasure, *ryk*, rich); '*brandarm* (very poor); '*silwerskoon* (very clean, from '*silwer*, silver); '*kliphard* (as hard as a rock); '*kurkdroog* (very dry, lit. cork-dry); '*doodstil* (very still or quiet, from *dood*, death); '*stokoud* (very old); '*gal-bitter* (as bitter as gall, *gal*); '*spekvet* (very fat, from *spek*, n., bacon, pork); '*rotsvas* (as firm as a rock); '*springlewendig* (very lively, very much alive, from *spring*, v., jump); '*penreguit* (as straight as possible, from '*reguit*, straight); '*beeldskoon* (very beautiful, from *beeld*, n., image; from *beeld* derives '*voorbeeld*, example); '*skreeulelik* (very ugly, from *skree* or *skreeu*, v., shout, cry out); '*bloedrooi* (blood red, from *bloed*, blood, *rooi*, red).

*Prepositions*

(1) *Bo*. *Bo* carries the meaning of Eng. "above" or "over", sometimes of "to". E.g. *Kinders bo twaalf jaar moet volprys betaal* (Children above, or over twelve years have to pay full price). *Ek verkies koffie bo tee* (I prefer coffee to tea).

(2) *Bo-op*. A basic meaning of *op* is "on" (indicating position), and *bo-op* is equivalent to "on top of". E.g. *Die seun staan bo-op die muur* (The boy stands on top of the wall).



(3) *By*. *By* is often used where "at" is used in English. E.g. *Ek het hom by die teater ontmoet, te'at'et* (I met him at the theatre). "By that time" is rendered by *teen daardie tyd*.

(4) *Na*. A basic meaning of *na* is "to" or "towards" (implying direction) and in this sense *na* is often coupled with *toe* (towards). *Na* can also mean "after" (relating to time), "at" and "for". E.g. *Hy kom na Kaapstad toe* (He is coming to Cape Town). *Sy stap na die spoorwegstasie* (She walks to the railway station; 'spoorwegstasie from *spoor*, n., rail, *weg*, n., road, 'stasie, station). *Sy aard na haar moeder* (She takes after her mother; cf. *aard*, n., nature, disposition of person). *Hulle het na aandete gaan wandel* (They went for a walk after dinner; 'aandete from *aand*, evening, 'ete, meal, food). *Hy kyk na die boek* (He looks at the book). Often the *toe* is used alone to render "to" (direction), and then is placed after the noun. E.g. *Ek gaan vandag skool toe* (I am going to school today). For spelling-rules relating to *toe*, see Chap. VII.

#### Separable Compound Verbs

- 'oorbly, (*oorge-*), remain over, be left over, stay.  
 'oorhaal, (*oorge-*), persuade, lit. fetch over; from *haal*, fetch.  
 'perdry, (*perdge-*), ride on horseback.  
 'boekhou, (*boekge-*), keep books, do book-keeping.  
 'platskiet, (*platge-*), shoot down, from *plat*, flat, down.  
 'borgstaan, (*borgge-*), stand surety, from *borg*, n., guarantor.  
 ge'lukwens, (*gelukge-*), congratulate, from *geluk*, luck, happiness, *wens*, v. and n., wish.  
 ge'russtel, (*gerusge-*), set a person's mind at rest, calm someone, from *ge'rus*, peaceful, quiet, calm.  
 'goedkeur, (*goedge-*), approve, from *keur*, v., examine, judge.  
 'grootpraat, (*grootge-*), boast, lit. talk big.  
 'hoogag, (*hoogge-*), esteem highly.  
 'deurkom, (*deurge-*), get through.  
 'voorlê, (*voorge-*), submit, lie in ambush, waylay, lit. lay in front.  
 'saampak, (*saamge-*), pack together, gather (of clouds), from *saam* and *pak*, v., pack.  
 'ophou, (*opge-*), hold up, stop.  
 te'rugbetaal, (—), pay back. This verb takes no *-ge-* because the second part begins with *be-*.  
 te'ruggaan, (*terugge-*), go back, return.

#### Inseparable Compound Verbs

- voor'sien, (—), supply, furnish, provide; *voorsien van*, provide with.  
 voor'kom, (—), prevent.  
 agter'haal, (—), overtake.  
 mis'lei, (—), mislead, deceive.  
 om'hels, (—), embrace; allied to *hals*, n., neck, also found in 'halsnoer, necklace.  
 om'ring, (—), surround, lit. ring round.  
 om'skryf, (—), describe, circumscribe.  
 onder'breek, (—), interrupt, from *breek*, v., break.  
 onder'handel, (—), negotiate, from 'handel, v., act, trade, deal.  
 onder'neem, (—), undertake.

#### Vocabulary

- 'hulpeloos, helpless(ly), from *hulp*, n., help, allied to *help*, v., help.  
 'jammer kry, feel sorry for. *Kry* means "get" or "receive", but here is equivalent to "feel". Cf. *Ek kry koud*, I feel cold, or am cold.  
 be'minlik, lovable, lovably, from *be'min*, v., love.  
 be'raam, v., make, frame (plans), from *raam*, v. and n., frame.  
 argitek, arxi'tok, n., (-te), architect.  
 stadsraad, 'statsraat, city council, town council, from *stad* and *raad*, council, board, joined by linking *s*.  
 'vorder, v., (*ge-*), progress; allied to *ver*, far, *verder*, farther. From *vorder* is derived 'vordering, n., progress.  
 'vrolik, adv., merrily, cheerfully, a., (-e), merry, cheerful, happy, gay.  
 wolk, n., cloud.  
 be'gin, v. and n., begin, start.  
 ry, n., row, line.  
 onder'wyser, teacher, from *wys*, v., show; *onder'wys*, v., (—), teach; cf. 'onderwys, n., education.  
 ten'toonstelling, (-s, -e), exhibition, show from *ten'toonstel*, v., (*tentoonge-*), put on show, exhibit, from *toon*, v., show, *stel*, v., put place.,  
 'bushalte, bus-stop, from 'halte, stopping place, siding (of railway), *halt*, v., stop.  
 kerk, church.  
 ge'bou, n., (-e), building, from *bou*, v., build.

*skaars*, adv., hardly, scarcely.

*plek*, n., place, room, space.

*'hoogstens*, at (the) most, at the outside, at best, lit, at the highest.

*'heeltemal*, quite, completely.

*ple'sierig*, a., happy, merry, cheerful.

*ry*, v., ride, run (of train, bus, machine), go.

*'perdewa*, horse-drawn wagon, from *perd*, horse.

*Exercise 9. Translate into English :*

Ek het altyd vir my arme Oom Jan jammer gekry. Hy was so 'n vriendelike maar hulpelose mens. Ek het hom voorheen taamlik dikwels van geld voorsien. Hy het selde daarvan boekgehou. Ek het verlede jaar vir hom borggestaan. Hy het ondertussen ook telkens van ander mense geld geleen. Sy planne het misluk en hy het ten laaste bankrot gespeel. Die regter in die hof het baie kortaf met hom gepraat. Dit was 'n vreeslike groot skok vir ons almal. Ek het my geld verloor en die ander mense ook hulle s'n, maar Oom Jan is 'n beminlike kêrel en ons sal hom weer help. Ek het hom nou die dag weer gesien. Dit was eergister. Hy voel die skok baie diep, maar hy het nietemin reeds weer nuwe planne beraam en sal al die geld terugbetaal. Hy sal voortaan versigtiger wees. My neef, Piet, is deur-en-deur goed en werk fluks. Hy werk smôrens, smiddags en saans. Hy werk bedags op kantoor en studeer saans. Hy is byna klaar met sy studies. Hy sal maklik deur sy eksamens kom. Mense ag hom baie hoog.

*Exercise 9a. Translate into Afrikaans :*

The architect submitted the plans last month. The Town Council will probably approve them the day after tomorrow. There were many difficulties formerly but the work will progress more quickly in future. The sun is shining brightly and the children are playing merrily outside. Clouds gather and it starts to rain suddenly. The children now play indoors. The rain will soon stop. The children will play outside again presently. The scholars have just (*so pas*) arrived. They are just (*net*) in time. They now stand in a row. The smallest boy stands right in front and the tallest (*grootste*) right at the back. The scholars as well as the teacher are going to an exhibition

this morning. They walk to the bus-stop on this side of the church. There is a big building on the other side. There is hardly enough space in the bus. There is room for twenty at the most, but the thirty scholars are quite happy. The bus runs slowly but a horse-drawn wagon goes even more slowly. (Use *ry* for both "runs" and "goes".)

## CHAPTER XVIII.

NOUNS—GENDER; SEPARABLE AND INSEPARABLE  
VERBS; PREPOSITIONS; TIME BY WATCH

## Nouns—Gender

Just as in English, there is no grammatical gender in Afrikaans; there are only distinctions to indicate difference in sex. Afrikaans has a large number of feminine forms and they are used much more frequently than similar forms in English. The fact that a noun refers to a feminine being is indicated in various ways in Afrikaans:

(1) *By adding suffixes* to the words indicating the masculine, e.g. *-e, -es, -ise, -in, -ster*. Some rules governing these can be given, but the student should learn the individual words as he comes across them. Here are some examples in each class. Note how the stress sometimes changes.

(a) *-e*

*'eggenoot* (husband, lit. marriage-companion, from *eg*, n., marriage, *ge'noot*, n., companion)—*'eggenote* (wife). The fem. form is the same as the form of the masculine pl., but has its own pl.: *'eggenotes*.

Sometimes an original Dutch *t* returns in the feminine form, e.g. *joerna'lis* (journalist)—*joerna'liste*.

Where the masculine ends in *-'aris*, this changes to *-a'resse* in the feminine with change of stress, e.g. *sekre'taris* (secretary)—*sekreta'resse*.

The *-eur* of some words, derived from French, changes to *-euse*, e.g. *regis'seur* (producer of plays)—*regis'seuse*.

(b) *-'es*

*prins* (prince)—*prin'ses*; *'danser* (dancer)—*danse'res*; *onder'wyser* (teacher)—*onderwyse'res*; *'eienaar* (owner)—*eiena'res*.

Sometimes an original Dutch *d* returns in the feminine form, e.g. *voog* (guardian)—*voog'des*.

(c) *-ise*

This is applicable to masculine forms in *-eur* and *-or*, e.g. *ak'teur* (actor)—*ak'trise*; *'lektor* (lecturer)—*lek'trise*.

(d) *-in*

*vriend* (friend)—*vrien'din*; *'koning* (king)—*koning'in*; *Jood* (Jew)—*Jo'din*; *waard* (host, innkeeper)—*waar'din*. Note: *'lugwaardin* (air hostess in an aeroplane).

Sometimes there are accompanying changes in pronunciation and spelling, e.g. *graaf* (earl, count)—*gra'vin* (countess). Sometimes it is the masculine *-en* that changes to *-in*, e.g. *'heiden* (heathen)—*heidin*; *Christen* (Christian)—*Christin*.

(e) *-ster*

This usually occurs where the noun is derived from a verb: *-er* is added to indicate the masculine agent, and this *-er* changes to *-ster* to indicate the feminine, e.g. *'helper* (helper)—*'helpster*.

Sometimes a *d, t, g* or *f*, dropped or changed in the masculine, returns in the feminine form, e.g. *'leier* (leader)—*'leidster*, *'leitster*; *'waarsêer* (fortune-teller, lit. true-sayer)—*'waarsegster*; *'gewer* (giver, donor, from *gee*, v., give)—*'geefster*.

In Christian names the feminine form often ends in *-a*, e.g. *Jo'hannes* (John)—*Jo'hanna*.

(2) *By using separate words*. Here are some examples: *heer* (man, gentleman)—*'dame* (lady); *me'neer* (sir, Mr.)—*me'vrou* (madam, Mrs.); *'monnik* (monk)—*non* (nun); *swaer* (brother-in-law)—*'skoonsuster* (sister-in-law); *'bruidegom* (bridegroom)—*bruid*; *'outa* (old native man)—*'aia*; *'wevenaar* (widower)—*'weduwee*; *kêrel* (young man, lover, fiancé)—*nooi* (young lady, fiancée); *jong* (coloured or native man)—*meid*.

In some cases we have three forms:

Common gender.	Masculine.	Feminine.
<i>vark</i> (pig)	<i>beer</i> (boar)	<i>sog</i> (sow)
<i>hoender</i> (' <i>hunnər</i> , fowl)	<i>hen</i> (hen)	<i>haan</i> (cock)
<i>perd</i> (horse)	<i>hings</i> (stallion)	<i>'merrie</i> (mare)
<i>hond</i> (dog)	<i>reun</i> (male dog)	<i>teef</i> (bitch)
<i>skaap</i> (sheep)	<i>ram</i> (ram)	<i>ooi</i> (ewe).

(3) *By using various prefixes or suffixes*.

(a) *-man/-vrou*. *'buurman* (male neighbour)—*'buurvrou*.

(b) *-heer/-vrou*. *'gasheer* (host)—*'gasvrou* (hostess).

(c) *-vader/-moeder*. 'skoonvader (father-in-law)—'skoon-moeder.  
 (d) *-seun/-dogter*. 'kleinseun (grandson)—'kleindogter. Note:  
 'kleinkind (grandchild).

(e) 'mannetjie, 'manici (male, lit. little man)/'wyfie, 'voëfi (female). These can be used substantively, as prefixes or as suffixes. E.g. 'leumannetjie (male lion)—'leuwvyfie (lioness—there is also a form *leuwin*); 'mannetjieseend (gander, from *eend*, duck)—'wyfie-eend (goose). Example of use as substantive: *Die leuwvyfie het stilgestaan maar die mannetjie het gespring* (The lioness stood still but the male jumped).

(4) *By additional words*. E.g. *dame, vrou* or 'vroulik (a., womanly, hence feminine); *sol'daat* (soldier)—'vroulike soldaat; 'Engelsman—Engelse vrou; 'Duitsers (German)—Duitse vrou.

#### Separable Compound Verbs

'kleinkry, (*kleinge-*), understand, lit. get small.  
 'kwaadpraat, (*kwaadge-*), speak evil.  
 'liefhê, (*liefgehad*), love; infin. *om lief te hê*; *Ek het jou lief* (I love you).  
 'kwytskeld, (*kwytge-*), forgive (a sin), let off (someone), remit (debts, etc.).  
 'vasmaak, (*vasge-*), make fast, fasten, tie, secure.  
 'losmaak, (*losge-*), untie, loosen, disconnect, lit. make loose, from *los*, loose, and *maak*; cf. *los*, v., let go, let loose.  
 'loslaat, (*losge-*), let loose, free, set free, release.  
 'mooipraat, (*mooige-*), plead, lit. speak well, politely, beautifully.  
 'natgooi, (*natge-*), water, pour water on, lit. throw wet.  
 'natmaak, (*natge-*), wet, moisten, lit. make wet.  
 'omkoop, (*omge-*), bribe, lit. buy over.  
*oor'eenkom*, (*ooreenge-*), agree, come to agreement.  
 'plaasvind, (*plaasge-*), take place, happen, lit. find place.  
 'doodmaak, (*doodge-*), kill, lit. make dead.  
 'opkrop, (*opge-*), bottle up (feelings, anger, etc.); not "crop up".  
 'saamgaan, (*saamge-*), accompany, go along; *saamgaan met*, go along with.  
 'stillhou, (*stilge-*), stop, pull up, lit. hold still.  
 'uitstap, (*uitge-*), walk out, step out, get out.  
 ver'bystap, (*verbyge-*), walk past.  
 'aflê, (*afge-*), do, cover (a distance), lay down.  
 'aanhou, (*aange-*), keep on, continue, keep (animals), persevere.

#### Inseparable Compound Verbs.

*oor'brug*, (—), bridge, lit. bridge over.  
*oor'nag*, (—), pass the night.  
*oor'tuig*, (—), convince.  
*oor'weldig*, (—), overwhelm; allied to *ge'weld*, n., force, and *ge'weldig*, enormous(ly), powerful(ly).  
*weer'kaats*, (—), reflect.  
*vol'doen*, (—), satisfy, suffice; *voldoen aan*, comply with.  
*weer'klink*, (—), re-echo, resound, from *klink*, v., sound, touch glasses; cf. *klank*, n., sound, 'weerklink, n., echo.  
*weer'spreek*, (—), contradict, lit. speak against.

#### Prepositions

(1) *Oor*. A basic meaning of *oor* is "over" (relating to place), but it can also mean "about" or "by way of", "via". E.g. *Sy het oor die brug gestap* (She walked over the bridge). *Hulle stoot die wa oor die pad* (They push the wagon over the road; *stoot* occurs also as noun, "stab", "blow", "push"). *Ek is bekommerd oor hom* (I am concerned about him). *Hierdie trein loop oor Bloemfontein na Johannesburg* (This train runs to Johannesburg via Bloemfontein). *Oor* can also be used in time phrases of the type: *Hy sal oor 'n uur kom* (He will come in an hour's time.)

(2) *Op*. A basic meaning of *op* is "on" (relating to position), but it is also used to mean "at". E.g. *Die boek lê op die tafel* (The book is lying on the table; *lê* is both a trans. and an intrans. v., hence it renders both "lie" and "lay"). *Ons leer meetkunde op skool* (We learn, or study geometry at school; 'meetkunde from *meet*, v., measure). The phrase *lyk op* means "resemble", "look like": *Hy lyk op sy moeder* (He resembles, or looks like his mother; note *lyk*, v., look, seem, appear; there is also a noun *lyk*, "corpse").

(3) *Om*. *Om* has various meanings: "round", "at" (referring to time), "for". E.g. *Hulle loop om die huis* (They walk round the house). *Jy moet om twee-uur hier wees* (You must be here at two o'clock). *Hy het ons om hulp gevra* (He asked us for help).

(4) *Onder*. *Onder* means "under" (relating to position), but can also mean "among" and "during". E.g. *Die kat sit onder die tafel* (The cat is sitting under the table). *Hy was ge'wild*

*onder die studente* (He was popular among the students). 'n *Paar mense het onder die toespraak uitgestap* (A few people walked out during the speech).

### Time by Watch

A "watch" is a *hor'losie* or *oor'losie*. These words also mean "clock". The Afr. word *klok* means "bell".

Other words relating to time: *uur* (hour), pl. *ure*; *mi'nuut*, *mə'nyt* (minute), pl. *minute*, *mə'nytə*; *se'konde* (second), pl. *sekondes*.

Phrases: *Dit is eenuur* (It is one o'clock). *Dit is vyf minute oor een* (It is five minutes past one). Just as in English, the word *minute* can be left out: *Dit is tien voor drie* (It is ten to three). *Dit is kwart oor een* (It is a quarter past one; note, no 'n before *kwart* in this phrase).

In the indication of the half-hour Afrikaans differs from English: English refers back to the former hour; Afrikaans refers to the next hour. E.g. *Dit is half-twee* (It is half past one).

Further phrases: *Dit is vyf-en-twintig voor twee* (It is twenty-five to two). *Dit is kwart voor twee* (It is a quarter to two). *Binne 'n uur* (within an hour, in an hour's time).

Note the abbreviations: *vm.* for 'voormiddag (a.m., forenoon); *nm.* for 'namiddag (p.m., afternoon); and the indications; *om vyfuur* (at five o'clock); *om vyf oor vyf* (at five past five); *om tien voor ses* (at ten to six); *om half-ses* (at half past five).

In asking the time, one says: *Hoe laat is dit?* (What is the time, lit. How late is it?)

### Vocabulary

*hou van*, v., like.

'*tikster*, female typist, from *tik*, v., type; mas. *tikker*.

*ver'trek*, v., leave, depart, from *trek*, v., move, move away.

'*beide*, both. Another word for "both" is '*altwee*.

*trou*, marry, get married.

*be'roemd*, famous, from *roem*, n., fame, glory.

'*skrywer*, writer, author, from *skryf* or *skrywe*; fem. '*skryfster*.

'*vliegtuig*, aeroplane, from *vlieg*, v., fly. Note: *tuig*, pl. *tuie* (harness); in *vliegtuig* and *voertuig* (vehicle) *tuig* means "apparatus".

*nog*, a., more, another; *nog een*, another one, one more.

'*rekenkunde*, arithmetic, from '*reken*, v., reckon, calculate.

'*ongeluk*, accident, ill fortune.

*ge'vangene*, prisoner, from *vang*, v., catch, lit. the caught one; cf. *ge'vangenis*, prison.

'*onskuld*, innocence, from *skuld*, n., guilt, debt, fault, v., owe. *gids*, n., guide.

### Exercise 10. Translate into English:

Die joernalis se eggenote het met hom saamgegaan na die konferensie. Sy is self 'n joernaliste. Sy hou van die werk. Die orreliste bespeel die orrel in die kerk. Die tikster het die brief baie netjies getik. Sy is 'n bekwame sekretaresse. Die trein oor Kimberley na Johannesburg vertrek om half-nege vm. en die een oor Bloemfontein na Durban om kwart voor drie nm. Die atleet het die myl afgelê in drie minute ses-en-vyftig sekondes. Hy hardloop vinnig. Die eienaar van die plaas hou hoenders aan. Daar is tien hane en baie henne. Daar is ook 'n paar eende onder hulle, twee mannetjies en omtrent twaalf wyfies. Die wyfies lê eiers. Die kleinseun het sy oupa nog geld geskuld, maar hy het mooigepraat met sy oupa, en sy oupa het hom weer gehelp. Die reisigers het in 'n hotel oornag. Hierdie perd is 'n hings, daardie een 'n merrie.

### Exercise 10a. Translate into Afrikaans:

The queen and the princess congratulated the dancers (female). The producer (female) works more easily with actors than with actresses. Both my brother and my sister got married. I now have a brother-in-law and a sister-in-law. The air-hostess helped the famous authoress in the aeroplane. Three trains arrived this afternoon, the first at five to two, the second at twenty past three, and the third at half past four. Another one will arrive in an hour's time. The lady teacher teaches the young children arithmetic. The children love her (use *liefhê*). An accident happened at ten o'clock this morning, and all the trains will be late. The prisoner convinced the court of his innocence. The voice of the guide re-echoed in the ravine. The harder he works, the sooner will he be finished.

## CHAPTER XIX.

NEGATIVES IN SIMPLE SENTENCES;  
PREPOSITIONS; SAME VERB, SEPARABLE AND  
INSEPARABLE; ADVERBIAL FORMS OF NUMERALS.*Negatives in Simple Sentences*

The Afrikaans word for "not" is *nie*, and it is often used twice, this double use being a characteristic of Afrikaans. The second *nie* usually stands at the end of the sentence, and the first *nie* (a) after the verb (or first auxiliary), (b) after a pronoun in the objective case, (c) before or after a direct object, or (d) according to the element to be negated. The first *nie* never stands between the subject and the verb (or first auxiliary); and the English auxiliary verb "to do" is not translated in such negative sentences. E.g. *Hy skryf nie 'n brief nie* (He does not write a letter). *Ek het hom nie gisteraand gesien nie* (I did not see him last night). *Ek het nie gister 'n brief geskryf nie* or *Ek het gister nie 'n brief geskryf nie* (I did not write a letter yesterday). *Hy ploeg met osse, nie met 'n trekker nie* (He ploughs with oxen, not with a tractor).

Note the expressions *nog nie* (not yet) and *glad nie* (not at all, from *glad*, a., smooth, adv., smoothly, quite). E.g. *Hy het nog nie geskryf nie* (He has not written yet). *Hy het glad nie geskryf nie* (He did not write at all).

The place of the first *nie* can be taken by some other negative, such as *geen* (a., no); *nooit* (never, negative of *ooit*, ever); *'niemand* or *geen'een* (no one, negative of *iemand*, someone); *nêrens* (nowhere, negative of *êrens*, somewhere); and *niks* (nothing, negative of *iets*, something). E.g. *Hy lees nooit 'n boek nie* (He never reads a book). *Niemand het gekom nie* (No one came). *Ek sien hom nêrens in die tuin nie* (I see him nowhere in the garden). *Daar is geen kos in die kas nie* (There is no food in the cupboard; *kas*, (-te), can also mean "case" or "box"). *Jy het vanmôre nog niks geëet nie* (You have eaten nothing yet this morning). *Hulle het geeneen gesien nie* (They saw no one).

Sometimes only one negative is used. This occurs in simple sentences in the present tense, consisting of (a) subject and verb only (except separable compounds), (b) subject, verb (except separable compounds), and personal pronoun in the objective case, or (c) subject, verb and an adverb like *ge'woonlik* (usually) or *'dikwels* (often) where the one *nie* may be left out according to the emphasis. E.g. *Hy skryf nie* (He does not write). *Dit betaam jou nie* (It does not behove you; *betaam*, an impers. v.). *Ek begryp hom nie* (I do not understand him; *begryp*, understand, grasp, from *gryp*, seize, clutch, grasp). *Hy weer'spreek dit nie* (Hy does not contradict it). *Dit skeel my nie* (It makes no difference to me, I don't care; *skeel*, impers. v., differ, matter). *Hy skryf gewoonlik nie*; *hy telefo'neer* (He usually doesn't write; he telephones; note the verb in Afr., *telefo'neer*, (ge-)). *Hy praat dikwels nie* (He often doesn't speak). *Hy praat nie dikwels nie* (He doesn't speak often).

With separable compound verbs in such sentences the double negative must be used. E.g. *Sy staan nie op nie* (She does not get up). *Hy stem nie toe nie* (He does not agree).

Where one of the other negatives (*nooit*, *niks*, *nêrens*, *niemand*) is used in such sentences, the final *nie* is optional. E.g. *Hy skryf nooit (nie)* (He never writes). *Hulle lees niks (nie)* (They read nothing). *Sy swem nooit (nie)* (She never swims).

When a short sentence bears an exceptional emphasis, the first *nie* is sometimes dropped. E.g. *Ek swém vandág nie!* (I am not swimming today!) *Dit is nutteloos—die man verstaan die werk eenvoudig nie!* (It is useless—the man simply does not understand the work!; *'nutteloos* from *nut*, n., use, usefulness, allied to *'nuttig*, a., useful; *een'voudig*, simple, simply, from *'eenvoud*, simplicity, lit. one-fold).

The negative of *of . . . of* (either . . . or) is *nog . . . nóg*, and with it no final *nie* is used. E.g. *Of Jan of Anna sal kom. Nóg Jan nóg Anna het gekom.* (Either Jan or Anna will come. Neither Jan nor Anna came.)

Sometimes the *nie* qualifies, not the verb of a sentence but some adverb or adjective. The sentence as a whole is positive but carries a negative extension or phrase. In such cases the second *nie* comes at the end of the negative extension or phrase, which may or may not conclude the sentence. Therefore, it can happen that the second *nie* is placed in the middle of the

sentence. E.g. *Die kind het op die gras, nie ver van die huis nie, gespeel* (The child played on the graas not far from the house).

### Prepositions

(1) *Teenoor*. 'Teenoor can mean "over against", "towards" (in certain senses), or "opposite". E.g. *Die be'stuurder was altyd vriendelik teenoor my* (The manager was always friendly towards me). *Ons kan, teenoor sy argumente, ander argumente voorbring* (We can, over against his arguments, advance other arguments; the sing. is *argu'ment*; 'voorbring, (voorge-), put forward, bring forward, advance). *Hulle woon teenoor ons* (They live opposite us; here the prep. 'oorkant, opposite, could also have been used).

(2) *Tot*. *Tot* can mean "until" (relating to time), or "to". E.g. *Ons werk in die middag tot vyfuur* (We work till five in the afternoon; 'middag, afternoon, lit. midday). *Hy het nie gekom nie—tot ons spyt* (He did not come—to our regret).

(3) *Saam met*. *Saam met* means "together with", but should often be rendered only by "with". E.g. *Hy het die pakkie saam met die brief geneem en hulle gepos* (He took the parcel together with the letter and posted them; 'pakkie, parcel, from *pak*, n., pack, bundle; *pos*, v., post). *Sy het saam met my dorp toe gegaan* (She went with me to town). Often the *saam* is used alone. E.g. *Hulle gaan dorp toe en ek gaan saam* (They are going to town and I am going with (them)).

(4) *Teen*. *Teen* can mean "at", "by", "towards" (indicating time), or "against". E.g. *Ek het die potlode teen drie pennies stuk gekoop* (I bought the pencils at three pence a piece; *stuk*, adv., each, a piece). *Hy vertrek teen die einde van die maand* (He leaves towards the end of the month). *Die kind het sy kop teen die tafel gestamp* (The child bumped its (lit. his) head against the table; *stamp*, v., bump).

### The Same Compound Verb, Separable and Inseparable

Sometimes the same compound verb, with different meanings, occurs both as separable and as inseparable verb, the first with the stress on the first part, and the second with the stress on the last part. Often the separable compound carries the more literal meaning, the inseparable the more figurative meaning. Frequently these compounds begin with the prepositions *deur*,

*onder*, *oor* and *voor*. E.g. 'onder-gaan, (onderge-), (set, go under, go down) and *onder'gaan*, (—), (undergo, endure, suffer). In sentences: *Die son gaan onder* (The sun sets). *Die man ondergaan sy straf* (The man undergoes his punishment). In this and in the following few chapters short lists of such compounds will be given.

'*deurloop*, (deurge-), walk through; *deur'loop*, (—), traverse, follow a course of study.

'*deursteek*, (deurge-), push through, cut through, pierce, from *steek*, v., prick, stab, thrust, stick; *deur'steek*, (—), stab, run through.

'*deurtrek*, (deurge-), pull through, go through, march through; *deur'trek*, (—), pervade, permeate, soak.

'*deurdring*, (deurge-), penetrate, pierce; *deurdring in*, penetrate into; *deur'dring*, (—), impress, permeate.

'*deursny*, (deurge-), cut in two, cut through, from *sny*, v., cut; *deur'sny*, (—), cross, intersect, traverse.

### Adverbial Forms of Numerals

The words "firstly" or "in the first place" are rendered by *ten eerste* or 'eerstens; "secondly" by *ten tweede* or 'tweedens; and "thirdly" by *ten derde* or 'derdens. In numbers higher than this, the form with *ten* and the ordinal numeral is usually used, e.g. *ten vyfde*, *ten elfde*, etc.

### Vocabulary

*ge'skree*, n., shouting, from *skree*, v., shout. The prefix *ge-* is sometimes used to form nouns from verbs, cf. *ge'praat* (talking, talk, from *praat*, talk), *ge'roep* (shouting, cries, from *roep*, call), *ge'lag* (laughter, from *lag*, v., laugh, n., laughter), *ge'hoor* (audience, hearing, from *hoor*, hear). The prefix also occurs in various other nouns, e.g. *ge'heim* (secret), *ge'sag* (authority), *ge'weer* (rifle, fire-arm, gun), *ge'stel* (constitution of body; there is also a conj. *gestel* or *gesteld*, meaning "supposing").

*vleis*, meat; the Dutch form *vlees* is sometimes retained in the expression *nòg vis nòg vlees*, neither fish nor flesh.

*ont'dekkingsreisiger*, explorer, from *dek*, v., cover, 'ontdek, discover, *ont'dekking*, (-s, -e), discovery; *reis*, v., travel, 'reisiger, traveller.

'oerwoud, primeval forest, jungle, from *woud*, n., wood, forest.  
 'landengte, isthmus, lit. land-narrowness; *engte*, 'ɛŋtə, from  
*eng*, narrow.  
 'onbedagsaam, inconsiderate; opposite of *be'dagsaam*, con-  
 siderate, allied to *dink*, think.  
*self'sugtig*, selfish(ly), from '*selfsug*, selfishness; cf. *self'sug-*  
*tigheid*, selfishness.  
*langs*, *lans* or *lās*, prep., next (to), beside, along.  
*bio'skoop*, cinema.  
*be'gin*, n., beginning, start; cf. *begin*, v., begin, start.  
*onver'skillig*, careless(ly), indifferent(ly).  
*dom*, stupid(ly).  
*ver'duideliking*, (-e, -s), explanation, from '*duidelik*, clear(ly),  
*ver'duidelik*, v., make clear, explain.  
*prof'essor*, (-e, -s), professor.  
*stu'deerkamer*, n., study (room).  
*gor'dyn*, n., curtain.

*Exercise 11. Translate into English :*

Hy dans nie. Hy skryf nooit. Hy het geen boeke nie. Hy ken  
 geeneen. Sy praat met niemand nie. Jy is nie siek nie, jy was  
 nie siek nie, en jy sal nie siek wees nie. So 'n geskree betaam  
 jou nie. Ek het nie gister die brief gepos nie. Hy sal nie môre  
 die brief ontvang nie. Ons kuiergaste gaan stad toe. Ek gaan  
 nie saam nie. Daar loop 'n bus, nie ver van ons huis nie, reguit  
 na die stad. Ek het hulle glad nie gesien nie. Hulle het nie deur  
 die tuin geloop nie. Dit is nóg vis nóg vlees. Die kind het sy  
 toon nie teen 'n stuk hout gestamp nie maar teen 'n klip.  
 Die gevangene het nie sy straf ondergaan nie. Die son gaan  
 nie vroeg onder nie; dit gaan laat onder. Die ontdekkings-  
 reisiger het deurgedring in die oerwoud. Hy sny die appel deur.  
 Die kanaal deursny die landengte. Ek is siek maar dit skeel  
 hom nie. Ek hou nie van hom nie. Hy is ten eerste nie netjies  
 nie, ten tweedé onbedagsaam, en ten derde te selfsugtig.

*Exercise 11a. Translate into Afrikaans :*

You (pl. informal) did not have your books yesterday. You  
 (sing. informal) will not have a book tomorrow. He does not  
 swim. She does not swim well. I do not swim at all. I do not  
 feel well at all. I know nothing about the accident. I did not see

it. They do not live opposite us; they live next to the church  
 on the other side of the river. They are going to the cinema  
 but I am not going with them. He is not coming at the beginning  
 of next month, but at the end of the month after that. We don't  
 work till half past four, we work till five o'clock in the afternoon.  
 The manager has never yet been friendly towards anyone.  
 She is either careless or lazy. No, she is neither the one nor the  
 other; she is just stupid. The explanation does not penetrate.  
 The professor always smoked in his study, and the smoke  
 permeated the curtains.



## CHAPTER XX.

NOUNS—DIMINUTIVES; PREPOSITIONS AND  
DOUBLE PREPOSITIONS; SAME VERB, SEPARABLE  
AND INSEPARABLE*Nouns—Diminutives*

Revise Chap. IV on the pronunciation of the diminutives. Diminutives are used much more frequently in Afrikaans than in English, not only to express smallness but also to convey endearment, familiarity, sympathy, sarcasm, contempt, etc. Even when the word *klein* (small, little) is used as adjective, the noun following it is usually in the diminutive form. E.g. *n klein tafeltjie*, 'ta:ʔəlci (a small table); *'n kort tydjie*, 'tɔ:ci (a short time or while); *my skatjie*, 'ska:ci (my little treasure); *ou 'boetie* (old chum, lit. old little brother, from *boet*, familiar and intimate form of *broer*, brother); *Ek voel jammer vir die ou vroujie*, 'frouci (I feel sorry for the little old woman); *Is jy bang jou handjies sal vuil word?*, 'ɦa:ncis (Are you afraid your precious hands will become dirty!, lit. your little hands); *Daardie ou klerkie!* (That little clerk!—said contemptuously; 'klerkie from *klerk*, clerk).

So strong is the tendency to use diminutives in Afrikaans that adjectives used as nouns, some pronouns, adverbs and interjections can also sometimes take diminutive endings. E.g. *hierdie kleintjie*, 'kle:nci (this little one); *'n onder-onsie*, 'ɔ:si (a little "entrenous", meeting of intimate friends, private business); *Hy loop saggies* (He walks softly); *stilletjies*, 'stələ:ncis (quietly, softly, secretly, from *stil*, adv., still, quietly); *effentjies*, 'ɛfə:ncis (very slightly, from *'effens*, slightly); *Vadertjie!*, 'fa:dərci (Good Lord!, Good gracious!, lit. Little Father); *Hemeltjie!*, 'ɦe:mələ:nci (Good heavens!, Dear me!, lit. little heaven).

Diminutives are formed by the addition of various suffixes according to the termination of the original word. The suffixes used are: *-ie*, *-jie*, *-tjie*, *-etjie*, *-pie*, and *-kie*.

(1) *-ie* is added to nouns ending in *-s*, *-k*, *-p*, *-g*, and *-f*, e.g.

*kas* (box)—'kassie; *boek* (book)—'boekie; *lamp* (lamp, electric bulb)—'lampie; *saag* (saw)—'sagie; *duif*, (*duiwe*), (dove)—'duifie.

(2) *-jie* is added to nouns ending in *-d* and *-t*, e.g. *hoed* (hat)—*hoedjie*, 'ɦu:ci; *voet* (foot)—*voetjie*, 'vu:ci; *ent* (end)—*entjie*, 'ɛnci (a little way, a short distance; stump, piece).

(3) *-tjie* is added to nouns ending in a vowel or diphthong, or in *-l*, *-n* or *-r* (where the *-l*, *-n* or *-r* is preceded by a long vowel, a diphthong, or the vowels *oe* or *ie*, or an unstressed short vowel), e.g. *tou* (rope)—*toutjie*, 'tu:ci (little rope, string); *paal* (pole)—*paaltjie*, 'pa:lci; *tuin* (garden)—*tuintjie*, 'tu:nci; *tier*, (*-e*, *-s*), (tiger)—*tiertjie*, 'ti:rci; *'lepel* (spoon)—*lepeltjie*, 'le:pəlci; *tree* (step, pace)—*treetjie*, 'tre:ci; *stoel* (chair)—*stoeltjie*, 'stulci. If a monosyllable ends in *-a*, or if a final *-a* is stressed, the diminutive ending is preceded by an apostrophe comma, e.g. *pa* (father)—*pa'tjie*, 'pa:ci.

(4) *-etjie* is added to nouns ending in *-l*, *-m*, *-n*, *-r*, or *-b* (where they are preceded by a short vowel) and in *-ng* (where the *-ng* is preceded by a stressed syllable), e.g. *vul*, (*-le*, *-lens*), (foal)—*vulletjie*, 'vu:lci; *stem* (voice)—*stemmetjie*, 'stəmici; *man* (man)—*mannetjie*, 'manici; *ster* (star)—*sterretjie*, 'stəri:ci; *rib*, (*-be*, *-bes*), (rib)—*ribbetjie*, 'rəbici; *ring* (ring)—*ringetjie*, 'rənci.

(5) *-pie* is added to nouns ending in *-m* (where the *-m* is preceded by a long vowel, a diphthong, *ie*, an unstressed short vowel, an *l* or an *r*), e.g. *boom* (tree)—*boompie*; *duim* (thumb)—*duimpie*; *riem* (thong)—*riempie*; *'besem* (broom)—*'besempie*; *skelm* (rogue, rascal)—*'skelmpie* (lit. little rogue, but used as term of endearment to little children; cf. *skelm*, a. and adv., cunning(ly)); *arm* (arm)—*armpie*.

(6) *-kie* is added to nouns ending in *-ng* (where the stress is not on the final syllable). The *-g-* is dropped, the *ŋ* sound is represented by the *n*, and *-kie* is added. E.g. *'koning* (king)—*koninkie*, 'kɔ:nənci.

These are the regular forms, but there are also some exceptions and some irregular diminutives, of which the most common are the following: *boet* (brother)—*'boetie*; *blad* (page of a book, newspaper, magazine)—*blaadjie*, 'bla:ci; *pad* (road)—*paadjie*, 'pa:ci; *vat*, (*-e*), (vat, tub, barrel)—*vaatjie*, 'fa:ci; *gat* (hole)—*gaatjie*, 'xa:ci; *wa* (wagon)—*waentjie*,

'**va:nci**; *nooi*, (-ens), (girl, young lady, sweetheart)—*nooientjie*, '**no:ipci**; *lewe*, (-s, -ns), (life)—*lewentjie*, '**lev:vnci**; *glas* (glass, tumbler)—*glasie*, '**xl:asi**. To these must be added two words that have two singular diminutives: '*tante* (aunt)—*tantetjie*, '**tantæci** (the regular form) and '*tannie*; and *oom* (uncle)—'*oompie* (the regular form) and '*omie*.

Sometimes there are two plural diminutives: *goed* (goods, any object)—*goedjies*, '**xuicis**, and *goetertjies*, '**xutærcis**; *klip* (stone)—'*klippies* and *klipbertjies*, '**kløpærcis**; *maat* (companion)—*maatjies*, '**ma:icis**, and *matertjies*, '**ma:tærcis**; *lam* (lamb)—*lammetjies*, '**lamæcis**, and *lammertjies*, '**lamærcis**; *kalf*, (*kalwers*) (calf)—'*kalfies* and *kalwertjies*, '**kalværcis**. In the sing. dim. of the last four only *klippie*, *maatjie*, *lammetjie* and *kalfie* occur.

Some words in Afrikaans have a diminutive form, derived from Dutch forms, but carry no diminutive meaning, the original nouns having dropped out of use or having acquired other meanings. From these diminutive forms new diminutive forms have often developed, which consequently look like double diminutives. E.g. *boontjie*, '**bo:ipci** (bean)—the original *boon* is sometimes heard; *ertjie*, '**ærci** (pea); *jongetjie*, '**jønici** (boy)—the word *jong* means native or coloured boy or young man); *boordjie*, '**bo:rci** (collar; the original Dutch word *boord* has died out; the Afr. word *boord*, derived from another Dutch word, means "orchard"); '**kelkie** (wine glass; *kelk* now means "chalice" or "calyx" of a flower). Here are some examples where new diminutives have arisen: '*koppie* (cup; hillock)—*koppietjie*, '**køpici**—*kop* now means "head", dim. also '*koppie*; *mandjie*, '**mai:nci** (basket, from Dutch *mand*, no longer in use)—*mandjietjie*. '**mai:nci**; '*meisie* (girl)—*meisietjie*, '**mæisici**; '*mossie* (Cape sparrow)—*mossietjie*, '**møisici**.

#### Prepositions

(1) *Vir*. *Vir* carries the meanings of "for", "to", "with" and "after". E.g. *Hier is 'n brief vir jou* (Here is a letter for you). *Hy lyk vir my gesond en sterk* (He looks healthy and strong to me). *Sy is kwaad vir hom* (She is angry with him). *Hy kom dag vir dag laat by sy werkplek aan* (He arrives late day after day at his place of work).

(2) *Uit*. *Uit* (out) can often be rendered by "out of" or "from". E.g. *Hy het haar uit goedhartigheid gehelp* (He

helped her out of kindness of heart; *goedhartigheid*, **xut'fiartæxait**, lit. goodness of heart, from *goed* and *hart*). *Hy kom uit Duitsland* (He comes from Germany).

Often the *uit* (implying direction) is repeated. E.g. *Hy kom uit die huis uit* (He comes out of the house).

(3) *Van*. *Van* can mean "of" (possession), "with", "from" (direction) or "since" (time) and is often linked with *af* in the latter sense. E.g. *Hy kom van Johannesburg (af)* (He comes from Johannesburg). *Dit is die ergste van die saak* (This is the worst of the matter; '*ergste*, superl. of *erg*, a., bad, serious). *Ek bewe van vrees* (I tremble with fear). *Ek ken hom van sy jeug af* (I have known him since his youth).

#### Verbs ending in -f

Many verbs ending in *-f*, have two forms that are identical in usage, e.g. *beef* and *bewe* (tremble, shiver); *leef* and *lewe* (live); *skuif* and *skuive* (push, shove, move, slide). Hence one can say either *Ek leef* or *Ek lewe*, etc.

#### Circumposition of Prepositions

As in English, so also in Afrikaans, two prepositions are sometimes used together, but in Afrikaans the second preposition often follows the word that it governs. E.g. *Ek voel van gister af baie beter* (I am feeling much better since yesterday). *Die ou man loop met die pad langs* (The old man walks along the road). In the first sentence the prepositions are *van* and *af*, in the second *met* and *langs*.

Since the first part of many separable compound verbs is a preposition, their use in the present tense often leads to the circumposition of prepositions. E.g. *Hy kyk by die venster uit*, '**fæ:stær** (He looks out of the window. lit. at, or through the window out). *Hulle loop in die straat op* (They walk up (in) the street). *Sy stap in die straat af* (She walks down (in) the street). *Hy loop onder die leer deur* (He walks under the ladder, He passes underneath the ladder). *Sy stap by my verby* (She walks past me). *Die kat kruip onder die bank in* (The cat crawls in under the bench; *bank*, also "settee", "sofa"). *Die kinders klouter teen die boom op* (The children scramble up (against) the tree).

*The Same Compound Verb, Separable and Inseparable*

- '*onderdruk*, (*onderge-*), press down, hold under; *onder'druk*, (—), oppress, suppress.  
 '*onderhou*, (*onderge-*), keep under, hold under; *onder'hou*, (—), support.  
 '*oordryf*, (*oorge-*), drift across, pass over, from *dryf*, *drywe*, v., drift; *oor'dryf*, (—), exaggerate, from *dryf*, v., drive.  
 '*oorval*, (*oorge-*), fall over; *oor'val*, (—), take by surprise.  
 '*oorweeg*, (*oorge-*), weigh over again, from *weeg*, v., weigh; *oor'weeg*, (—), consider.  
 '*oorsien*, (*oorge-*), overlook, excuse; *oor'sien*, (—), oversee, survey.

*Vocabulary*

- modieus*, **mo:di'əs**, fashionable, from '*mode*, fashion.  
 '*vasbind*, (*vasge-*), tie, tie up, bind fast, from *bind*, v., bind, and *vas*, adv., fast.  
*ver'jaarsdag*, birthday, from *jaar*, year, *ver'jaar*, v., have a birthday.  
*met my verjaarsdag*, on my birthday.  
 '*voetpad*, footpath.  
 '*voordeur*, front door.  
 '*piering*, saucer.  
*vrk*, n., fork.  
*mes*, n., knife.  
 '*silwerkassie*, silver box.  
 '*nommer*, n., number.  
*loer*, v., peep.  
 '*heining*, n., (-s), hedge, fence.  
*ver'kleurmannetjie*, chameleon, lit. the little man who changes colour from, *kleur*, n., colour, *ver'kleur*, v., change colour, lose colour, fade, discolour.  
*interes'sant*, interesting.  
*dier*, n., animal.  
*magi'straat*, (-strate), magistrate.  
 '*vyand*, (-e), enemy.

*Exercise 12. Translate into English :*

Die mossies vreet die vrugte aan die bome. Die een dogtertjie het 'n dorinkie in haar voetjie, die ander een het haar armpie gebreek. Die ouers het suuttjies verby die kinders se slaapkamer

geloop. Die modieuse dame koop 'n snaakse hoedjie. Die winkelbediende bind die pakkie met 'n toutjie vas. Ek koop 'n lampie vir my elektriese flitslig. Nie 'n enkele sterretjie vonkel nog in die lug nie. Die wyfiekat het vyf kleintjies gehad. Die wrede seuntjie het die katjies in die water gegooi en hulle koppies ondergehou. Hy het met sy verjaarsdag baie presentjies ontvang: 'n waentjie, 'n hamertjie, 'n sagie en 'n beitelkje. Hy het gelag van vreugde. Hy en sy matertjies het lekker gespeel. Die grootmense het wyn in kelkies gedrink. Die bootjie het oorgedryf van duskant na oorkant die rivier. Ek glo nie Jan se verhaal nie; hy oordryf altyd alles.

*Exercise 12a. Translate into Afrikaans :*

The rich man supports the poor family (use *gesin*). They live in a little house with a tiny garden. A little footpath leads to the front door. The little old man came out of the house, not out of the garden. He goes to the garden and plants a few small fruit-trees and also some (don't translate this "some") peas and beans. There were five cups and saucers in the basket but no plates. Children use small forks, knives and spoons. She bought a little silver box for her jewels. He asked for some (use *vra om*) collars—number sixteen and a half, not seventeen. There is a beautiful little foal on my aunt's farm, and also little lambs, small calves and some (use 'n paar, a few) ducklings. The child peeps through a little hole in the fence and sees three little doves in a little nest. The chameleon is an interesting little animal. The magistrate carefully considers the case. The rogue trembles with fear. The great general always took the enemy by surprise, and his plans never failed.

*Interrogative Pronouns*

The knowledge of the structure of questions will help the student in using the interrogative pronouns, of which the following occur in Afrikaans :

(a) Of persons : *wie?* (who ?), *met wie?* (with whom ?), *van wie?* (of whom ?), etc. ; *wie se?* (whose ?), *wie s'n?* (whose ?, independent interrogative, used substantively) ; *watter?* (which ?)

(b) Of animals, things, etc. : *wat?* (what ?), *watter?* (which ?), *waarin?* (wherein ?, in what ?). Note that a preposition plus *wat*, becomes *waar* plus the preposition, written as one word. E.g. *op plus wat?* becomes *waarop?* (whereon ?, on what ?) ; *van plus wat?* becomes *waarvan?* (whereof ?, of what ?) ; *om plus wat?* becomes *waarom?* (about what ?, why ?, lit. where-about ?). Cf. this formation with the change of *van* plus *dit* to *daarvan* (see Chap. X), and note the further changes in the three prepositions also here : *met plus wat?*—*waarmee?* (wherewith ?, with what ?) ; *tot plus wat?*—*waartoe?* (whereto ?, to what purpose ?) ; *vir plus wat?*—*waarvoor?* (wherefore ?, for what ?, why ?).

These interrogative pronouns can occur as subject or as object of simple sentences, and on the whole (bearing in mind the placing of extensions of time, etc., in simple sentences) the structure of such questions is the same as in English. E.g.

(a) *Wie is die besoeker?* (Who is the visitor ? ; *besoeker* from *besoek*, v., visit.) *Wie loop daar?* (Who is walking there ?) *Wie het jou vertel?* (Who told you ?) *Met wie praat hy?* (To whom is he talking ?) *Van wie het sy gepraat?* (Of whom did she speak ?) *Wie se boek is dit?* (Whose book is this ?) *Wie s'n is dit?* *Syne of hare?* (Whose is this ? His or hers ?) *Watter meisie het gister aangekom?* (Which girl arrived yesterday ?)

(b) *Wat sien jy daar?* (What do you see there ?) *Watter koerant lees jy?* (Which newspaper do you read ?) *Wartoe dien die brief?* (What is the use, or purpose of this letter ; lit. Whereto serves this letter ?) *Waarmee skryf jy?* (With what do you write ?) *Waarvoor gebruik 'n mens 'n tikmasjien?* (What does one use a typewriter for ? ; *tikmasjien* from *tik*, v., type, and *masjien*, ma'jin, machine). *Waarin het jy die melk gegooi?* (Into what did you pour the milk ?) *Waaroor sal hy môre kla?* (What will he complain about tomorrow ?)

## CHAPTER XXI.

SEQUENCE OF WORDS IN QUESTIONS ;  
INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADVERBS ;  
NEGATIVE QUESTIONS ; NAMES OF SEASONS ;  
SAME VERB, SEPARABLE AND INSEPARABLE.

*Sequence of Words in Questions*

The interrogative forms of many simple sentences present no difficulty, for they are similar to the English forms. In sentences using the verb "to be" the device is the same as in English, viz. the inversion of the subject and the verb (or first auxiliary). E.g. *Hy is siek. Is hy siek?* (He is ill. Is he ill ?) Likewise the present and future tenses of simple sentences using the verb "to have" : *Het hy 'n boek?* (Has he a book ?) *Sal sy môre 'n boek hê?* (Will she have a book tomorrow ?) The future tenses of regular verbs are similar. E.g. *Hy sal aanstaande jaar 'n boek skryf. Sal hy aanstaande jaar 'n boek skryf?* (Will he write a book next year ?)

In sentences using the present tense or past tense of regular verbs the interrogative form in English makes use of the verb "to do". In Afrikaans no such interrogative "do", "does" or "did" is used ; it is merely the subject and the existing first verb (or auxiliary verb) that are inverted. E.g. *Sy skryf boeke. Skryf sy boeke?* (Does she write books ?) *Het hy verlede jaar 'n boek geskryf?* (Did he write a book last year ?)

The same inversion occurs in sentences using the past tense of the verb "to have". E.g. *Het hy gister 'n boek gehad?* (Did he have a book yesterday ?)

Simple questions using the auxiliary verbs *moet* (must), *kan* (can, be able to), *mag* (may, be allowed to), *durf* (dare) and *wil*, follow the same pattern. E.g. *Ek moet 'n brief skryf. Moet ek 'n brief skryf?* (Must I write a letter ?) *Jy kan goed lese ; goed, adv., well, right. Kan jy goed lees?* (Can you read well ?) *Sy mag die boek lees. Mag sy die boek lees?* (May she read the book ?) *Ons durf dit doen. Durf ons dit doen?* (Dare we do it ?) *Hulle wil die koerant hê, ku'rant. Wil hulle die koerant hê?* (Do they want to have the newspaper ?)

*Interrogative Adverbs*

The following are the interrogative adverbs most frequently in use: *waar?* (where?); *wanneer?* ('*vanər* or '*van'ner*, when?); '*waarvandaan?* or '*van'waar?* (from where?); '*waarheen?* or '*waarnatoe?* (where to?, where?—implying direction); *hoe?* (how?); '*hoekom?* and '*waarom?* (why?); *hoeveel?* (how much?; also a., how many?).

These interrogative adverbs stand at the beginning of the sentence and are followed by the verb (or first auxiliary), after which the subject is placed. E.g. *Waar woon jy?* (Where do you live?) *Waarom het die ongeluk plaasgevind?* (Why did the accident take place?) *Vanwaar kom hy?* (Where does he come from?) *Waarheen gaan hy?* (Where is he going to?)

The interrogative adverb *hoeveelste?* (lit. how many-th?) is used in questions such as: *Die hoeveelste van die maand is dit?* (What day of the month is it?) *Hoeveelste het hy in sy klas gestaan?* (Where did he stand in his class?) From *hoeveel* derives the noun *hoe'veelheid* (quantity).

*Negative Questions*

If the rules for negative sentences in Chap. XIX and the rules for interrogative sentences, detailed above, have been grasped, the student should have no trouble with negative questions; hence we give here only examples of such questions: *Skryf sy nie?* (Doesn't she write?) *Begryp jy hom nie?* (Don't you understand him?) *Slaap hy nooit (nie)?* (Does he never sleep? Or: Doesn't he ever sleep?) *Het hy nie geskryf nie?* (Hasn't he written?) *Sal hy nie skryf nie?* (Won't he write?) *Is sy nooit siek nie?* (Is she never ill?) *Skryf hy nooit briewe nie?* (Does he never write letters?) *Wie het nie gister gekom nie?* (Who did not come yesterday?) *Met wie het sy nie gepraat nie?* (To whom didn't she speak?) *Waaroor het hy nie gepraat nie?* (What didn't he speak about?) *Waarom het jy nie geskryf nie?* (Why didn't you write?)

*Names of the Seasons.*

The Afrikaans word for "season" is *sei'soen*, and the names of the seasons are: *somer* ('*so:mər*, summer); *herfs* (*hərfs*, autumn); *winter* ('*vəntər*, winter); *lente* ('*lɛntə*, spring). The name of the season is usually preceded by the definite article,

especially after a preposition, e.g. *in die somer* (in summer); *voor die herfs* (before autumn); *na die winter* (after winter); *gedurende die lente* (during spring; *ge'durende* from *duur*, v., last, continue, endure, take (time), keep).

*The Same Compound Verb, Separable and Inseparable*

'*oortree*, (*oorge-*), step over, from *tree*, v., step, pace, take a pace; *oor'tree*, (—), trespass, transgress.  
'*oorkom*, (*oorge-*), come over, befall; *oor'kom*, (—), overcome.  
'*oorlaai*, (*oorge-*), re-load, load again, re-charge, from *laai*, v., load, charge a battery or gun; *oor'laai*, (—), overload.  
'*oorskakel*, (*oorge-*), estimate again, re-estimate, from *skakel*, v., estimate; *oor'skakel*, (—) overestimate.  
'*oorstem*, (*oorge-*), vote again; re-tune; from *stem*, v., vote; tune, e.g. a musical instrument; *oor'stem*, (—), outvote, deafen.  
'*oorstroom*, (*oorge-*), overflow, brim over, from *stroom*, v., and n. stream; *oor'stroom*, (—), flood, inundate.

*Vocabulary*

*middagete*, '*mədaxetə*, lunch, from '*middag* and '*ete*, n., meal or food, from *eet*, v., eat.  
*motorkar*, '*mo:tərkar*, motor-car, from '*motor*, motor or motor vehicle, and *kar*, cart, wagon. '*Motor* has two plurals: *mo'tore*, machines; '*motors*, vehicles.  
*vol'hard in*, (—), persevere with.  
'*akkerboom*, also *eik* or '*eikeboom*, oak, oaktree; *akkerboom* from '*akker*, n., acorn.  
*ver'slag*, n., (-*slae*), report.  
*slaag*, succeed.  
*ge'beur*, happen, take place. From this derives *ge'beurtenis*, n., happening, event. The same suffix occurs in *ge'skiedenis*, history, from *ge'skied*, v., take place, happen; and *be'tekenis*, n., meaning, from *be'teken*, v., mean, signify.  
*Hoe lank duur dit?*, How long does it take?  
*klei*, clay.  
*nōg die een nōg die ander*, neither the one nor the other. Note, in English, in reply to a question, one can just say "neither"; in Afrikaans the full phrase has to be used.  
*be'weeg*, v., move; from this derives *be'weging*, n., movement.  
There is also a verb *roer*, meaning "move", "stir".  
*ver'skyn*, appear. Note the phrases: *te 'voorskyn kom*, appear;

*hy kom te voorskyn met 'n brief*, he produces a letter.  
*ver' dwyn*, disappear, vanish.

*Exercise 13. Translate into English :*

Is hy gesond? Was hy nie siek nie? Kom julle saam, of kom julle nie saam nie? Waarheen gaan julle? Wanneer kom julle terug? (Look up *terugkom*.) Sal julle voor middagete terug wees? Het jy hom nie gehelp nie? Help jy hom nou? Sal hy 'n goeie kamer hê? Skryf hy vandag die briewe of het hy hulle gister geskryf? Sal sy môre die brief ontvang? Sal die regter die gevangene vryspreek, of nie? Wat dink jy? Het hy nie stilgestaan nie? Sal die motorkar ooit weer loop? Vertrou jy hom nie? Lees hulle niks (nie)? Het hy sy kragte nie oorskot nie? Oortree ons nie hier op private eiendom nie? Hoekom het jy die kind berispe? Leer hy nie sy lesse nie? Verstaan hy hulle nie? Sal hy nie volhard in sy studies nie? Hoe laat is dit? Hoeveel boeke is daar? Waarin het jy die melk gegooi? Watter beker het jy gebruik? Waarmee skryf 'n mens? Wie het die brief onderteken? Die akkerbome se blare kom in die lente weer uit. (Look up *uitkom*.) Hulle verkleur in die herfs.

*Exercise 13a. Translate into Afrikaans :*

Has he a motor-car? Didn't he have one last year? Did he read the report or didn't he? Did they overload the wagon? Why did they do it? Will the plan succeed, or not? Isn't he coming? Isn't he coming with us? Won't he be here tomorrow? How did this happen? Where do they come from? Where did they come from? Weren't you (sing. informal) walking too fast? How long will the journey take? Won't you (sing. informal) be very tired? Were the aeroplanes flying yesterday? Won't they fly tomorrow? Won't you (sing. informal) help him? Where are they living? What is this made of? What is this house built on, on sand or on clay? On neither. It is built on a rock. What are you doing there? Which motor-car was standing still, and which one was moving (use *be'weeg*)? Isn't she beautiful (use *mooi*)? Hasn't she beautiful (use *pragtig*) eyes? Will he have no money tomorrow? Does it rain in summer or in winter? A cloud appeared in the sky but it disappeared again.

INVERSION OF SEQUENCE OF WORDS; PRESENT PARTICIPLES; SAME VERB, SEPARABLE AND INSEPARABLE; NAMES OF COLOURS

*Inversion of Sequence of Words*

Revise the section in Chap. XI on sequence of words. The sequence of words in questions will have prepared the student for the following peculiarity of Afrikaans.

The customary sequence of words in a simple sentence, containing an extension or qualification of the predicate, is: subject, verb (or first auxiliary), object (if any), extension, second part of verb (if any). E.g. *Ek sien die man nou* (I see the man now); *Ek het die man gister gesien* (I saw the man yesterday). Here *nou* and *gister* are two extensions of time. The extensions can also sometimes come between the verb (or first auxiliary) and the object, e.g. *Ek het gister die man gesien*. It is possible to start such sentences with the extension, and in English such a construction does not entail any further change in word sequence. In Afrikaans, however, there is a further change: the verb (or first auxiliary) and the subject are inverted, and the verb (or first auxiliary) follows immediately on the extension. E.g. *Nou sien ek die man* (Now I see the man). *Gister het ek die man gesien* (Yesterday I saw the man). Likewise: *Môre sal ek die man sien*.

The same inversion takes place when other extensions open the sentence. E.g. *Hy staan daar. Daar staan hy*. (There he stands.) It also takes place when a sentence opens with the object. E.g. *Hy het hierdie briewe al gelees. Hierdie briewe het hy al gelees*. (These letters he has read already.)

The rule applies to all simple sentences and to principal clauses in compound and in complex sentences.

In certain negative sentences the inversion is accompanied by the dropping of one *nie*. This occurs where the sentence is in the present tense and, apart from the introductory extension, consists of (a) subject and verb only, or of (b) subject, verb

and personal pronoun in the objective case, or where the extension is an adverb like *ge'woonlik* (usually) or *'dikwels* (often). E.g. *Ek werk (nie) vandag nie*. *Vandag werk ek nie*. (Today I am not working.) *Die regter onder vra hom nie vandag nie*. *Vandag onder vra die regter hom nie*. (Today the judge does not question him.) Separable compound verbs are excluded from this rule. Where they occur in such sentences, the double negative is retained. E.g. *Hy kruip nie vandag weg nie*. *Vandag kruip hy nie weg nie*. (Today he doesn't hide).

### Present Participles

There are two ways of forming these in Afrikaans:

(1) The present participles of the verbs *doen* (do), *sien* (see), *slaan* (hit), *gaan* (go), and *staan* (stand), are formed by adding *-de*. E.g. *siende* (seeing), *staande* (standing). This also applies to their compounds and the verbs formed from *-gaan*, e.g. *bestaan* (exist)—*bestaande* (existing); *beslaan* (intr. v., tarnish, coat; tr. v., shoe a horse)—*beslaande* (tarnished, coated, shod); *'uitgaan*, (*uitge-*), (go out, depart)—*'uitgaande* (outgoing, departing); *vol'doen*, (—), (satisfy)—*vol'doende* (satisfying, sufficient).

(2) The present participles of other verbs are formed by adding *-ende*, with alterations in spelling according to rules already given. E.g. *loop* (walk)—*lopende* (walking, running); *sit* (sit)—*sittende* (sitting); *skryf* (write)—*skrywende* (writing); *gloi* (glow)—*gloeiende* (glowing). Note: *bly* (remain, stay)—*blywende* (lasting, permanent, lit. remaining, staying): the *w* comes from a Dutch consonant which has been dropped in the other forms of the verb; also *bars* (burst, crack)—*barstende* (bursting), and *wag* (wait)—*wagtende* (waiting), where a Dutch *t* returns. Likewise: *veg* (fight)—*vegtende* (fighting), *vlug* (flee)—*vlugtende* (fleeing), and *gis* (ferment)—*gistende* (fermenting).

The present participles have an active meaning and can be used as various parts of speech:

(a) *As Attributive Adjectives*. E.g. *lopende water* (running water); *die sittende man* (the sitting man, the man who is sitting); *staande water* (water not running); *die bestaande wette* (the existing laws); *Daar is voldoende getuienis* (There is sufficient evidence; *getuienis*, *ṣə'toeyənəs*, from *ge'tuig*, v., bear witness, testify, give testimony); *'n barstende bom* (a bursting bomb); *die beslaande perd* (the horse that has been

shod); *gloeiende kole* (glowing coals; "coal" is called *kole* or *'steenkole*; *kool* is "cabbage"); *doeltreffende maatreëls* (effective measures; *doel'treffend* from *doel*, n., object, aim, purpose, end, and *tref*, v., hit; *'maatreël* from *maat*, n., measure, measurement, and *reël*, n., regulation, rule). As adjectives, many present participles have degrees of comparison. E.g. *doeltreffender maatreëls* (more effective measures); *die doeltreffendste maatreëls* (the most effective measures).

(b) *As Predicative Adjectives*. E.g. *Die saak is nog hangende* (The case is still pending; *hangende* from *hang*, v., hang). Usually the *-e* of *-ende* is dropped in this predicative position. E.g. *Hy is wel'sprekend* (He is eloquent; lit. well-speaking). *Die maatreëls is doeltreffend* (The measures are effective).

(c) *As Adverbs*. Here also the final *-e* is usually dropped. E.g. *Die kole was gloeiend warm* (The coals were glowing hot, i.e. red-hot). *Dit het aan'houdend gereën* (It rained continuously, lit. keeping on). In a few phrases the *-e* is retained in the adverbial usage. E.g. *Hulle is siende blind en 'horende doof* (They look but do not see, and listen but do not hear, more lit. They are, seeing, blind, and hearing, deaf.)

(d) *As Nouns*. E.g. *Hy het hom gedra soos 'n rasende* (He behaved like a lunatic, a raving man; *'rasende* from *raas*, v., make a noise, rave, storm, rage; another word for "noise" is *la'waai*, n., noise, v., make a noise). *Sy is die agterblywende* (She is the one who remains behind; *'agterblywende* from *'agterbly*, (*agterge-*), remain behind).

(e) *As Prepositions*. E.g. *Ek wil al die besonderhede aangaande die saak hê* (I want (to have) all the details concerning the case; *aan'gaande* from *'aangaan*, (*aange-*), concern, continue, conclude, lit. go on).

(f) *Introducing a Participial Phrase*. In English the participial phrase is very common. This construction occurs also in Afrikaans, although to a lesser extent. E.g. *'n Kon'vooi, bestaande uit ses skepe, het vandag vertrek* (A convoy, consisting of six ships, departed today). The participial phrase, when used in Afrikaans, is often preceded by *al*, which gives the meaning of continuous action. E.g. *Al singende het hy die straat af gestap* (A-singing he walked down the street). Often, however, in Afrikaans an adjectival clause is preferred to the participial phrase (see Chap. XXXI).

*The Same Verb, Separable and Inseparable*

- <sup>1</sup>oorteken, (oorge-), re-draw, draw over again; oor'teken, (—), over-subscribe.
- <sup>1</sup>oortrek, (oorge-), cover again, pull over, move over; oor'trek, (—), overdraw, e.g. a banking account.
- <sup>1</sup>oorvoer, (oorge-), carry over, convey over, lead across, (e.g. a transport), from voer, v., lead, conduct, bear; oor'voer, tr. v., (—), overfeed, from another verb voer, feed, cf. voer, n., fodder.
- <sup>1</sup>voorkom, (voorge-), come in front, appear, happen, occur; voor'kom, (—), prevent.
- <sup>1</sup>voorsê, (voorge-), prompt, tell how to say; voor'sê, (—), predict, foretell.
- <sup>1</sup>voorspel, (voorge-), spell a word, tell how to spell; voor'spel, (—), predict, foretell, forecast.

*Names of Colours*

The Afr. word for "colour" is *kleur*, *klør*, and the most important names of colours are: *wit* (white), *swart* (black), *grys* (grey), *bruin* (brown), *vaal* (fawn, greyish), *rooi* (red), *oranje* (o'ranjə), *geel* (yellow), *groen* (green), *blou* (blue), *pers* (pe:rs, purple). The words *lig* (light, pale), *diep* (deep), *'donker* (dark), *'helder* (bright, clear), and *dof* (dull) are used to indicate shades and qualities. E.g. *'ligrooi* (light red, pink), *'diepblou* (deep blue), *'heldergeel* (bright yellow), *'dofgroen* (dull green), *'donkerpers* (dark purple), *'ligblou* (pale blue). *Wit* also occurs as verb meaning "whitewash".

*Vocabulary*

- waarskuwing*, <sup>1</sup>va:rskyvən, n., (-s, -e), warning, from <sup>1</sup>waarsku, (ge-), v., warn, admonish.
- uit eie (vrye) wil*, of one's own (free) will.
- <sup>1</sup>opwindend, exciting, from <sup>1</sup>opwin, alternatively <sup>1</sup>opwen, (opge-), wind up, excite.
- ge'drag*, behaviour, from *ge'dra*, behave.
- <sup>1</sup>weerburo, weather bureau, from *weer*, weather, and *buro*, <sup>1</sup>by'ro:, n., (-'s), bureau, office.
- <sup>1</sup>noodlydende, n., a destitute, necessitous person, lit. one suffering distress or need, from *nood*, need, distress, and *ly*, suffer.

- <sup>1</sup>spoorweg, (-weë), railway, from *spoor*, rail, and *weg*, road.
- <sup>1</sup>winkbrou or <sup>1</sup>wenkrou, eyebrow, from *wink*, v., beckon, wink.
- <sup>1</sup>eenkeer, once (indefinite occasion).
- eenkeer per week*, once a week.
- pak'ket*, parcel, packet.
- doos*, n., box, usually of cardboard.
- <sup>1</sup>oopmaak, tr. v., (oopge-), open, lit. make open.
- <sup>1</sup>afval, (afge-), fall off or down.
- op'lettend*, attentive, from <sup>1</sup>oplet, (opge-), attend, pay attention, watch, notice.
- soos*, as, such as, like.
- <sup>1</sup>nieteenstaande, notwithstanding.
- <sup>1</sup>volgende, attr. a., following, from *volg*, follow.
- be'doeling*, (-s, -e), intention, from *be'doel*, v., mean, intend, aim at; cf. *doel*, n., object, purpose, aim, end.
- tjek, tjek*, n., (-s, -ke), cheque.
- <sup>1</sup>bankrekening, banking account, from *bank*, bank, and <sup>1</sup>rekening, n., (-e, -s), account.
- materi'aal*, n., (-iale), material.
- <sup>1</sup>ophang, (opge-), hang, lit. hang up.
- ont'haal*, reception; cf. *ont'haal*, v., entertain.
- ge'klee*, a., (-kledede), clothed, dressed, from *klee*, v., dress, clothe.
- ver'sier*, decorate, trim; from this derives *ver'siering*, decoration.
- pak (klere)*, suit (of clothes).

*Exercise 14. Translate into English:*

Vandag studeer ek. Gister het ek die brief gelees. Mōre sal ek die werk doen. Met sy hulp sal ek slaag. Sonder sy hulp sal ek nie slaag nie. In die lente bloei die vrugtebome. Sonder waarskuwing het hy hier aangekom. Gewoonlik help hy my nie. Dikwels werk hy nie. Tot my spyt het hy nie gekom nie. Uit eie vrye wil gaan ek nie saam nie. Saam met 'n vriend het hy opgedaag. Teen vanmiddag sal ons die antwoord ontvang. Vandag trek ons oor na die nuwe gebou. Dit is 'n opwindende verhaal. Die vrou is sterwende. Die man was rasend kwaad. Sy gedrag was teleurstellend. Al pratende het hy uit die kamer uit gestap. Die weerburo het slegte weer voorspel. Verlede week het twee ongelukke voorgekom. Die noodlydendes het hulp ontvang. Gelukkig het die spoorweë vandesewek verdere ongelukke voorkom. Die harlekyn se gesig het snaaks



gelyk. Sy wange was heldergeel, sy ore pers, sy voorkop oranje, sy wenkbroue groen, en sy neus rooi, en om sy mond en lippe was daar 'n breë wit sirkel.

*Exercise 14a. Translate into Afrikaans :*

Yesterday I spoke to him. Today I am resting. Tomorrow I shall work again. In the evenings he doesn't work. Usually he visits (use *besoek*) me once a week. At last the parcel arrived. Carefully he opened the box. Yesterday they suggested new plans. Today they are not interested (use *belang stel*) at all. In winter it is cold. In summer the sky is clear blue. During winter it rains much. In autumn the leaves of the trees drop off. A grey mist hung over the harbour. They pray for the dying man. The child is attentive. He behaved like one raving. Notwithstanding his good intentions his work is not good enough. With his next cheque he overdrew his banking account. Towards the end of the year she re-covered the chairs with dull red material and hung up yellow curtains. At the reception the neatly dressed lady wore a little black hat, trimmed with orange and white. He seldom wears brown clothes. Usually he wears a dark blue suit (of clothes).

WEAK PAST PARTICIPLES; COMPOUND VERBS  
TREATED AS SIMPLE VERBS

*Weak Past Participles*

Revise in Chapters X and XIV the sections on past participles, their formation and use. To those sections we must add that verbs in *-eer* can form their past participles either with or without the *ge-*. Most of these verbs take the *ge-*, but in a few cases both forms occur and both are correct. E.g. *ma'keer* (lack, ail, be wanting); *pro'beer* (try); *re'geer* (rule); *organi'seer* (organize); *telegra'feer* (wire, telegraph). Hence: *Die koning het regeer* or *Die koning het geregeer* (The king ruled). These verbs are all stressed on the last syllable.

The past participle is put to many uses, the most important being the formation of various tenses. There are, however, other important uses, and sometimes the form alters slightly according to the use. Some of these uses are detailed here.

(a) *As Adverbs*. Here a *-d* is usually added to the past participle. E.g. *reël* (regulate, arrange)—*gereël*—*gereëld* (regularly): *Hy doen gereëld sy werk* (He regularly does his work). The adjective is also *gereëld*, (*-e*), regular.

(b) *As Predicative Adjectives*. Here a *-d* is usually added to the past participle. E.g. *trou* (marry, get married)—*getrou*—*getroud*: *Die man is getroud* (The man is married). Sometimes the addition of the *-d* is optional. E.g. *te'leurstel* (disappoint): *Ek is teleurgestel(d) daaroor* (I am disappointed about that); *ver'steur* (disturb): *Ek is erg versteur(d)* (I am badly disturbed); *erg*, a. and adv., bad(ly), serious(ly). These cases have to be distinguished from the passive voice forms where no *-d* occurs (see Chap. XXVI). E.g. *slyp* (sharpen): *Die mes is geslyp* (The knife is, or has been, sharpened).

Where there is some uncertainty about the addition of the *-d*, it is useful to remember that when the participle is felt to be mainly verbal in its use, the *-d* may be dropped.

(c) *As Attributive Adjectives*. We have already noted that

many ordinary adjectives, when used attributively, are inflected. Past participles when used as adjectives, are also inflected, the inflection consisting of the addition of *-de*, *-gde*, *-te* or *-e*, according to the final sound of the participle.

(1) *-de* is added where the participle ends in (i) *l*, *m*, *n*, *ng*, *r*, a vowel, a diphthong; (ii) a long vowel or an *r* plus *f*, *g* or *s*; and (iii) a diphthong plus *f*, *g* or *s*. The best is to use these rules for reference, and to learn the forms as they occur. E.g. *be'taal* (pay)—*betaalde rekeninge* (paid accounts); *be'stem* (destine, fix a day)—*die bestemde dag* (the destined, appointed or fixed day); *leen* (lend or borrow; *leen aan*, lend to; *leen van*, borrow from)—*geleende geld* (borrowed money); *'uitgeleende geld* would be "money lent out", from *'uitleen*, lend out); *meng* (mix)—*gemengde vrugte* (mixed fruit); *leer* (learn, teach)—*die geleerde professor* (the learned professor); *'waarsku* (warn)—*die gewaarskude kind* (the warned child); *be'loof* or *be'lowe* (promise)—*die beloofde land* (the promised land); *saag* (saw)—*die gesaagde hout* (the sawn wood); *ver'baas* (amaze, astonish, surprise)—*die verbaasde vrou* (the amazed or surprised woman); *buig* (bend)—*gebuigde draad* (bent wire); *styf* (stiffen, starch)—*gestyfde boordjies* (starched collars); *ver'seker* (insure, assure, from *'seker*, sure)—*'n versekerde lewe* (an insured life, an assured existence). Some exceptions occur, e.g. *ver'eis* (demand, require)—*die vereiste artikel* (the desired, required article); *reg'verdig* (justify)—*geregverdigde 'uitgawe* (justified expense or expenditure; there is also *regverdig*, a. and adv., just(ly)).

(2) *-gde* is sometimes added where the participle ends in a vowel and the verb in its infinitive form has lost an original *-g*. E.g. *inlê*, (*inge-*) (preserve, lit. lay in)—*ingelegde vrugte* (preserved, bottled fruit).

(3) *-te* is added where the participle ends in (i) a short stressed vowel plus *f*, *g* or *s*; (ii) a short stressed vowel plus *l*, *n* or *r*, plus *s*; and (iii) *p* or *k*. E.g. *straf* (punish)—*'n gestrafte kind* (a punished child); *ver'plig* (compel)—*verpligte onderwys* (compulsory education); *pas* (fit, suit)—*'n gepaste antwoord* (a fitting answer); *ver'vals* (forge, falsify)—*'n vervalste tjek* (a forged cheque); *wens* (desire, wish)—*die gewenste uitwerking* (the desired effect); *'uitwerking* from *'uitwerk*, (*uitge-*), work out); *bars* (burst, crack)—*'n gebarste damwal* (a burst or cracked dam wall); *'afpluk*, (*afge-*), (pick, lit. pick off, from *pluk*, v.,

*pick*, pluck)—*afgeplukte vrugte* (picked or plucked fruit); *stop* (stop; darn)—*gestopte kouse* (darned stockings); *slyp* (sharpen)—*'n geslypte mes* (a sharpened knife); *ver'werp* (reject, from *werp*, v., throw)—*verwerpte voorstelle* (rejected proposals; *'voorstel* allied to *'voorstel*, (*voorge-*), propose). A few exceptions occur, e.g. *eg*, (*geëg*), (harrow a field)—*die geëgde land* (the harrowed land or field).

(4) *-e* is added where the participle ends in *d* or *t*. E.g. *brand* (burn)—*die gebrande gras* (the burnt grass); *sout* (salt)—*gesoute vleis* (salted meat).

(5) *As Nouns*. Here *-de* is added to the participle. E.g. *ver'loof* (affiance, betroth, engage to be married, a reflex. v., hence *Sy verloof haar aan hom* (She becomes engaged to him))—*Haar verloofde het kom kuier* (Her fiancé came on a visit; *ver'loofde*, lit. the engaged, affianced one, means both "fiancé" and "fiancée"; there is no separate form to indicate the feminine). Likewise: *sneuwel* (*'snø:vəl*, be killed in action)—*Daar was baie gesneuweldes op die slagveld* (There were many slain on the battlefield; *'slagveld* from *slag*, v., slaughter, and *veld*, n., field).

#### Compound Verbs Treated as Simple Verbs

There is a small group of compound verbs, bearing the stress on the first part, that are no longer felt as compounds. They are therefore treated like simple verbs and take an initial *ge-* in the formation of the past participle. E.g. *'antwoord* (reply, answer)—*geantwoord*. Hence the past tense form: *Hy het my geantwoord* (He answered me). These verbs, therefore, behave neither like the separable nor like the inseparable compound verbs, and the student will have to take special note of them.

Here is a list of such verbs: *'brandmerk* (brand, stigmatize); *'dwaarsboom* (obstruct, thwart, from *dwaars*, athwart); *'handhaaf* (maintain, uphold); *'kielhaal* (keelhaul); *'raadpleeg* (consult); *'rangskik* (arrange); *'skaterlag* (laugh loudly, burst out laughing); *'blinddoek* (blindfold, from *doek*, n., cloth); *'dagvaar* (summon(s) legally, subpoena); *'glimlag* (smile); *'huisves* (accommodate, house); *'knipoo* (wink); *'liefkoos* (caress, fondle); *'minag* (disdain, despise, hold in contempt); *'oordeel* (judge); *'seëvier* (triumph, gain the victory); *'waarborg* (guarantee); *'wanhoop* (despair, opposite of *hoop*, v., hope; *wanhoop aan*,

despair of); *'wedywer* (compete); *'weerlig* (lighten, flash (of lightning), an impers. v., hence: *Dit weerlig*, 'The lightning flashes; lit. weather-light); *'waarsku* (warn); *'werskaf* (be busily engaged, work very actively); *'wantrou* (distrust, opposite of *ver'trou*, trust (note stress); from these verbs derive the nouns *'wantroue*, distrust, and *ver'troue*, trust).

To these must be added a few compound verbs with the stress on the second part which are, nevertheless, not treated as inseparable compound verbs in that they do take the *ge-* in forming the past participle. E.g. *bal'jaar* (frolic, gambol)—*gebaljaar*. Others are: *open'baar* (reveal, disclose); *reg'verdig* (justify).

### Vocabulary

*onge'twyfeld*, undoubtedly, from *'twyfel*, v., doubt; cf. *twyfel'agtig*, doubtful.

*be'daard*, calm(ly), from *be'daar*, v., calm down, subside.

*'sakeman*, (-ne), business man, from *'sake*, business, business affairs or matters, pl. of *saak*, matter, case.

*ver'strek*, a., (-te), supplied, provided, furnished, from *ver'strek*, supply, provide, give, furnish.

*ge'gewe*, (-ns), information, datum, pl. data; from *gee*, give.

*kontro'leer*, v., (ge-), control, check; cf. *kon'trole*, n., control.

*ver'wen*, (-de), spoilt, from *ver'wen*, v., spoil (children), from *wen*, v., become accustomed, *wen aan*, become accustomed to; allied to the phrase *gewoond aan*, accustomed to.

*getuie*, *xə'toeyə*, n., witness, from *ge'tuig*, give evidence, bear witness, testify, give testimony.

*'onbeslis*, (-te), undecided, opposite of *be'slis*, (-te), decided; cf. *be'slis* and *be'sluit*, both v., decide.

*'optrede*, n., conduct, behaviour, action, from *'optree*, v., (opge-), act, take action, appear; the *d* in *optrede* comes from Dutch.

*ver'ward*, a., (-e), or *ver'war*, a., (-de), confused, from *ver'war*, v., confuse, entangle.

*klaar ge'stewel(d) en gespoor(d)*, quite ready, all dressed up, lit. booted and spurred, from *'stewel*, n., boot, and *spoor*, n., spur; cf. *'aanspoor*, (aange-), spur on, encourage, and *'aansporing*, encouragement.

*'struikrower*, *'strœyk-ro:vər*, highway robber, from *struik*, n., bush, shrub, and *roof*, v., rob, *'rower*, robber.

*om'standigheid*, circumstance, from *staan*, stand; pl. *omstandig-hede*, circumstances, lit. more or less, the things standing around (*om*).

*be'droefde*, n., the grieved one, sorrowful one, from *be'droef*, tr. v., grieve, make sad.

*'yster*, n., iron; a., (—, -e), iron.

*reg*, n., (-te), right; cf. *reg*, a., (-te), and adv., right(ly), correct(ly).

*'middel*, n., middle.

*eeu*, n., century, age.

*'invoer*, v., (inge-), import, introduce a system; also n., imports.

*advo'kaat*, n. advocate.

*'afgelewer*, (-de), delivered, from *'aflewer*, (afge-), deliver, lit. deliver off; cf. *'lewer*, v., (ge-), deliver; there is also a noun *'lewer* meaning "liver".

*so iets*, such a thing; something like that.

*'ongehoord*, unheard of, from *hoor*, v., hear.

*'stapel*, v., (ge-), stack; also n., stack, pile, heap.

*'uitslag*, n., (-slae), outcome, result; also rash of skin; from

*'uitslaan*, v., (uitge-), beat out, break out (e.g. in rash), exude.

*geëerd*, honoured, from *eer*, v., (geëer), and n., honour.

*vir 'n lang ruk*, for a long time, from *ruk*, n., time, period; there is also *ruk*, v. and n., jerk, tug.

*goed bly*, stay good, keep.

*'uitgeput*, (-te), exhausted, fatigued, from *'uitput* v., (uitge-), exhaust, make tired, fatigue, wear out.

*'onvermoeid*, tireless, untiring(ly), from *ver'moei*, v., tire, fatigue, reflex. v., tire oneself.

*ont'wikkeld*, developed, from *ont'wikkell*, v., develop.

*'voorstel aan*, v., (voorge-), introduce a person to.

*pia'nis*, n., (-te), pianist; fem. *pianiste*.

*'welbekend*, well known, from *be'kend*, known, from *ken*, v., know.

*ver'wonderd*, a., (-e), or *ver'wonder*, a., (-de), surprised, astonished, from *ver'wonder*, v., astonish, surprise; reflex. v., be astonished, surprised.

*nuus*, news.

*'afgebrand*, (-e), burnt down, from *'afbrand*, (afge-), burn down.

*meubi'leer*, v., (ge-), furnish a house, etc., with furniture; cf.

*'meubels*, furniture, *'meubelstuk*, piece of furniture.

'Bybel, Bible.  
*geopen'baar*, (-de), revealed, from *open'baar*, (ge-), reveal.

*Exercise 15. Translate into English :*

Die begaafde meisie het hard gestudeer en die prys gewen. Sy sing ongetwyfeld mooi. Hy lewe onbekommerd. Die welgestelde en welgeklede dame praat sag en bedaard. Het sy nie die blomme mooi gerangskik nie? Hy het hard probeer en ten laaste het hy die gewenste resultaat verkry. Die onderwyser is geleerd. Is die sakeman welgesteld? Is dit die vervalste tjek? Gedurig dwarsboom die teleurgestelde man my planne. Ek het nog nie die verstrekte gegewens gekontroleer nie. Niemand hou van verwerende kinders nie. Die getuie bly baie onbeslis in sy optrede. Hy het verward gelyk. Hy dra altyd gestyfte boordjies. Hou hy nie van sagte boordjies nie? Hulle is klaar gestewel en gespoor vir die reis. Hulle het die afgeplukte vrugte in houtkassies gepak. Vorm gemengde vrugte 'n goeie dieet? Die struikrowers het hulle gevangene geblinddoek. Die omstandighede het nie hulle wreedheid geregverdig nie. Het hulle die noodlydendes gehuisves? Ons het die bedroefdes getroos. Hy het geglimlag en 'n gepaste antwoord gegee. Anderkant die berge het dit geweerlig. Op die gras het die kinders gebaljaar. Moses het die beloofde land gesien maar dit nie binnegegaan nie.

*Exercise 15a. Translate into Afrikaans :*

The cruel king ruled with an iron hand, but the people maintained their rights. Between the middle and the end of the former century they introduced compulsory education. First we consulted an attorney; now we are consulting a learned advocate. Didn't they guarantee the delivered goods? Such a thing is unheard of. They stacked the sawn pieces of wood neatly on top of one another. I did not distrust him but I despaired of the outcome of his action. He paid back the borrowed money. I feel honoured. That morning he branded all the young cattle. Salted meat will keep for a long time. The poor woman wore darned stockings. She was fatigued but very calm. She smiled sweetly. He works untiringly in the garden. The boy is well (use *goed*) developed. He introduced his fiancée to his well-to-do aunt. Does he never drink out of a cracked (use *gebarste*) cup? The pianist is well known. He

looked surprised at me. He was amazed at the news. They looked at the burnt down building. Was the house well (use *goed*) furnished? For many people the Bible is the revealed word of God.

## CHAPTER XXIV.

VERBS—PAST TENSES; STRONG PAST TENSE FORMS; RENDERING OF ENGLISH PARTICIPLES IN PAST TENSE CONSTRUCTIONS WITHOUT *GE-*; SAME COMPOUND WORD AS NOUN AND AS VERB; NAMES OF POINTS OF COMPASS.

*Verbs—Past Tenses*

Revise the sections on the formation of the past tense in Chapters X, XIV, and XXIII. Here we shall deal with the continuous, the perfect, and the perfect continuous forms of the past tense, again using the simple verb *skryf* as model.

The past continuous "I was writing" is rendered by the same forms as the present perfect continuous, only with *was* instead of *is*: *Ek was besig om te skryf*, *Ek was aan die skryf*, *Ek was reeds aan die skryf*, or *Ek was reeds besig om te skryf* (I was already busy writing).

The past perfect (pluperfect) "I had written" is rendered by *Ek het geskryf gehad*, i.e. the auxiliary *het* followed by the past participle of the main verb, followed by the past participle of *het* (*gehad*).

For the past perfect continuous "I had been writing" we have to make use of some temporal adverb like *toe* (them, at that time) to determine the time of the action, and the form becomes: *Ek was toe aan die skryf*, *Ek was toe besig om te skryf*, *Ek was toe reeds aan die skryf*, or *Ek was toe reeds besig om te skryf* (I was at that time already busy writing).

The student will note the use of the adverbs of time: *reeds* (already) and *toe*. *Al* (already) can be used like *reeds*. The past tense is often indicated not by a change in the verb but by a temporal adverb (especially *toe*) used with the present tense of the verb, except where the verb has a strong past tense form (see below). E.g. *Toe sien ek hom* instead of *Toe het ek hom gesien* (Then I saw him). This kind of historic present tense usage can be illustrated by the following example. After the time of the

action has been indicated in the first sentence, the writer continues, using verbs in the present tense forms (except *was*) and temporal adverbs relating to the past tense.

*Ek het op die systraat gestaan. Toe kom die motorkar vinnig om die hoek en ry vas teen die lamppaal. Daar was 'n harde geraas. Ek draai om. 'n Konstabel stap oor van die anderkant van die straat en kyk na die motorkar en die mense daarin. Toe draai hy na my. Hy vra: „Het u die ongeluk gesien?“ Toe sê ek nee, ek het na die venster van die winkel gekyk. (I was standing on the pavement. Then the motor-car came rapidly round the corner and rode slap into the lamppost. There was a loud noise. I turned round. A policeman stepped over from the other side of the street and looked at the motor-car and the people in it. Then he turned to me. He asked: "Did you see the accident?" Then I said no, I was (or had been) looking at the window of the shop.) Note: 'systraat (pavement, side-street, from *sy*, n., side, and *straat*; 'vasry teen, (*vasge-*), collide with, ride into; 'omdraai, (*omge-*), turn round.*

The word *toe*, meaning "then", always refers to the past. In English "then" can also refer to the future; to indicate the future in Afrikaans another word must be used, viz. *dan* (then). E.g. *Hy kom môre*; *dan sal ek hom sien* (He is coming tomorrow; then I shall see him).

*Strong Past Tense Forms*

Most verbs in Afrikaans are "weak", i.e. they form their past tenses with the help of an auxiliary verb. There are, however, a few "strong" verbs left. Two of these have already been discussed, *om te hê* and *om te wees* (see Chapters XII and XIII). Here are the others:

(a) The verbs *om te dink* (to think) and *om te weet* (to know). These have both strong and weak forms for the past tense. The past tense of *ek weet* is *ek wis* or *ek het geweet*; the past tense of *ek dink* is *ek dog* (alternative *ek dag*) or *ek het gedink*. Actually *wis* and *dog* (or *dag*) are simple past tense forms, and *het geweet* and *het gedink* are present perfect tense forms, but they are all used as simple past tenses. The future tenses are regular: *ek sal weet*; *ek sal dink*.

(b) The verbs *sal* (shall or will), *kan* (can, be able), *wil* (want

to), *moet* (must) and *mag* (may, be allowed to). Here the past tenses are all strong. The principal tenses are :

Simple Present	Simple Past	Simple Future
<i>sal</i>	<i>sou</i> (should, would)	(none, by its nature)
<i>kan</i>	<i>kon</i> (could, was able to)	<i>sal kan</i> (shall or will be able)
<i>wil</i>	<i>wou</i> (wanted to)	<i>sal wil</i> (shall or will want to)
<i>moet</i>	<i>moes</i> (had to)	<i>sal moet</i> (will or shall have to)
<i>mag</i>	<i>mog</i> (was allowed to— not often used)	<i>sal mag</i> (will or shall be allowed to).

The past tense of *Sy kan sing* (She can sing) is therefore *Sy kon sing* (She could sing). Likewise: *Hy wil vir ons kom kuier* (He wants to come and visit us)—*Hy wou vir ons kom kuier* (He wanted to come and visit us); *Hy moet skryf* (He must write, He has to write)—*Hy moes skryf* (He had to write).

Note on *dink*: The past tense forms *dag* and *dog* have not the same wide usage as the past tense *het gedink*. One can use *het gedink* in all cases, *dag* and *dog* as a rule only when the thing that was thought did not become a fact, or when the thought falls in the subjunctive mood. In cases of a statement of fact in the past tense, *het gedink* has to be used.

Note on *weet*: In ordinary usage no similar distinction exists between the past tenses *wis* and *het geweet*. In almost all cases either the one or the other can be used.

#### *Rendering of English Participles in Past Tense Constructions without ge-*

We have already noted various verbs that do not take *ge-* in the past tense. In certain past tense constructions, also, no *ge-* is used. These occur in the rendering in Afrikaans of constructions in English where a participle is used adjectivally or adverbially. E.g.

(1) Constructions like "I hear the man singing" are rendered by *Ek hoor die man sing*. The first verb, *hoor*, is used here as an auxiliary verb, and it is followed by the bare infinitive

of the second verb, *sing*. Likewise: *Ek sien die man loop* (I see the man walking); *Ek hoor die klok lui* (I hear the bell ringing); *Ek sien die seun gaan* (I see the boy going). In the past tense of such constructions no *ge-* is used: after the auxiliary *het* of the past tense both verbs are in the infinitive form, and both go to the end of the sentence. Hence: *Ek het die man hoor sing* (I heard the man singing); *Ek het die man sien loop* (I saw the man walking); *Ek het die klok hoor lui* (I heard the bell ringing); *Ek het die seun sien gaan* (I saw the boy going). Further examples are given in the next chapter.

Note that *Ek hoor die man sing* can also mean "I hear the man sings", but then *hoor* is not used as an auxiliary verb, and there are two clauses. The past tense here would be: *Ek het gehoor die man sing* (I heard the man sings). The meaning of the present tense sentence would be clear from the context; otherwise ambiguity could be avoided by inserting *dat*: *Ek hoor dat die man sing* (I hear that the man sings); past tense: *Ek het gehoor dat die man sing* (I heard that the man sings).

(2) Constructions like "They stand talking" are rendered by two verbs linked by *en*: *Hulle staan en praat*. Likewise: *Ek lê en lees* (I lie reading). In the past tense the second verb (being in the infinitive form) never takes a *ge-*; the first one may, but need not (i.e. may be infinitive or past participle). Hence: *Hulle het gestaan en praat* or *Hulle het staan en praat* (They stood talking); *Ek het lê en lees* or *Ek het gelê en lees* (I lay reading). The auxiliary verb in such a sentence follows the subject, and the other verbs are placed together at the end of the sentence.

#### *The Same Compound Word as Noun and as Verb with different Stress*

Sometimes the same compound word is used as verb and as noun with a different stress. The verbs are usually inseparable compounds with the stress on the last part, whereas the nouns have the stress on the first part. E.g. <sup>1</sup>*misbruik*, n., misuse, abuse, and *mis'bruik* v., (—), misuse, abuse; <sup>1</sup>*voorspel*, n., prologue, and *voor'spel*, v., (—), foretell; <sup>1</sup>*onderwys*, n., education, and *onder'wys*, v., (—), teach; <sup>1</sup>*onderig*, n., education, teaching, and *onder'rig*, v., (—), teach, instruct (from *rig*, v., direct, aim; cf. <sup>1</sup>*rigting*, direction); <sup>1</sup>*ondersoek*,

n., investigation, and *onder'soek*, v., (—), investigate, lit. seek under; *'onderwerp*, n., subject, and *onder'werp*, reflex. v., (—), subject (*Hy onderwerp hom aan . . .*, He subjects himself to . . .).

*Names of the Points of the Compass.*

These are: *noord* (north); *suid* (south); *oos* (east); *wes* (west); *noordwes* (north-west); *noordoos* (north-east); *suidoos* (south-east); and *suidwes* (south-west). When preceded by *die*, an *-e* is added to *noord*, and *suid*, and *-te* to *oos* and *wes*. Hence: *die noorde* (the north); *die suide*; *die ooste*; *die weste*. The same additions occur in expressions like *'westewind* (west wind), etc. Other forms to be noted: *ten suide van* (to the south of); *ten ooste van* (to the east of); and *noordwaarts* (northwards), *weswaarts* (westwards), etc.

*Vocabulary.*

*'sonsondergang*, sunset, from *son*, n., sun, and *'ondergang*, n., going down, decline, from *'ondergaan*, (*onderge-*), go down. *op reis gaan*, go on a journey, go travelling.  
*'dansonderwyseres*, lady dancing teacher, from *dans*, v. and n., dance, and *onder'wyser*, teacher, (fem. *-es*, with change of stress: *onderwyse'res*).  
*môre-aand*, tomorrow-evening.  
*verf*, n. and v., paint.  
*ver'ras*, v., surprise, be surprised.  
*'volgens*, according to, from *volg*, v., follow.  
*'vooraf*, beforehand.  
*'aankoms*, arrival, from *'aankom*, (*aange-*), arrive.  
*ge'dreum*, n., rumbling, from *dreun*, v., rumble, boom.  
*donder*, *'doner*, n., thunder.  
*'oomblik*, (*-ke*), moment.  
*'druppel*, n., drop (e.g. of water).  
*hard*, heavily (of falling rain).  
*'aantrek*, v., (*aange-*), dress, put on clothes, lit. pull on.  
*huis*, n., house; home, in expressions like *my huis*, etc.  
*baadjie*, *'baici*, n., jacket.  
*'toestand*, situation, state of affairs, from *staan*, v., stand, *stand*, n., position, attitude.  
*ge'sag*, authority.

*Exercise 16. Translate into English:*

Hulle was al klaar met die werk voor sonsondergang. Ek het die werk voltooi gehad voor my vertrek. Voor middage was die kinders nog aan die speel. Net voor die swaar reëns van verlede week het sy vakansie begin. Kon hy toe nie met die motorkar op reis gaan nie? Hy het weswaarts gereis.

Ek het hom die hele verhaal vertel. Toe kyk hy na my en roep sy broer. Gelukkig kon hulle my help. Hulle wou my ook help.

Dink hy oor die saak? Het hy oor die saak gedink? Ek dink hy sal nog kom. Ek dag hy sou nog kom. Hy woon ten ooste van Bloemfontein. Sy hoor die man praat. Sy het die man oor 'n interessante onderwerp hoor praat. Ek het haar die brief sien skryf. Hulle het hier gesit en werk. Ek wou hulle nie steur nie. Hierdie misbruike moet ophou. Die dansonderwyseres onderrig die kinders. Is haar onderrig goed?

*Exercise 16a. Translate into Afrikaans:*

I expected him tomorrow evening, but he arrived at half past three this afternoon. I had been painting and was surprised to see him so early. According to him he had written beforehand. Before his arrival I had finished the work.

The lightning flashed in the north and then we heard the rumble of thunder. (Translate: *van die donder*.) In a few minutes the first drops of rain (translate: *druppels reën*) fell. Then it rained heavily. We had our raincoats with us and we put them on. Then we walked on (use: *verder*, farther) through the rain. At last we reached our home. Our shoes were wet but our jackets were dry.

I see them walking across the road. I saw them walking. At the corner they stood talking. Then the one came back. Didn't he want to go with (the other man)? He was investigating the situation. Has he nearly completed the investigation? They will not subject themselves (use *hulle*, not *hulleself*) to his authority.

INFINITIVES; ENGLISH GERUNDS RENDERED BY  
AFRIKAANS INFINITIVES; PAST TENSE CON-  
STRUCTIONS WITHOUT *GE*-; SEQUENCE OF  
WORDS IN INFINITIVES; VERBS—FUTURE  
TENSES; NAMES OF CONTINENTS

*Infinitives*

Revise the sections in Chapters XI, XIV and XXIV on infinitives. In English there are two forms of the infinitive, one with "to", the other without the "to". In Afrikaans there are three forms, one with *om te*, one with *te*, and one with neither. To this third one we have referred as the "bare" infinitive. To a large extent where English uses the form with "to", Afrikaans uses the form with *om te* or (less frequently) *te*; and where English uses the bare infinitive, Afrikaans does likewise; but there are some important differences.

(1) *English "to"*—*Afrikaans om te*.

When the infinitive is used as the subject or object of a verb, as an adverbial or adjectival adjunct, or as the completion of a predicate, the form is usually with "to" in English and with *om te* in Afrikaans. E.g. *Om te loop is gesond* (To walk is healthy). *Hy leer om te loop* (He learns to walk). After *leer* we can also use the bare infinitive: *Hy leer loop*. *Hy weet hoe om te werk* (He knows how to work). *Ons weet wat om te doen* (We know what to do). *Die begeerte om te sing is sterk* (The desire to sing is strong; *be'geerte* is a noun from *be'geer*, v., desire). *Ek eet om te lewe* (I eat to live). *Dit is jou plig om te werk* (It is your duty to work; pl. of *plig* is *pligte*).

(2) *English bare infinitive*—*Afrikaans bare infinitive*.

Usually the bare infinitive is used in both languages after auxiliary verbs. E.g. *Sy sal kom* (She will come). *Sy moet sing* (She must sing). *Hy kan lees* (He can read). *Ek durf dit nie doen nie* (I dare not do it; there is also a noun *durf*, daring). The same happens when many ordinary verbs are used as auxiliary verbs. E.g. *Ek hoor die hond blaf* (I hear the dog bark).

*Hy sien die trein aankom* (He sees the train approach). English, of course, sometimes uses the participle here: "barking", "approaching".

(3) *English "to"*—*Afrikaans te*.

After a small group of verbs Afrikaans uses *te* only, where English uses "to". E.g. the verbs in the following sentences: *Jy behoort te slaap* (You ought to sleep). *Hy blyk siek te wees* (He appears to be ill—i.e. it is evident that he is ill). *Sy skyn gesond te wees* (She appears to be well—i.e. she seems to be well). *Dit begin te reën* (It begins to rain). After *begin* we can also use the bare infinitive: *Dit begin reën*. In the following expressions we use the infinitive with *te*: *Die huis is te huur* (The house is to let; *huur*, v., hire; cf. *ver'huur*, v., hire out, let).

Now the differences:

(4) *English "to"*—*Afrikaans the bare infinitive*.

After certain verbs English uses the infinitive with "to" where Afrikaans uses the bare infinitive, treating the first verb as an auxiliary. E.g. *Sy kom my besoek* (She comes to visit me). *Hy wil gaan* (He wants, wishes or desires to go). *Hy probeer leer* (He tries to learn). After *probeer* we can also use the form with *om te*: *Hy probeer om te leer*.

(5) *English the bare infinitive*—*Afrikaans te*.

After "need not" English uses the bare infinitive, where Afrikaans uses the infinitive with *te* after *hoef nie*. E.g. *Jy hoef nie te kom nie* (You need not come).

*English Gerunds rendered by Afrikaans Infinitives*

Afrikaans has no gerunds, and often the English gerund is rendered by an infinitive in Afrikaans. After the preposition *sonder* (without) the full form of the infinitive (i.e. the one with *om te*) is used. E.g. *Hy eet sonder om te bid* (He eats without praying, i.e. saying grace). After *deur* (by) and a few other prepositions the form with *te* is used. E.g. *Deur vinnig te loop sal ons gou daar kom* (By walking quickly we shall get there soon). As subject and as object of a verb, a gerund can be rendered by the bare form of the infinitive. E.g. *Loop is gesond* (Walking is healthy). *Hy leer sing* (He learns singing; *leer* is used as an auxiliary here). *Hy hou van loop* (Hy likes walking); we can also say: *Hy hou daarvan om te loop* (lit. He likes it, to walk).

Note also the following constructions: *Die 'baba hou op met*



*hul* (The baby stops crying); *Hulle gaan swem* (They go swimming; They go for a swim; *gaan* is used as an auxiliary here); *Hy is van plan om my te besoek* (He intends visiting me, lit. He is of plan to visit me).

#### Past Tense Constructions without *ge-*

According to the rule given in Chap. XXIV, where an ordinary verb is used as an auxiliary to a second verb in the present tense (e.g. of the type *hoor . . . blaf, sien . . . aankom, kom . . . besoek, probeer . . . leer, begin . . . reën, leer . . . sing, gaan . . . swem*), and the sentence is put into the past tense, both verbs (after the auxiliary *het* of the past tense) are in the infinitive form, and the first one does not take the *ge-*. Hence the following past tense forms of sentences quoted above: *Ek het die hond hoor blaf* (I heard the dog bark, or barking). *Hy het die trein sien aankom* (He saw the train approach, or approaching). *Sy het my kom besoek* (She came to visit me). *Hy het probeer leer* (He tried to learn). *Dit het begin reën* (It began to rain). *Hy het leer sing* (He learnt singing). *Hulle het gaan swem* (They went swimming).

#### Sequence of Words in Infinitives

For the sequence of words where the bare infinitive is used, revise Chapters XI and XIV. When the full form of the infinitive is used, extensions and objects are inserted between the *om* and the *te*, never between the *te* and the infinitive verb. E.g. *Om baie te loop is gesond* (To walk much is healthy). If the full infinitive is used after another verb the *om* usually follows immediately on this main verb. E.g. *Ek hoop om môre die brief te ontvang* (I hope to receive the letter tomorrow).

When the form with *te* only is used, the *te* and the infinitive verb still remain unseparated, and the object and extensions are usually placed between the main verb and the *te*. E.g. *Jy behoort goed te slaap* (You ought to sleep well). *Hy behoort die man vandag te ontmoet* (He ought to meet the man today).

#### Verbs—the Future Tenses

Revise Chapters X and XI on the future tense, and XIV and XXIV on the subsidiary tenses. Here we shall deal with the continuous, the perfect, and the perfect continuous forms of the future tense, again using the simple verb *skryf* as model.

The future continuous “I shall be writing” is rendered either by the simple future *Ek sal skryf* or by phrases like *Ek sal aan die skryf wees, Ek sal besig wees om te skryf, Ek sal reeds aan die skryf wees, or Ek sal dan besig wees om te skryf* (I shall at that time, or then (*dan*) be busy writing).

The future perfect “I shall have written” is rendered by *Ek sal geskryf het* (i.e. the auxiliary *sal* plus the simple past tense, but with the past participle and the auxiliary *het* inverted).

The future perfect continuous “I shall have been writing” is rendered by *Ek sal aan die skryf gewees het, Ek sal dan aan die skryf gewees het, Ek sal dan reeds besig gewees het om te skryf, or Ek sal dan al aan die skryf gewees het*.

The student will have noted the use of the temporal adverbs *reeds, al* and *dan*. The English “then” when referring to the future is translated by *dan*.

Sometimes the future tense is indicated not by a change in the verb but by an adverb of time. E.g. *Ek sien jou môre-aand* (I shall see—lit. “I see”—you tomorrow evening). *Hy kom netnou* (He will be coming—lit. “He comes”—in a few minutes’ time). *Die skip arriveer aanstaande week* (The ship will arrive—lit. “arrives”—next week). This use of the present tense forms to indicate the future occurs also in English, e.g. “He arrives tomorrow”; “They are coming in a few minutes’ time”.

The Afrikaans verb *gaan* is often used as an auxiliary verb for a similar purpose, and renders English expressions like “am going”, “is going” and “are going”. E.g. *Ons gaan hom help* (We are going to help him).

#### Sequence of Words

When sentences of the type *hoor . . . blaf* (see above) are put into the future tense, the sequence of words is the same as for the past tense. The auxiliary *sal* follows the subject, and the two infinitives are placed together at the end of the sentence. Hence: *Jy sal die hond hoor blaf* (You will hear the dog bark, or barking), etc.

#### Names of the Continents

The following are the names in Afrikaans of the main continents: *Afrika*, (‘a:frika, Africa); *Europa*, (‘ø:ro:pa, Europe);

*Asië*, ('a:siə, Asia); *Amerika*, (a'me:rika, America); *Australië*, (ou'stra:liə, Australia). Note the hyphen in: 'Noord-Amerika (North America), and 'Suid-Amerika (South America). The word for "island" is 'eiland, (-e).

### Vocabulary

'reisies or 'resies, n., race, races; the Afr. word has no separate sing. and pl. forms.

by iemand eet, have a meal with someone, at his home.

'n week lank, for a week; 'n maand lank, for a month; etc.

'wêreldreis, world trip, journey or voyage round the world, from wêreld, world, and reis, journey.

Nieu-Seeland, niu'se:lant, New Zealand.

'skaatsry, (skaatsge-), skate, ride on skates, from skaats, v. and n. (-e), skate; 'skaatsry, n., skating.

'wandel, v., (ge-), walk.

skilde'ry, n., painting, picture, from 'skilder, v., (ge-), paint, also n., painter, artist.

'sakebrief, business letter.

be'antwoord, v., reply to (e.g. letters).

ge'woonte, habit, from ge'woon, usual, customary.

vreemd, strange(ly).

to'neelstuk, n., play (for theatre), from toneel, n., stage, scene.

'opvoer, (opge-), produce, stage (a play); from this derives

'opvoering, production (of stage play, etc.), performance.

met va'kansie, on holiday.

res, (-te), remainder, rest.

tuis, at home.

'deurbring, (deurge-), spend or pass (time), run through, spend or squander (money).

### Exercise 17. Translate into English :

Hy probeer om haar gerus te stel. Het hy jou nie kom besoek nie? Jy behoort onmiddellik aan jou vriend te skryf. Hy het geen begeerte gehad om rond te loop nie. Om belang te stel in boeke is 'n goeie teken. Jy moet die krag hê om te volhard. Hulle gaan visvang. Hulle het gaan visvang. Het jy die perd die reisies sien wen? Mōreaand kom vriende ons besoek. Hulle sal by ons eet. Na aandete sal ons eers gesels en dan na musiek luister. Ek verwag my vrou terug op die dertiende van

hierdie maand. Teen daardie tyd sal ek al 'n week lank in die tuin aan die werk gewees het. My skoonouers vertrek aanstaande maand op 'n wêreldreis. Hulle sal nege maande lank weg wees. Eers gaan hulle per vliegtuig na Europa, en dan per skip na Noord-Amerika. Daarvandaan reis hulle oor Australië en Nieu-Seeland terug na Suid-Afrika. Hulle is nie van plan om Asië te besoek nie. Sy sal die skaatsry in Holland geniet.

### Exercise 17a. Translate into Afrikaans :

They went for a walk (use *wandel*). Do they often go walking? He comes to look at the paintings. Will you (sing. informal) know what to do? She came to work in Cape Town at the end of last year. He will come to discuss the plan. To reply immediately to a business letter is a good habit. It is not his habit to do this. Will he see the ship departing? To depart isn't always pleasant. Some people find it difficult to rise early in winter. He likes (use *Hy hou daarvan . . .*) to walk about in a strange city. We are going to produce a play. Does she want to take part in the performance? He arrives next Friday. By that time I shall have completed the work in the garden, and be writing letters. Next month I am leaving on holiday. First I shall go to Durban for a week and then to Johannesburg for another week. After that I shall return to Cape Town to spend the rest of my leave at home. He talks without thinking. Swimming is good exercise.

## CHAPTER XXVI.

THE VERB *WORD*; THE PASSIVE VOICE;  
SEQUENCE OF WORDS IN THE PASSIVE VOICE;  
NEGATIVE SENTENCES; QUESTIONS; NEGATIVE  
QUESTIONS; NAMES OF OCEANS AND TIDES

*The Verb word*

The main forms of the verb *om te word* (to become, to get) are as follows:

Simple present: *Ek word* (I become).

Simple past (also Present perfect): *Ek het geword* (I became, I have become).

Simple future: *Ek sal word* (I shall become).

Future perfect: *Ek sal geword het* (I shall have become).

The subsidiary tenses are expressed with the assistance of additional qualifications. E.g. Present continuous: *Ek is aan die word* or *Ek is besig om te word* (I am becoming); *Ek is aan die siek word* (I am getting ill). Past continuous: *Ek was aan die word* or *Ek was besig om te word*; *Ek was besig om weer gesond te word* (I was getting well again). Past perfect: *Ek het reeds geword* (I had become); *Ek het reeds gesond geword* (I had already become well). Future continuous: *Ek sal besig wees om te word* or *Ek sal aan die word wees* (I shall be becoming); *Ek sal besig wees om gesond te word* (I shall be getting well).

*The Passive Voice*

The passive voice in Afrikaans is formed with the assistance of the auxiliary verbs *om te word* and *om te wees*; and here, apart from the three simple tenses (present, past and future), we have clearly marked forms for the past perfect and the future perfect without any additional adverbs of time.

The simple present tense is formed by *word* plus the past participle. E.g. *word geskryf* (is written—in the present tense sense). This form also serves for the present continuous. E.g. *Die brief word geskryf* (The letter is being written).

For the present perfect we use *is* plus the past participle. E.g. *is geskryf* (has been written). This form also serves for the simple past tense. Hence *is geskryf* is also equal to “was written”. The student will realize immediately how necessary it is to be doubly careful here: where English has “is” in the present tense, Afrikaans has *word*; and where English has “was”, Afrikaans has *is*. Hence translate “is written” (except where it bears a past tense meaning) or “is being written” by *word geskryf* (not *is geskryf*), and “was written” by *is geskryf* (not *was geskryf*). E.g. *Die brief is geskryf* (The letter was written, or The letter has been written).

And now, the clearly marked form of the past perfect. This is formed by *was* plus the past participle. E.g. *was geskryf* (had been written), *was vertel* (had been told), *was voltooi* (had been completed), *was losgemaak* (had been untied). Hence the need to be so careful: where English has “was”, Afrikaans has *is*; and where English has “had been”, Afrikaans has *was*. E.g. *Die brief was geskryf* (The letter had been written).

The future tenses are less capable of confusion. The simple future is formed by *sal*, plus the past participle, plus *word*. Therefore: *sal geskryf word* (will be written). E.g. *Die brief sal geskryf word* (The letter will be written).

The future perfect is formed by *sal*, plus the past participle of the verb concerned, plus the past participle *geword*, plus *het*. Therefore: *sal geskryf geword het* (will have been written). A more definite stage of completeness of action at some point in the future can be conveyed by using *wees* instead of *geword het*. E.g. *sal geskryf wees* (will have been written). This is the form most often used.

The expression “It is said that . . .” can be rendered by *Daar word vertel dat . . .* This is a kind of impersonal passive form frequently used in Afrikaans. E.g. *Daar word geskiet* (Shots are being fired, lit. There is being shot). *Daar word gelag* (There is laughter, People are laughing). *Daar word geklop* (There is a knock (at the door)). *Daar sal pryse uitgedeel word* (Prizes will be distributed; note *'uitdeel*, (*uitge-*), deal out, distribute).

A construction like “I was given a message today”, where the indirect object becomes the subject in the passive voice, is impossible in Afrikaans. It has to be rendered by *'n Boodskap*

is vandag aan my gegee or Daar is vandag 'n boodskap aan my gegee.

A basic meaning of the preposition *deur* is "through", but in sentences in the passive voice it is used where "by" is used in English. E.g. *Hy kruip deur die draadheining* (He crawls through the wire fence), but *Die boek is deur haar geskryf* (The book was written by her).

#### *Sequence of Words in the Passive Voice*

As in other tenses, extensions of time, etc., are inserted after the first auxiliary (*word, is, was* or *sal*), and the rest of the verbal forms go to the end of the sentence. The indication of the agent (e.g. "by the man", etc., Afr. *deur die man*, etc.) is also usually placed with the extensions, but can be placed at the end of the sentence after the final verbal forms. E.g. *Die brief word vandag deur my geskryf* (The letter is being written by me today). *Die hond word losgemaak deur die bediende* (The dog is being untied by the servant). *Die brief is gister deur 'n vriend van my gepos* or *Die brief is gister gepos deur 'n vriend van my* (The letter was posted yesterday by a friend of mine; the verb is *pos*, post).

When such sentences begin with the extension of time, etc., the subject and the first auxiliary are inverted. E.g. *Vandag word die nuwe gebou geopen* (The new building is being opened today; the verb is *'open, (ge-), open*).

#### *Negative Sentences in the Passive Voice*

Negative sentences in the passive voice follow the rules given in Chap. XIX: the first negative occurs at some point in the middle of the sentence, but after the first auxiliary, and the second at the end of the sentence. E.g. *Die werk is nie voltooi nie* (The work has not been completed). *Die hond word nooit losgemaak nie* (The dog is never untied).

#### *Questions in the Passive Voice*

Questions in the passive voice follow the rules given in Chap. XXI, i.e.

(a) When there is no interrogative pronoun, the subject and the first auxiliary are inverted. E.g. *Is die brief reeds geskryf?* (Has the letter already been written?)

(b) When there is an interrogative pronoun, this comes first and is followed by the first auxiliary, after which the subject is placed. E.g. *Deur wie is die brief geskryf?* (By whom was the letter written?) *Waardeur is die ongeluk veroorsaak?* (By what was the accident caused?; the verb *ver'oorzaak* comes from *'oorzaak*, n., cause).

#### *Negative Questions in the Passive Voice*

Negative questions in the passive voice follow the rules given in Chapters XIX and XXI, and above. As there are no passive forms consisting of one verb only, two negatives have always to be used. E.g. *Word die woord nie met 'n f gespel nie?* (Isn't the word spelt with an f?) *Is die brug nie voltooi nie?* (Has the bridge not been completed?) *Is die boek nooit voltooi nie?* (Was the book never completed?)

#### *Names of the Oceans*

The Afrikaans word for "ocean" is *oseaan, ose'ua:n, (-eane)*, and the names of the principal oceans are: *die At'lantiese Oseaan* (the Atlantic); *die Stille Oseaan* (The Pacific); *die 'Indiese Oseaan ('andiso, the Indian Ocean)*; *die Stille Suidsee* (the South Pacific); *die Noordpoolsee* (the Arctic Ocean); *die Suidpoolsee* (the Antarctic or Southern Ocean); *die Middellandse See* (the Mediterranean Sea); *die Oossee* (the Baltic). Note: *'suidpool* (south pole), and *noordpool* (north pole); *pool* means "pole" in the sense of geographical or magnetic pole; otherwise we use *paal* for "pole".

#### *Names of the Tides*

The Afrikaans word for "tides" is *getye*, sing. *ge'ty*; and the principal tides are: *'hoogwater* (high-tide); *'laagwater* (low tide, ebb-tide); *'dooie gety* (neap-tide); *'springvloed* or *'hoogwater* (spring-tide). *Vloed* also means "flood", and is used only in a word such as *'sondvloed* (the deluge). The usual word for "flood", "overflowing", or "inundation" is *oor'stroming*, from the verb *oor'stroom*, (—), flood, inundate. Note the use of *oop*, a., (—, *ope*), open, in the expression *op die oop see* (on the high seas).

#### *Vocabulary*

*ge'boorte*, n., birth, from *ge'bore*, born; *hy is gebore*, he was born.

'opstand, n., revolt, from 'opstaan, (opge-), stand up, rise, revolt.

oor'winning, victory, from oor'win, v., (—), gain a victory.

grap, n., joke.

'ieder, a., (-e), every, each.

'kragstasie, power-station.

kan'toorbode, office-boy, from 'bode, messenger.

'reëling, arrangement.

tref, v., make—in the expression *hy tref reëlings*, he makes arrangements.

ont'byt, n. and v., breakfast.

ge'reed, ready.

'ysberg, iceberg, from ys, ice, and berg, mountain.

die armes, the poor.

*Exercise 18. Translate into English :*

Die brug word deur 'n nuwe maatskappy voltooi. Die verhaal is deur my oom aan my vertel. Die brief is nie deur die posbode afgelewer nie. Die huis was voor my geboorte al gebou. Voor die opstand was die leier reeds verraai. Daar was geen oorwinning vir hulle nie. Die verhaal van hulle neerlaag sal vertel word. Sal die hond nooit losgemaak word nie? Teen môre-aand sal die verslag geskryf wees. Voor sy aankoms sal die huis afgebreek geword het. Na die oorlog sal die land verwoes wees. Vanmiddag sal die standbeeld onthul word. Is die kamer nie gister deur die bediende skoongemaak nie? Die pos word vandag per vliegtuig verwag. Die kuste van die Middellandse See word deur baie volkere bewoon. Net voor hoogwater is die man op die strand gesien. Met vloedwater het ons die hoogste getye. Hoe word die woord gespel? Waar sal die vergadering gehou word? Deur wie is die brief opgestel? Wat sal daar aan hom vertel word? Wanneer sal die verslag klaar wees? Te veel tyd word daaraan bestee.

*Exercise 18a. Translate into Afrikaans :*

The joke is being told by every-one. The dog is untied by the servant every morning. The bridge was completed last year. Has the dog been untied? The story had been told before my arrival. The dog had not been untied early that morning. The new power-station will be completed next year. Before his

departure next week the work will have been completed. By this time next year many new houses will have been built. The letters were posted by the new office-boy yesterday. Will all of them be delivered tomorrow morning? With whom were the arrangements made? When will breakfast be ready? In the Arctic Ocean many icebergs are found. The south pole was discovered by Amundsen. There is (use *Daar word . . .*) much laughter and crying. Money was (use *Daar is . . .*) given to them for the journey. Much food will (use *Daar sal . . .*) be distributed among the poor.

## CHAPTER XXVII.

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE; NEGATIVE FORMS; INFINITIVES IN THE PAST TENSE AND IN THE PASSIVE VOICE; MONEY.

*The Imperative Mood*

The imperative mood can be expressed in three ways in Afrikaans:

(1) Firstly, there is an imperative form which is usually the same as the simple present tense form. These forms are used when addressing the second person. As in English, the subject is not mentioned, and the sentence begins with the verb, or consists of the verb only. These are the forms most frequently used. E.g. *Kom!* (Come!) *Staan hier!* (Stand here!) *Ver'geet die voorval!* (Forget the incident!) Often there is some polite word, like *asse'blief* (please), *liever* or *lievers* (rather) or *tog* (here more or less equal to an emphatic "do"), in the command, giving it the tone of a request. In English the "please" can be placed first or last; in Afrikaans *asseblief* is placed in the middle or at the end of the sentence. E.g. *Be'antwoord asseblief die brief* (Please reply to the letter). *Vertel my tog die verhaal asseblief* (Do tell me the story please).

Note the imperative: *Skaam jou!* (You ought to be ashamed!) The verb *skaam*, feel ashamed, be ashamed, is reflexive; there is also the word *skaam*, a. and adv., shy, shyly, timid(ly).

When a separable compound verb is used in this manner, the parts are separated and inverted, just as in the simple present tense. E.g. die verb *'oppas*: *Pas op!* (Take care!); the verb *ge'luksweens*: *Wens hom geluk!* (Congratulate him!).

Some of the irregular verbs have imperative forms that are the same as the simple present tense forms (e.g. *het*), but the auxiliary *om te wees* has an imperative form that is the same as the bare infinitive (*wees*). Hence: *Het 'medelye met my!* (Have sympathy with me!, Have pity on me!); but *Wees stil!* (Be quiet!).

(2) Secondly, the imperative can be expressed by using the auxiliary verbs *laat* (let, allow) or *'toelaat*, (*toege-*), (allow), followed by the bare infinitive. This form is used when addressing a second person, or when giving such a person a command which relates to a third person. E.g. *Laat hom die brief skryf* (Let him write the letter). *Laat hom toe om te kom* (Allow him to come).

(3) Thirdly, the imperative can be expressed by using the auxiliary *moet* (must), followed by the bare infinitive. This form can be used with reference to both second and third persons, and here the subject is mentioned. E.g. *Jy moet hier staan* (You must stand here). *Hy moet die brief voltooi* (He must complete the letter).

*Imperatives in the Passive Voice*

The second and third forms of the imperative, mentioned above, can also be used in the passive voice. The present tense of the passive voice is formed, as the student knows, by *word*, followed by the past participle. E.g. *Die brief word voltooi*. The imperative is formed by the auxiliary *moet* or *laat*, followed by the passive voice form, but with the parts inverted, i.e. first the past participle and then the *word*. E.g. *Laat die brief voltooi word* (Let the letter be completed). *Sy moet gelukgewens word* (She must be congratulated). *Hy moet dadelik ontslaan word* (He must be dismissed immediately).

*Negative Imperatives*

There are three forms of negative imperatives, corresponding to the positive imperatives, but here the third form (with *moet nie* or *moenie*, *'muni*) is most frequently used. The equivalent of the auxiliary "do", used so widely in English to form negative imperatives ("do not" or "don't") cannot be used in Afrikaans for this purpose.

(1) Firstly, the imperative form of the verb can be used. Here the subject is not mentioned. The customary two negatives are inserted. This construction is usually used only in longer sentences. E.g. *Maak hom asseblief nie wakker nie* (Please do not awaken him; note the position of *hom* and *asseblief*; *'wakker* means "awake" or "alive", and *wakker maak* "to wake (someone)", lit. make awake). *Skryf liever geen woord nie* (Rather do not write a word, lit. Write rather no word).

*Sê liever tog niks nie* (Rather do not say anything, or Rather say nothing).

(2) Secondly, there are the forms with the auxiliary verb *laat*. Here again the two negatives are inserted, and the subject is not mentioned. This construction also is usually used in longer sentences. E.g. *Laat jou nooit 'ompraat nie* (Never let yourself be persuaded, lit. talked round, talked over, talked into something). *Laat hom nie die brief skryf nie* (Don't let him write the letter).

(3) Thirdly, there are the forms with the auxiliary *moet*. Here the subject can be mentioned but (unlike the corresponding positive imperative) it need not be mentioned. E.g. *Jy moet niks sê nie* (You must not say anything). *Moet niks sê nie* (Don't say anything). When the first negative is *nie*, and this follows immediately on the *moet*, the words *moet* and *nie* are often contracted to *moenie*. E.g. *Jy moet nie slaap nie* or *Jy moenie slaap nie* (You must not sleep) or *Moenie slaap nie!* (Don't sleep!).

When there is an object, it can be placed between the *moet* and the first imperative, but sometimes it can follow the first negative. E.g. *Jy moet haar nie vertel nie* or *Jy moenie haar vertel nie* (You must not tell her).

The third form of the negative imperative, i.e. with *moet* or *moenie*, can be used both in long and in short sentences, and is the form of the negative imperative most widely used. All the sentences quoted under (1) and (2) above can be rendered in constructions with *moet*.

Note on the verb *laat*: As an independent verb, *laat* can mean "let", "leave" or "let be". It is also used as an auxiliary verb in a number of meanings. E.g. *werk laat doen* (have work done); *iemand laat werk* (make someone work); *'n huis laat bou* (have a house built); *iemand laat roep* (have someone called); *'n plan laat vaar* (abandon a plan, lit. let a plan fare, travel); *iemand laat gaan* (let someone go); *iets laat staan* (let something be, leave it, abandon it). Note also the following imperatives: *Laat staan my* (Let me be, Leave me alone); *Laat die saak rus* (Let the matter rest, Let it be).

#### *Infinitives in the Past Tense*

The infinitive has a past tense. In English, next to the present tense "to write", we have the past tense "to have written".

In Afrikaans likewise, next to *om te skryf* we have the past tense infinitive *om geskryf te het*, consisting of *om te*, followed by the past participle and *het* (the auxiliary of the past tense). E.g. *Om daardie brief te geskryf het, was dwaas* (To have written that letter was foolish).

To form the past tense infinitive of separable compound verbs, the two parts of the compound are separated, the *om* comes first, then the first part of the compound, then the past participle of the second part, and then the *het*. E.g. *'wegry—om weg te gery het* (to have ridden away, or off).

#### *Infinitives in the Passive Voice*

The infinitive has forms also in the passive voice. In English, next to the present tense "to write" we have the passive voice "to be written". Similarly in Afrikaans, next to *om te skryf* we have *om geskryf te word*. Note the formation: *om*, followed by the past participle, then *te* and *word* (the auxiliary of the passive voice). E.g. *Om geslaan te word is nie aangenaam nie* (To be beaten is not pleasant).

In the passive voice also the infinitive has a past tense. Next to the present tense "to be written", we have in English "to have been written". Similarly in Afrikaans we have, next to *om geskryf te word*, the past tense, passive, *om geskryf te gewees het*. Note the formation: *om*, followed by the past participle of the main verb, followed by *te* and *gewees het* (the past participle of *is*, and *het*). E.g. *Dit is goed om bemin te gewees het, al was dit net een keer* (It is good to have been loved, even if it was only once). (For the sequence of words in a subordinate clause beginning with *al*, see Chap. XXIX below.)

The passive voice infinitives of the separable verbs are similarly formed. E.g. *'losmaak*. Passive voice, present tense: *om losgemaak te word* (to be untied)—here the customary form of the past participle is used. Passive voice, past tense: *om losgemaak te gewees het* (to have been untied).

#### *Money*

The designations of coins are very similar to the English designations. E.g. *'n pond* (a pound; as in Eng., the word also indicates a pound weight); *'n halfkroon* (half-a-crown); *'n flo'ryn* or *'n tweesjielingstuk* (a florin, or a two shilling piece); *'n sjieling* (*'sjilən*, a shilling); *sikspens* (*'səkspē:s*, sixpence);

*trippens* ('trəpɛ:s), *drie pennies* or 'n *tiekie*, 'tiki (a threepenny-bit or three pennies). The singular form of *pond* is retained when indicating multiples, e.g. *vyf pond* (five pounds). In indicating amounts the words *sjielings* and *pennies* are often omitted, as in English. Note also *per'sent* (per cent) and *persen'tasie* (percentage).

#### Vocabulary

*neem nog 'n stukkie koek*, have (lit. take) another piece of cake ;  
cf. *nog een*, one more.

*maak gou !*, hurry (up)!

'*onverstandig*, unwise(ly), opposite of '*ver'standig*, wise(ly), from '*ver'staan*, v., understand.

*die jongste boeke*, etc., the latest books, etc., lit. the youngest.  
*na'latig*, negligent, from '*nalaat*, (*nage-*), neglect e.g. a duty.  
'*onmenslik*, inhuman(ly), opposite of '*menslik*, human(ly), from '*mens*.

'*tiensjieling-noot*, ten shilling note; the usual word for "banknote" is '*banknoot*. *Noot* can also mean "note" of music.

'*treinkaartjie*, train-ticket, from *kaart*, card, chart, map, *kaartjie*, '*kurci*, little card, ticket.

*klaar maak*, v., finish, get ready, prepare, cook food, lit. make ready.

*ge'hoorsaam*, a., obedient, adv., obediently; v., obey; from '*hoor*, v., hear.

*ver'waarloos*, v., neglect; from this derives '*waarlosing*, n., neglect.

'*leuen*, n., lie; '*leuens vertel*, tell lies, v. lie.

*deur*, n., door.

'*opmerk*, v., (*opge-*), notice; from '*merk*, v. and n., mark.

*be'hoefte*, n., heed, from '*be'hoef*, v., need, require.

*elk*, (-e), each, every, any.

*sar'kasme*, sarcasm.

'*onaangenaam*, unpleasant, opposite of '*aangenaam*.

*raak sien*, v., notice.

*werd*, adv., worth; '*hoeveel is dit werd?*, how much, or what is it worth?

#### Exercise 19. Translate into English:

Gaan nou! Geniet die aand! Laat staan dié plan. Gaan saam met ons! Pos asseblief hierdie briewe. Neem asseblief

nog 'n stukkie koek. Maak gou! Wees gereed! Wens hom nie namens my geluk nie! Moenie so raas nie! Moet hom nie seermaak nie. Moenie hom vertel nie. Jy moet niemand laat binnekom nie. Moenie onverstandig wees nie. Jy moet liewers niks sê nie. Laat die gevangene roep. Laat hom toe om ons te vergesel. Jy moet oppas. Moenie hom toelaat om saam te gaan nie. Jy moenie laat ("late") slaap nie. Sy moet hom om sewe-uur wakker maak. Laat hom asseblief die verslag voorless. Die bode moet dadelik ontslaan word. Laat die verhaal van hulle oorwinning vertel word. Laat my die jongste boeke sien asseblief. Ek laat 'n huis bou. Party boeke word vinnig geskryf om vinnig gelees te word. Om na die ongeluk weg te gery het, was nalatig en onmenslik. Party mense gaan na onthale net om gesien te word. Om eers omsingel te gewees het en daarna te ontsnap, was nie maklik nie. „Leen my asseblief twee pond.” „Dit spyt my; ek het net 'n tiensjielingnoot, twee halfkronen, 'n tweesjielingstuk, drie sikspense en twee tiekiers.” Die treinkaartjie kos een pond een en 'n pennie.

#### Exercise 19a. Translate into Afrikaans:

Finish the work! Be obedient! Do congratulate him! Please help me! Be careful! Wash the cups. Bring me a cup of coffee, please. Let him go along with us. Don't stand here! Please don't wake him. Live and let live. He abandoned the plan. Trust no one. Let nothing disturb you (sing. informal). Don't neglect your (sing. informal) studies. Don't be naughty! You (sing. informal) must not tell lies. You (sing. informal) must congratulate her. Allow me to open the door for you (sing. formal, use *u*). She must return immediately. Let the message be given to the general. The letters must be delivered before eleven tomorrow morning. Don't make him work so hard. It is better to have been poor first and then to become rich. She will do much just to be noticed (use '*opmerk*). To be loved (use '*bemin*) is a need of every child. To have been exposed to their sarcasm was very unpleasant. To have been noticed (use '*raak sien*) was enough for her. He paid three pounds fourteen and six for the chair. "What do I owe you?" "Nine pounds two and four pence." "How much is the farm worth?" "About sixty thousand pounds."



THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—AUXILIARIES; OTHER MEANS OF INDICATING THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD; POLITE QUESTIONS; SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD IN THE PASSIVE VOICE

*The Subjunctive Mood—Auxiliaries*

Various auxiliary verbs are used to form the subjunctive moods of ordinary verbs. The group includes: *sal* and *sou*, *kan* and *kon*, *mag*, *was*, *moet* and *moes*, *behoort*, *hoef nie*, *wil* and *wou*. Usually there are three possible tense forms: a simple present or future tense, a simple past tense, and a past perfect; but since the subjunctive mood deals with indefinite, desired, possible, probable or conditional actions and states, the forms are often not tied to a definite time as the forms of the indicative mood are. They may also refer to the future, as e.g. the combinations with *sal* usually do.

The continuous and the perfect continuous tenses can be expressed with the assistance of the temporal adjectives mentioned in Chapters XIV, XXIV and XXV.

Here are some notes on the subjunctive auxiliaries.

1. *Sal* and its past tense *sou* ("would" or "should" where "should" does not mean "ought to") are used, sometimes in conjunction with *kan* and *kon*, to express conditional actions and states. E.g. Simple future: *Hy sal skryf as hy kan* (He will write if he can). Simple past: *Hy sou skryf as hy kon* (He would write if he could). Past perfect: *Hy sou geskryf het as hy kon* (He would have written if he could—this expresses an unrealized conditional action).

2. *Kan* expresses ability, *kon* a possibility, and *kon* plus a past participle an unrealized possibility. E.g. Simple present: *Ons kan hulle help* (We can help them). Simple past: *Ons kon hulle help* (We could help them). Past perfect: *Ons kon hulle gehelp het* (We could have helped them).

3. *Mag* expresses permission or ability only, not (as English "may" sometimes does) also likelihood or possibility. E.g.

*Ek mag na die bioskoop gaan* (I am allowed to go to the cinema). The English "I may go to the cinema" (meaning: It is possible or likely that I shall) is rendered by *sal* plus *dalk* (possibly, perhaps) or *mis'kien* (perhaps). Therefore: *Ek sal dalk na die bioskoop gaan* or *Ek sal miskien na die bioskoop gaan*.

*Mag* and its past tense *mog* are often used to express a wish or desire in sentences like: *Mag hy gou kom!* (May he come soon!); *Mog hy tog gou kom!* (If only he would come soon!).

4. *Was* (the past tense of *is*) is sometimes similarly used. E.g. *Was hy tog maar hier!* (Would that he were here!, If only he were here!).

5. *Moet*, *moes* and *be'hoort* (ought) express obligation, where English uses "must", "should" (meaning "ought to"), "ought" or "have to". Whereas English "must" can be used only in the present tense, Afrikaans *behoort* (like English "ought") can be used in the present and in the present perfect tense, but not in the future. The verb with the widest use is *moet*, like "have to" in English. Examples with *moet* and *moes*:—Simple present: *Ek moet dit doen* (I must do it, I have to do it). Simple past: *Hy moes dit doen* (He had to do it). Past perfect: *Hy moes dit gedoen het* (He should have done it, He ought to have done it). Simple future: *Ek sal dit moet doen* (I shall have to do it). Examples with *behoort*:—Simple present: *Hy behoort dit te doen* (He ought to do it, He should do it). Present perfect: *Hy behoort dit te gedoen het* (He ought to have done it, He should have done it).

6. *Hoef nie* (need not) is used to express freedom from obligation. E.g. Simple present: *Ƴy hoef dit nie te doen nie* (You need not do it). Simple past: *Ƴy hoef dit nie te gedoen het nie* (You need not have done it). Simple future: *Ƴy sal dit nie hoef te doen nie* (It will not be necessary for you to do it). The same thoughts can be expressed by using in Afrikaans the phrase *is nodig* (is necessary). E.g. *Dit is nie vir jou nodig om dit te doen nie* (It is not necessary for you to do it). *Dit was nie vir jou nodig om dit te doen nie* (It was not necessary for you to do it). *Dit sal nie vir jou nodig wees om dit te doen nie* (It will not be necessary for you to do it).

7. *Wil* (want to, desire) and its past tense *wou* are used to express desire. E.g. Simple present: *Hy wil hulle help* (He wants to help them). Simple past: *Hy wou hulle help* (He wanted to

help them). Past perfect: *Hy wou hulle gehelp het* (He wanted to help them). English has no distinction between the latter two tenses, and the two past tense forms in Afrikaans are used with almost equal meaning.

#### *Coupled Auxiliaries*

*Sou* and *wil* are sometimes coupled with other auxiliaries to express particular shades of meaning in the subjunctive mood.

1. *Sou kan* (would be able) is used to express a possible ability.

2. *Sou mag* (would be allowed to) is used to express a possible permission.

3. *Sou moet* (would have to) expresses a possible obligation.

4. *Sou nie hoef nie* (would not be required to) expresses the possibility of a non-obligation, or freedom from obligation.

5. *Sou wil* (would like to, would want to) is used to express the possibility of a desire.

6. *Wil hê* (want to have, desire, want) expresses a desire to have or a desire for someone else to do something. E.g. *wil hê jy moet* (want you to); *Ek wil hê jy moet terugkeer* (I want you to return).

#### *Other Means of Indicating the Subjunctive Mood*

Apart from the forms using the auxiliary verbs Afrikaans, like English, has other means of expressing the subjunctive mood. E.g.

(1) The use of modal verbs: *dink* (think), *voel* (feel), *'twyfel*, (*ge-*), (doubt), *meen* (think, be of the opinion), *vrees* (fear, be afraid), *ver'wag* (expect), *ver'moed* (presume, surmise), *wens* (wish), *hoop* (hope), *veronder'stel* (suppose), etc.

(2) The use of modal adjectives and adverbs: *'moontlik* (possible, possibly); *waar'skynlik* (probable, probably); *'twyfel-agtig* (doubtful); *dalk* or *mis'kien* (perhaps); *straks* (perhaps, presently); *graag* (gladly, readily, really, willingly, very much); *mos* (indeed, but); *glo* (evidently, seemingly); *'darein* (after all, all the same, really, surely); *'sommer* (simply, just); *'kastig*, *kamma* and *'kamtig* (quasi, as if it were, ostensibly, make believe); *'stellig* (positively, certainly, definitely); *ver'moedelik* (presumably); *maar* (but, yet, only, merely, just); *tog* (yet, nevertheless, still, all the same, already, after all, surely, so,

whatever, again); *'waarlik* (really, indeed); *'nogal* (rather, even).

#### *Polite Questions*

Polite questions are rendered by *sal*, *kan*, *sou kan* or *sal kan*, often with the word *asseblief* added. E.g. *Sal u my asseblief help?* (Will you help me please? or Would you help me please?). *Kan u my asseblief die pad wys?* (Can you show me the way please?) *Sou u my die pad kan wys?* or *Sou u my die pad kon wys?* (Could you show me the way?). Since the infinitive is used after an auxiliary verb, the separable and inseparable compound verbs present no difficulty here. E.g. *Sal jy asseblief die brief beantwoord?* (Will you please reply to the letter?) *Sal jy asseblief die werk onderneem?* (Will you please undertake the work?) *Sou jy hulle kon uitmooi?* (Could you invite them? or Would you be able to invite them?).

#### *The Subjunctive Mood in the Passive Voice*

Revise Chap. XXVI. The forms of the subjunctive mood in the passive voice are constructed in a manner similar to the active voice, detailed above, i.e. with the assistance of the auxiliaries or of modal adjectives and adverbs. A few examples are quoted here. Again, the temporal forms are not necessarily coupled to the specific tenses that they would seem to imply.

(1) Forms constructed with *sal* and *sou*, sometimes coupled with *kan* or *kon*, to express condition. Simple future: *Die brief sal geskryf word as ek kan* (The letter will be written if I am able). Simple past: *Die brief sou geskryf word as ek kon* (The letter would be written if I were able). Past perfect: *Die brief sou geskryf geword het*, *Die brief sou geskryf wees*, or *Die brief sou geskryf gewees het* (The letter would have been written). The other auxiliary verbs follow the same pattern.

(2) Forms with *kan* and *kon* to express ability. Simple present: *kan gehelp word* (can be helped). Simple past: *kon gehelp word* (could be helped). Past perfect: *kon gehelp geword het* (could have been helped). And again the forms with *wees*: *kon gehelp wees* and *kon gehelp gewees het* (could have been helped).

(3) Forms with *mag* to express permission or ability. Simple

present: *Daar mag in die saal gedans word* (Dancing is allowed in the hall, lit. There may in the hall be danced). Simple future: *Daar sal in die saal gedans mag word* (Dancing will be allowed in the hall). Simple present: *Hulle mag gehelp word* (They may be helped). Simple past: *Hulle mag gehelp geword het* (They may have been helped). Past perfect: *Hulle mag gehelp gewees het* (They might have been helped).

In the passive voice *mag* can also be used to express a wish or a desire. E.g. *Mag die oorlog gou beëindig word!* (May the war be brought to an end soon!; *beëindig*, tr. v., end, bring to an end, comes from *'eindig*, intr. v., end, from *'einde*, n., end).

(4) *Was* can be used similarly. E.g. *Was die werk tog maar beter gedoen!* (If only the work were better done!, or If only the work had been done better!).

(5) Forms with *moet*, *moes* and *behoort* to express obligation. Simple present: *Dit moet gedoen word* (It, or This must be done). *Dit moet geskryf wees*, and *Dit moet geskryf word* (It has to be written). Simple past: *Dit moes gedoen word* (This had to be done). Past perfect: *Dit moes gedoen geword het* and *Dit moes gedoen gewees het* (This should have been done). Simple present: *Dit behoort gedoen te word* (It should be done, or This ought to be done).

(6) Forms with *hoef nie* to express freedom from obligation. Simple present: *Dit hoef nie gedoen te word nie* (This need not be done).

(7) Forms with *wil* and *wou* to express desire. Simple present: *Hy wil gehelp word* and *Hy wil gehelp wees* (He wants to be helped). Simple past: *Hy wou gehelp word* and *Hy wou gehelp wees* (He wanted to be helped). Past perfect: *Hy wou gehelp geword het* and *Hy wou gehelp gewees het* (He wanted to have been helped—although this seldom occurs).

Just as in the active voice *sou* can also be coupled with other auxiliaries in the passive voice of the subjunctive mood (see above).

### Vocabulary

*laat 'regmaak*, have repaired; from *'regmaak*, (*regge-*), repair. *masjinis*, *masji'nas*, (-*te*), engine-driver, driver of a locomotive; from *ma'sjien*, n., machine, with shift of stress. *ek sou graag wil weet*, I should like to know.

*diri'gent*, conductor of an orchestra; from *diri'geer*, v., (—, *ge-*), conduct an orchestra.

*'sulke*, attr. a., such.

*korrespon'densie*, correspondence (letters).

*kon'sert*, n., concert.

*ver'koue*, n., a cold (illness); *ek het verkoue* (note, no indefinite article), I have a cold; *hy vat verkoue* or *hy kry verkoue*, he catches a cold.

*ver'lof*, permission; *verlof vra* or *om verlof vra*, ask for permission, ask permission.

*onder gewone om'standighede*, under ordinary circumstances.

*perso'neellid*, (-*lede*), staff member, from *perso'neel*, staff, and *lid*, member.

*af'wesig*, absent; opposite of *aan'wesig*, a., present.

*'wegbly*, (*wegge-*), stay away.

*burge'meester*, mayor.

*'stadsklerk*, town clerk.

*'poskantoor*, post office.

*bal'kon*, balcony.

*onder'weg*, on the road.

*ver'traag*, tr. v., delay something.

### Exercise 20. Translate into English:

Hy sou die rekening betaal het as hy kon. Hy kon dalk nie die motorkar betyds laat regmaak nie. Die masjinis van die lokomotief kon in die mis miskien nie die sinjaal sien nie. Was die dokter tog maar hier! Die dokter sou haar moontlik kon gehelp het, maar hulle het hom te laat ingeroep. Die man weet glo nie van sy seun se slegte gedrag nie; anders sou hy hom moet straf. Hy behoort hom darem te skaam. Jy hoef nie voor twee-uur terug te wees nie. Dit sal nie vir jou nodig wees om die rekenmeester se werk te kontroleer nie; ek sal dit self doen. Ek wil hê u moet die dame dadelik help. Sal u haar asseblief help? Ek sou haar stellig kan help, maar dalk wil sy nie gehelp word nie. Gelukkig het die spreker opgedaag; anders sou ek moes gepraat het. Ek sou graag wil weet wie die nuwe dirigent is. Kan u my dalk sê? Hy sou my mos gesê het as hy kon. Die see en die berge kan deur die groot venster gesien word. Daar mag nie in die fabriek gerook word nie. Ek het gemeen hy sou nog kom, maar ek vrees dit is nou te laat.

*Exercise 20a. Translate into Afrikaans :*

He would have come if he could. We could have helped them, but they did not want to be helped. May he come soon! I may still go to the coast during the holidays (in the sense: It is possible that I shall . . .). It was not necessary to write such a long report. He should have replied to this letter. Now I shall have to do it myself. Such correspondence must be replied to immediately. The other work need not be done before next week. She wanted to go to the concert tonight, but she has a cold. She ought not to go out at all at night (use: *saans*). They would be allowed (use: *sou mag*) to go, but they did not ask for permission. Under ordinary circumstances you (use: *u*) would not be required to do this work, but there are too many staff members absent, and I must ask you to do it. Will you undertake it please? Probably he will not want to come. Presumably he is ill. She simply stayed away. Will you (use *u*) please invite the Mayor and the Town Clerk? Could you (use *u*) please show me the way to the Post Office? The King and the Queen could be seen on the balcony. I wish he were here, but I suppose he was been delayed on the way.

## CHAPTER XXIX.

ELLIPTICAL USE OF AUXILIARY VERBS;  
RELATIVE PRONOUNS AND SUBORDINATE  
CLAUSES; SEQUENCE OF WORDS IN  
SUBORDINATE CLAUSES; SPECIAL CASES  
OF SEQUENCE OF WORDS

*Elliptical Use of Auxiliary Verbs*

In spoken English a question is sometimes asked by making a statement and following it up by a question in which only the auxiliary verb and a pronoun are repeated, by means of which confirmation of the statement is sought. If the statement is positive, the question in English is negative. E.g. "He is leaving tonight, isn't he?" In Afrikaans the auxiliary is not repeated; the question can be asked by using *nè?* (isn't it, he or she?, not so?, yes?, don't you?, doesn't he?, aren't they?, etc.), the phrase *nie waar nie?* (isn't that so?, is it not true?, lit. not true?), or the phrase *dan nie?* (isn't it so, lit. then not?). In the statement the word *tog* is often inserted, a word that has several meanings (see Chap. XXVIII), and can here be translated as "surely", "after all" or "still"—or just rendered by an extra emphasis in English. E.g. *Hy vertrek tog vanaand, nie waar nie?* (He is leaving tonight, isn't he?).

If the statement is negative, the question in English is positive. E.g. "He isn't leaving tonight, is he?" In Afrikaans the question can be asked by using *nè?* or the phrase *of hoe?* (lit. or how?). E.g. *Hy vertrek tog nie vanaand nie, of hoe?*

In English, auxiliary verbs are often used elliptically in comments and replies. In some cases this is possible also in Afrikaans. Where the imperative "Don't" is used in English, one can use *Moenie!* in Afrikaans. E.g. *Moenie! Jy sal die kind laat val!* (Don't! You will drop the child!; *laat val*, tr. v., drop, lit. let fall). Usually, however, various other constructions are used in Afrikaans. Here are some examples. Note the use of *tog* and *ook* (also, as well, too, even).

*Hy het 'n goeie betrekking.—Dit kan jy glo! or Al te seker!*

(He has a good position.—He certainly has!; *be'trekking*, post, situation, position, from *betrek*, v., take possession of).

*Sal jy aan my skryf?*—*Ja, met ple'sier* (Will you write to me?—Yes, I shall; lit. Yes, with pleasure).

*Sal ek gaan koffie maak?*—*Ja, asseblief tog* (Shall I go and make coffee?—Yes, please do).

*Ek het gehoop hy sou my telefoneer, en hy hèt ook* (I hoped, or had hoped that he would telephone me, and he did).

*Jan het 'n nuwe fiets, en sy broer ook.* (Jan has a new bicycle, and so has his brother, lit. and his brother also; a bicycle is also called a 'rywiél, lit. a riding wheel, and "to cycle" is *om te fiets* (*fiets* also occurs as verb) or *om fiets te ry*).

*Ek het geen geld nie, en my vrou ook nie.* (I have no money, and neither has my wife, lit. and my wife also not).

*Hy is baie siek.—Inderdaad? or So?* (He is very ill.—Is he really?; note *inder daad*, indeed, really).

*Hy sal julle om twaalfuur kom haal.—So? Uitstekend!* (He will come to fetch you at twelve o'clock.—Will he? Excellent!; note *uitstekend*, *oeyt' ste:kant*, excellent, splendid, lit. outsticking, from *'uitsteek*, (*uitge-*), stick out, project).

*Ek sal hom probeer help.—Ja, toe tog, asseblief!* (I shall try to help him. Yes, please do!)

#### Relative Pronouns

In Afrikaans the most common relative pronouns are the following. The student will note the correspondence with the interrogative forms (see Chap. XXI).

*wat*. This is used to render the Eng. "who" (relating to persons), the Eng. "which" (relating to things), or the Eng. "that" (relating to persons and things), and also sometimes the Eng. "whom" (see below). E.g. *Die man wat daar loop, is my oom* (The man who is walking over there is my uncle; for the sequence of words, see below). *Die motorkar wat ek gekoop het, is nuut* (The motor-car which I bought is new). It is important to remember that Afrikaans here makes no difference between persons and things: to both reference is made by *wat*; the use of "that" in English is comparable to that of *wat*.

*wie se*. This is used to render the Eng. "whose" (relating to persons). E.g. *Die man wie se boek ek geleen het, is 'n vriend van*

*my* (The man whose book I borrowed is a friend of mine).

*met wie, van wie*, etc. These are used to render Eng. "with whom", "of whom", etc. *Wie* is, therefore, the form used after prepositions. E.g. *Die vrou van wie ek jou vertel het, het vannôre aangekom* (The woman of whom I told you arrived this morning).

*waarvan, waarmee*, etc. These are used to render Eng. "of which", "with which", etc. Please refer to the interrogative pronouns, dealt with in Chap. XXI. Here also a preposition plus *wat* (referring to a thing) becomes *waar* plus the preposition, written as one word. E.g. *deur* plus *wat* becomes *waardeur* (through which, by which). Note also that *met* plus *wat* becomes *waarmee*, *tot* plus *wat* becomes *waartoe*, and *vir* plus *wat* becomes *waarvoor*. Hence: *Dit is die boek waarvan ek jou vertel het* (This is the book of which I told you). Note: *waarom* means both "about which" and "why".

*Wat* is sometimes used to render the Eng. "whom" where the "whom" is the object of the subordinate clause. E.g. *Die man wat ek gesien het, is die bestuurder* (The man whom I saw is the manager). This can easily be distinguished from *Die man wat my gesien het, is die bestuurder* (The man who saw me is the manager). The distinction is made possible by the existence of the two forms, *ek* and *my*. In the case of nouns which have no similar forms, ambiguity can arise. The sentence *Die man wat Jan gesien het, is die bestuurder* can mean either "The man who saw Jan is the manager" or "The man whom Jan saw is the manager". To avoid ambiguity in Afrikaans one has to make use of other constructions, e.g. *Die man vir wie Jan gesien het, is die bestuurder* (The man whom Jan saw . . .), and *Die man wat vir Jan gesien het, is die bestuurder* (The man who saw Jan . . .) These constructions are made possible by the existence of the phrase *sien vir*, tr. v., see, containing a preposition, after which *wie*, not *wat*, is used.

The relative pronoun is never omitted in Afrikaans. E.g. *'n Man wat ek ontmoet het, het my gehelp* (A man I met helped me). *Die kind van wie jy gepraat het, is weer gesond* (The child you spoke of is well again).

"Who" and "what" can be used as independent relatives, i.e. relatives without antecedents. The corresponding forms in Afrikaans are *wie* and *wat*. Often the words *ook al* are added

to indicate that the relative pronoun is being used in an independent manner. E.g. *Wie nie wil hoor nie, moet voel* (Who, or Whoever does not want to listen, must feel—said of disobedient children who will not listen and must receive a hiding). *Wat hy vertel, is nie belangrik nie* (What he relates is not important). *Wie ook al hom gehelp het, het 'n fout begaan* (Whoever helped him made a mistake; note 'n fout begaan, make a mistake).

#### Sequence of Words in Subordinate Clauses

The student will have noticed that the sequence of words in a subordinate clause differs from that in a principal clause. We summarise the rules for the active voice first.

1. In the present tense the verb of the subordinate clause goes to the end of the subordinate clause. Take the two sentences: *Die man is my oom* and *Die man loop*. If we make a complex sentence of them, containing the second sentence as a subordinate clause, the verb *loop* goes to the end of the subordinate clause, after the extension *daar*. Therefore: *Die man wat daar loop, is my oom* (The man who walks over there is my uncle). As mentioned in Chap. XIV, a separable compound verb in a subordinate clause (simple present tense) remains unseparated and is not inverted. E.g. *Die man bly weg*. *Hy sal nie betaal word nie*. Joined, these sentences become: *Die man wat wegbly, sal nie betaal word nie* (The man who stays away will not be paid).

2. In the past tense the *het* is placed after the main verb, and both go to the end of the subordinate clause. E.g. If we join the following two sentences into a complex sentence; *Die motorkar is nuut* and *Ek het die motorkar gister gekoop*, we have: *Die motorkar wat ek gister gekoop het, is nuut* (The motor-car which I bought yesterday is new).

3. In the future tense the *sal*, followed by the main verb, goes to the end of the subordinate clause. E.g. If we join the following sentences into a complex sentence: *Die brief is vandag gepos* and *Jy sal die brief môre ontvang*, we have: *Die brief wat jy môre sal ontvang, is vandag gepos* (The letter which you will receive tomorrow was, or has been, posted today).

4. If there are more auxiliaries than one in the subordinate clause, they similarly go to the end of the clause. E.g. If we

join the following two sentences: *Ek sal aan 'n vriend skryf* and *Hy sal my die boek kan leen*, into a complex sentence, we have: *Ek sal aan 'n vriend skryf wat my die boek sal kan leen* (I shall write to a friend who will be able to lend me the book).

And now the rules for the passive voice. If the verb in the subordinate clause is in the passive voice, the changes in the sequence of words are similar, but not identical, to those mentioned above.

1. In the present tense the *word* is placed after the main verb, and both go to the end of the clause. E.g. If we join the sentences *Dit is my oom* and *Die man word môre per trein verwag* into a complex sentence, we have: *Die man wat môre per trein verwag word, is my oom* (The man who is expected by train tomorrow is my uncle).

2. In the past tense the *is* is placed after the main verb, and both go to the end of the clause. E.g. If we join the sentences: *Die brief word vandag eers gepos* (*eers* here means "only", "not before") and *Die brief is gisteraand geskryf* into a complex sentence, we have: *Die brief wat gisteraand geskryf is, word vandag eers gepos* (The letter which was written last night is only being posted today). The same happens with the past perfect (pluperfect): the *was* is placed after the main verb, and both go to the end of the clause. E.g. *Die brief het gister eers aangekom* and *Die brief was verlede week al klaar geskryf*. Complex sentence: *Die brief wat verlede week al klaar geskryf was, het gister eers aangekom* (The letter which had already been written last week arrived only yesterday; note in *klaar skryf*, finish writing, *klaar* is actually an adverb, hence the phrase is lit. more or less "write to a finish").

3. In the future tense the *sal* is placed between the main verb and the *word*, and all three go to the end of the clause. E.g. *Die brief sal baie lank wees* and *Die brief sal môre geskryf word*. Complex sentence: *Die brief wat môre geskryf sal word, sal baie lank wees* (The letter which will be written tomorrow will be very long).

We have been taking only adjectival clauses so far, but the same rules apply to adverbial clauses and to noun clauses using the conjunction *dat* (that). Here are some examples:

If we join the sentences: *Ek sal met die man praat* and *Ek sien hom op die vergadering*, with *wanneer* (when), we have:

*Ek sal met die man praat wanneer ek hom op die vergadering sien* (I shall talk to the man when I see him at the meeting). If we join the sentences: *Hy het die vraag gevra* and *Hy stel belang, with omdat* (because), we have: *Hy het die vraag gevra omdat hy belang stel* (He asked the question because he is interested; *vraag*, n., (*vrae*), question, query, request, demand, from *vra*, v., ask; *belang stel*, v., be interested).

If we join the sentences: *Ek sal hom vertel* and *Jy wil hom graag ontmoet*, with *dat*, we have: *Ek sal hom vertel dat jy hom graag wil ontmoet* (I shall tell him that you would like to meet him). As in English, this *dat* (that) may sometimes be dropped; in such cases the subordinate noun clause retains the word sequence of the simple sentence or the principal clause. E.g. *Ek sal hom vertel jy wil hom graag ontmoet* (I shall tell him you would like to meet him; note *wil graag*, v., would like to). In former exercises subordinate clauses of this type only were introduced, in order not to confuse the student.

#### *Special Cases of Sequence of Words*

In a few cases the subordinate clause has a special sequence of words. One has been mentioned above, i.e. a subordinate noun clause, object of a verb in the principal clause, where the noun clause is not introduced by *dat*, and has the same sequence of words as a simple sentence or a principal clause.

Another case is a subordinate adverbial clause of concession, introduced by *al* (although, even if), or *sels al* (even if). Here the subordinate clause has the sequence of words of a simple sentence beginning with an extension, i.e. the verb (or first auxiliary) follows immediately on the *al*, or *sels al*, and is followed by the subject. E.g. *Hy skryf gereëld* and *Hy het baie min tyd*. Complex sentence: *Hy skryf gereëld, al het hy baie min tyd* (He writes regularly, although he has very little time). *Hy sal vir ons kom kuier* and *Hy voel baie moeg*. Complex sentence: *Hy sal vir ons kom kuier, sels al voel hy baie moeg* (He will come to visit us, even if (or even although) he feels very tired).

When the adverbial clause of concession is introduced by other words meaning "although", like *hoe'veel* or *alhoë'veel*, the sequence of words follows the normal rules for subordinate clauses. E.g. *Hy skryf gereëld alhoewel hy baie min tyd het*. *Hy sal vir ons kom kuier hoewel hy baie moeg voel*.

#### *Vocabulary*

- '*straalmotor*, jet motor, from *straal*, n., stream, jet, ray (of light), v., radiate, and *motor*, motor.  
*hoe laat*, when, at what time, lit. how late.  
*hoof-assistent*, chief assistant, from *hoof*, chief, head, and *assis'tent*, assistant.  
'*eikehout*, oak (wood).  
*pro'bleem*, problem.  
*be'ampte*, n., official.  
*ver'meld*, v., mention.  
*vertrek uit die land*, leave the country, lit. depart out of the country.  
'*eerlik*, honest(ly), from *eer*, n., and v., honour.  
'*vulpen*, fountain-pen, from *pen* and *vul*, v., fill.  
*goud*, n., gold; a., (*goue*), gold, golden.  
'*penpunt*, n., nib, lit. pen-point.  
'*regtig*, really, truly, indeed.  
*as'of*, as if.  
*fonds*, n., fund (money).  
'*bydra*, (*byge-*), contribute.  
'*voetstuk*, pedestal.  
*waarop*, on which, whereon.  
*gra'niet*, granite.  
*appli'kant*, applicant.  
'*onderhoud*, n., interview.  
'*digter*, poet, from *dig*, v., write poetry.  
'*veilig*, safe(ly).  
*toe*, a., closed.

#### *Exercise 21. Translate into English:*

Die man wat die straalmotor uitgevind het, het ryk geword. Die fiets wat jy gister gekoop het, is splinternuut, nie waar nie? Die dame met wie jy netnou gepraat het, was tog nie mevrou Botha nie, of hoe? Ons sal vertrek sodra die reën ophou. Ek het gestaan waar Rhodes begrawe is. Die arm seun het brood gesteel omdat hy honger was. Die tikster weet wat met die briewe gedoen moet word. Die boek waarvan ek jou vertel het, is deur C.M. van den Heever geskryf. Die meisie wat deur jou aanbeveel is, sal aangestel word in die betrekking. Hy het goed geluister sodat hy alles kon onthou. Ons moet

regs draai waar die pad by die heuvel doodloop. Hy weet wanneer ons aangekom het. Ek wil weet hoe laat julle in die stad sal wees. Ons sal bly wees as ons die ryk man kan ontmoet. Hy het gereëld geskryf, al het hy baie min tyd gehad. Hulle sal die werk voltooi, alhoewel die beskikbare tyd baie kort is. Ek weet hy sal môre-aand opdaag. Ek weet dat sy môre-aand sal opdaag. Die plaas wat deur hom gekoop sal word, lê in Natal. Die masjien wat eergister reggemaak was, het gister weer gebreek. „Is hy 'n harde werker?“—„Dit kan jy glo!“ „Dit lyk asof jy die werk moeilik vind; sal ek jou help?“—„Ja, asseblief tog!“ Ek weet hy sal kom, alhoewel hy verkoue het. Die dame wat vir Piet gehelp het, was sy tante. Die dame vir wie Piet gehelp het, was sy tante.

*Exercise 21a. Translate into Afrikaans:*

The man who helps me is my chief assistant. One of the tables that were sold was made of oak, wasn't it? The problem, which is being investigated only now, is very serious. The official whom you mentioned was the Town Clerk, wasn't he? The lady whose house will be sold next week has already left the country. I know I can trust him because he is honest. The child to whom you (use *u*) spoke is my son. The fountain-pen with which you (use *jy*) are writing has a gold nib, hasn't it? The purpose for which I shall use it is to write letters. He really looked as if he were very ill. The fund to which we subscribed will not be used for a statue, will it? The pedestal on which the statue will stand will be of granite. The applicant of whom I told you (use *u*) has come for an interview. I shall tell you (sing. informal) the whole story when I return from my holidays. You (use *u*) must please warn me when the train arrives. I saw the house where the great poet was born. What I heard there surprised me. The letters that had been written by him could not be found. Whoever is not in time will get no food. (If he has trouble with the negatives in these last two sentences, the student should consult the next chapter.) I know he will come, although (use *al*) he has a cold. They decided to travel by (use *per*) motor-car, although (use *alhoewel*) the roads were wet and dangerous. I hoped that he would arrive in time, and he did. "She was too ill to come."—"Was she really?" They will feel safe if the door is closed.

CHAPTER XXX.

THE COMPLEX SENTENCE—INVERTED SEQUENCE OF WORDS, AND A SPECIAL CASE; SEQUENCE OF WORDS IN DIRECT SPEECH; NEGATIVES IN COMPLEX SENTENCES; INTERJECTIONS

*The Complex Sentence—Inverted Sequence of Words*

Very often a complex sentence does not begin with the principal clause. This gives rise to changes in the sequence of words in the principal clause, the changes being the same as the inversion of words in simple sentences when they begin with an extension (see Chap. XXII). This means that the verb (or first auxiliary) and the subject of the principal clause are inverted, and the principal clause begins with its verb (or first auxiliary). The sequence of words in the subordinate clause remains unaltered.

Take, for example, the sentence: *Hy lees die koerant 'voordat hy na sy kantoor gaan* (He reads the newspaper before he goes to his office). If this sentence starts with the subordinate clause, the *hy* and the *lees* are inverted: *Voordat hy na sy kantoor gaan, lees hy die koerant* (Before he goes to his office he reads the newspaper).

This kind of complex sentence structure (with the subordinate clause introducing the sentence) occurs very frequently when the complex sentence contains a subordinate adverbial clause of time, condition, place, etc., or a noun clause. Here are two more examples. If the sentence: *Sy het die boek gelees toe sy met vakansie aan die kus was* (She read the book when she was on holiday at the coast) is re-written with the subordinate clause first, we have: *Toe sy met vakansie aan die kus was, het sy die boek gelees* (When she was on holiday at the coast, she read the book). If the sentence: *Ek sal met die man praat wanneer ek hom op die vergadering sien* (I shall speak to the man when I see him at the meeting) is similarly re-written, we have: *Wanneer ek hom op die vergadering sien, sal ek met die man praat* (When I see him at the meeting, I shall speak to the man).



And now a few examples in the passive voice, first with the principal clause first, and then with the subordinate clause first in the complex sentence:

*Die huis word skoongemaak terwyl die mense met vakansie weg is* (The house is being cleaned while the people are away on holiday). *Terwyl die mense met vakansie weg is, word die huis skoongemaak* (While the people are away on holiday, the house is being cleaned).

*Hierdie leeu is geskiet toe ons in die Bosveld op jag was* (This lion was shot when we were hunting in the Bushveld. *Toe ons in die Bosveld op jag was, is hierdie leeu geskiet* (When we were hunting in the Bushveld this lion was shot; *jag*, n., hunt, *op jag*, a-hunting, *op jag wees*, v., be hunting).

*Die verslag sal geskryf word sodra die speurders hulle ondersoek voltooi het* (The report will be written as soon as the detectives have completed their investigation). *Sodra die speurders hulle ondersoek voltooi het, sal die verslag geskryf word* (As soon as the detectives have completed their investigation the report will be written; 'speurder, detective, from *speur*, v., notice, detect, trail, track; cf. *bespeur*, v., observe, perceive, notice, discover).

A few temporal conjunctives are formed, like 'voordat (before), by adding *-dat* to an adverb. E.g. 'noudat (now that, now), 'nadat (after).

#### *A Special Case of Sequence of Words in Complex Sentences, beginning with the Subordinate Clause*

When the introductory subordinate clause, standing first in the complex sentence, is an adverbial clause of indefinite concession, the principal clause retains its normal sequence of words. This occurs, for instance, when the subordinate clause (introducing the complex sentence) begins with *hoe* (however) or *wie* (whoever), or their extended forms: *hoe . . . ook al*, and *wie . . . ook al*. If the sentence: *Hy is nie 'n goeie mens nie, hoe slim hy ook al mag wees*, is inverted, we have: *Hoe slim hy ook al mag wees, hy is nie 'n goeie mens nie* (However clever he may be, he is not a good person, or human being). If the sentence: *Dit bly 'n onwaarheid, wie dit ook al gesê het*, is inverted, we have: *Wie dit ook al gesê het, dit bly 'n onwaarheid* (Whoever said it, it remains an untruth).

#### *Sequence of Words in Direct Speech*

If the introductory clause indicating the speaker (i.e. the principal clause) comes first, it has the normal sequence of words. E.g. *Die onderwyser sê*: „*Jannie het sy les goed geleer.*” (The teacher says: “Jannie has learnt his lesson well.”) If the principal clause comes in the middle or at the end of the sentence, it has the inverted sequence of words (as also sometimes in English). E.g. „*Jannie,*” *het die onderwyser gesê*, „*het die les goed geleer.*” (“Jannie,” said the teacher, “has learnt the lesson well.”) „*Jannie het die les goed geleer,*” *het die onderwyser gesê.* (“Jannie has learnt the lesson well,” said the teacher).

#### *Negatives in Complex Sentences*

A few simple examples of negatives have already been introduced into Exercises 21 and 21a. Here we have to go more fully into the use of negatives in complex sentences. For purposes of this explanation, complex sentences have to be divided into two groups:

1. Those where the principal clause and the subordinate clause are loosely joined, and the principal clause could stand alone. E.g. *Hy het kom werk, alhoewel hy siek was* (He came to work, although he was ill). If only the principal clause is made negative, it contains two *nie*'s: *Hy het nie kom werk nie, alhoewel hy gesond was* (He did not come to work, although he was well). If only the subordinate clause is made negative, it contains two *nie*'s: *Hy het kom werk, alhoewel hy nie gesond was nie* (He came to work, although he was not well). If both principal clause and subordinate clause are made negative, there are four *nie*'s: *Hy het nie kom werk nie, omdat hy nie gesond was nie* (He did not come to work, because he was not well).

These rules apply only to sentences that take two negatives. If the complex sentence is made up of sentences that take only one negative (see Chap. XIX), the number of negatives is diminished. E.g. *Hy werk nie, alhoewel hy gesond is* (He does not work, although he is well).

2. Those where the principal clause and the subordinate clause are closely linked and the principal clause cannot stand alone. E.g. *Hy het gesê dat hy siek is* (He said that he was ill, lit. is ill). If only the principal clause is made negative, there

are two *nie*'s, one in the principal clause and one at the end of the subordinate clause: *Hy het nie gesê dat hy siek is nie* (He did not say that he was ill). If only the subordinate clause is made negative, there are two *nie*'s, both in the subordinate clause: *Hy het gesê dat hy nie siek is nie* (He said that he was not ill). If both the principal clause and the subordinate clause are made negative, there are three *nie*'s, one in the principal clause, and two in the subordinate clause: *Hy het nie gesê dat hy nie siek is nie* (He did not say that he was not ill). In such a case the third *nie* serves as final or concluding *nie* for both the first and the second *nie*. The final negative is always *nie*; the initial negative can be some other negative word like *nooit* (never), *niemand* (no-one), etc.

Here also the number of negatives can be diminished if one of the clauses comes from a sentence that normally would take only one negative in the negative form. E.g. *Hy sê sy skryf nooit (nie)* (He says she never writes).

#### Interjections

Some interjections have already been mentioned. Here are a few more of the common interjections, with indications of situations in which they are used:

*'Eina*, (Oh!, Ow!), used when one has been hurt physically and feels sudden pain.

*'Foei tog!*, (What a pity!), used to express sympathy with one who has been hurt or who has suffered, especially a child.

*Sjuut!* or *Sjt!* (Hush!) used in admonishing someone to keep quiet.

*Soe!* (Ugh! or Brr!), used to indicate that one finds something (e.g. water or the weather) extremely hot (Ugh!) or cold (Brr!).

*'Hokaai!*, (Halt there!, Whoa!) used when calling horses, oxen or cattle to stand still.

*A ja a!*, (Certainly!, To be sure!, Decidedly!).

*A nee a!*, (Of course not!, Oh no!, By no means!, Not at all!).

*Ja-nee*, (Sure!, That's a fact!).

Various other interjections are common to the two languages, e.g. *O!*, (*O!* or *Oh!*); and *A!*, (*A!* or *Ah!*).

#### Vocabulary

*sou graag wil*, would (very much) like to.

*'kunstenaar*, (-s, -nare), artist, from *kuns*, **koens**, art.

*'uitnodiging*, (-s, -e), invitation, from *'uitnoot*, (*uitge-*), invite. *gaan staan*, come to a stop.

*nie meer nie*, no longer, no more.

*om verskoning vra*, apologise, lit. ask pardon; from *ver'skoning*, n., excuse, from *ver'skoon*, v., excuse, pardon; cf. *ver'skoon my!* or *ekskuus!*, pardon me!

*'onlangs*, recent(ly).

*'droogdok*, dry-dock, from *droog*, a., (*droë*), dry, and *dok*, n., dock.

*'heelmaak*, (*heelge-*), repair, lit. make whole.

*'aansteek*, v., (*aange-*), light; infect, catch infection; pin on.

*her'stel*, v., repair, restore; recover, get well.

*her'vat*, v., resume.

*Ek wil graag hê jy moet . . .*, I should like you to . . .

*on'llig*, unwilling(ly); opposite of *ge'llig*, willing.

*van die begin af*, from the beginning, from the start.

*kom by die rivier*, reach or arrive at the river; cf. *'bykom*, (*byge-*), reach, get at, get hold of, come to, recover consciousness.

*be'voeg*, a., (*-de*), capable.

*ver'pleegster*, n., female nurse, from *ver'pleeg*, v., nurse; the mas. form is *ver'pleër*, male nurse.

#### Exercise 22. Translate into English:

Terwyl die kinders buite speel, maak die moeder die huis skoon. Toe my broer verlede week hier was, het ons na die tentoonstelling gegaan. Wanneer die skip aankom, sal daar baie mense op die kaai wees. Voordat hy vertrek het, was die gebou al voltooi. Nadat die koor gesing het, is die monument deur die Burgemeester onthul. Terwyl die man wag, word sy motorfiets reggemaak. As daar in julle motorkar plek is, sou hy graag saam met julle wil ry. Nadat die orkes die eerste nommer gespeel het, sal 'n lied deur die beroemde tenoor gesing word. Dat hy 'n goeie kunstenaar is, weet ek reeds. Wie ook al dié ernstige fout begaan het, hy sal gestraf word. Alhoewel hy die uitnodiging aangeneem het, het hy nie opgedaag nie. Toe niemand dit verwag nie, het dit begin reën. Omdat

hy nie vriendelik was nie, het niemand van hom gehou nie. Ek weet nooit of hy sal kom nie. Ek weet dat sy nie sal skryf nie. Ek het nie geweet dat daar vandag geen treine sou loop nie. „Eina!” het hy uitgeroep, „jy maak my seer!” Toe ek die verhaal vertel had, het hy net gesê: „Ja-nee, elkeen het maar sy eie moeilikhede.” Sodra hy Hokaai! skree, gaan die perd staan. Wat hy ook al sê, ek glo hom nie meer nie. Tensy hy om verskoning vra, sal hy nie weer uitgenooi word nie.

*Exercise 22a. Translate into Afrikaans:*

When the mother cleans the house, the children have to play outside. Before the recent rains fell, we had very dry weather. After the new dry-dock had been built, the biggest ships could be repaired (use *heelmaak*) here. Before we return (use *terugkeer*) to the city, the building will have been completed. When it became dark, the lamps were lit. While the passengers wait, the bridge is being repaired (use *herstel*). As soon as the new plans arrive, the work will be resumed. If you are finished with your report, I should like you to help me. That he is an unwilling worker, was clear from the start. Where the road reaches the river, we have to turn left on this side of the bridge. However capable he may be, he is not reliable. He explained why he could not be present. He did not warn me that he would be absent. She did not say that she would not write. Because he did not do his work, he will not be paid. Unless he accepts my invitation, I shall not expect him. If he turns up without a ticket, he will not be allowed in the hall. “Brr! It is very cold today,” the girl complained. “Of course not!” the father said to the boy; “you cannot take the motor-car again tonight!” “Oh, what a pity!” said the nurse when she saw the child’s leg; “that wound must be very painful.”

CHAPTER XXXI.

COMPOUND SENTENCES—SEQUENCE OF WORDS AND NEGATIVES; RENDERING OF PARTICIPIAL PHRASES AND GERUNDS; THE VERBS *KEN* AND *WEET*

*Sequence of Words in Compound Sentences*

The first, i.e. the principal clause, of a compound sentence, unless it begins with an extension, has the normal sequence of words: the subject comes first and is followed by the verb (or first auxiliary). The co-ordinate clause that follows the principal clause has either the normal sequence of words or the inverted sequence of words (i.e. the verb, or first auxiliary, comes before the subject), depending on the particular conjunction used:

1. After the following conjunctions the sequence of words is normal: *en* (and), *maar* (but), *dog* (but, yet), *want* (for, because), *of . . . of* (either . . . or), and *nòg . . . nòg* (neither . . . nor).

2. After the following conjunctions the sequence of words is inverted: *tog* (yet), *'nietemin* (nevertheless), *'nogtans* (still, nevertheless), *dus* (therefore, hence), *'derhalwe* (therefore, hence, because of that), *'daarom* (therefore, for that reason, that is why), *ge'volglik* (consequently, from *ge'volg*, n., (-e), result, consequence, from *volg*, v., follow), *daaren'teë* (on the contrary), *anders* (otherwise).

Before we examine examples, a word about

*Negatives in Compound Sentences*

It will be noted that the negatives in the co-ordinate clauses of a compound sentence are used just as in simple sentences, i.e. each one carries its own set of double negatives, if it is a negative clause. E.g. *Hy sal nie wegbly nie want hy is nie siek nie* (He will not stay away for he is not ill). Of course, if the clause belongs to the group, discussed in the relative section of Chap. XIX, it contains only one negative. E.g. *Ek hoës nie want ek het nie verkoue nie* (I don't cough for I haven't a cold).

And now, the examples of normal and of inverted sequence of words :—

1. *Normal Sequence of Words* : *Ek het Jan gehelp en hy het my gehelp* (I helped Jan and he helped me). *Ons het hulle verwag maar hulle het nie gekom nie* (We expected them but they did not come). *Ek het hom gevra om saam met ons te gaan, dog hy wou nie* (I asked him to go with us, but he did not want to). *Hy kon my nie help nie want hy het geen geld gehad nie* (He could not help me for he had no money). *Of Jan sal kom, of sy vrou sal aan ons 'n boodskap stuur* (Either Jan will come or his wife will send us a message).

2. *Inverted Sequence of Words in the Co-ordinate Clause* : *Jan was nie siek nie, tog het hy nie gekom nie* (Jan was not ill, yet he did not come). *Hulle woon baie ver van ons, nietemin het hulle ons kom besoek* (They live very far from us, nevertheless they came to visit us). *Ek weet die taak is moeilik, nogtans moet julle dit aanpak* (I know the task is difficult, nevertheless you must tackle it; 'aanpak, (aange-), catch hold of, tackle, undertake). *Hy was siek, dus kon hy nie kom nie* (He was ill, therefore he could not come). In this last sentence *derhalwe* or *daarom* could have been used instead of *dus*; the sequence of words would have been the same. *Hy was siek, gevolglik kon hy nie kom nie* (He was ill, consequently he could not come). *Jan het hard gewerk, daarenteë was Piet lui* (Jan worked hard, Peter, on the contrary, was lazy). *Julle moet nou kom, anders vertrek ek sonder julle* (You must come now, otherwise I am leaving without you).

It will help the student if he remembers that the co-ordinate clauses under 2. could be considered as separate simple sentences, each introduced by a word which could be looked upon as an extension: therefore the sentence following this word (see Chap. XXII) must have the inverted sequence of words.

#### *Rendering of Participial Phrases*

Revise the section of the participial phrase in Chap. XXII. It was noted there that the English participial phrase (with the present participle) can sometimes be rendered by a participial phrase in Afrikaans. Some English sentences, where such a phrase is used, cannot, however, be rendered in this manner

in Afrikaans, and then an adjectival or an adverbial clause or a prepositional phrase must be used. E.g. *Die man wat in die hoek gesit het, het ten laaste gepraat* (The man sitting in the corner spoke at last). *Omdat ons hom goed geken het, was ons nie bang nie* (Knowing him well, we were not afraid). *Toe hy haar sien struikel, het hy haar aan die arm geneem* (Seeing her stumbling, or Seeing her stumble, he took her by the arm; 'struikel, (ge-), stumble; note the preposition in *aan die arm*). *Terwyl hy na die radio geluister het, het hy 'n brief geskryf* (While listening to the radio he wrote a letter). *Met 'n glimlag het hy na my gekom* (Smiling, he came towards me).

The English participial phrase with the past participle, of the type "Although told to go away, he stayed", cannot be rendered by a past participle in Afrikaans. Afrikaans requires a subordinate clause: *Alhoewel aan hom gesê is dat hy moet weggaan, het hy gebly*. Likewise: *Toe hy gevra is om te praat, het hy geweier* (When asked to speak, he refused; 'weier, v., refuse).

For the rendering of the present participle in sentences like "I hear the man singing" see Chapters XXIV and XXV under the past tense constructions without *ge-*.

#### *Rendering of Gerunds*

In Afrikaans there are no gerunds, and the problem arises how English gerunds are to be rendered in Afrikaans. The English gerund can sometimes be rendered by the full infinitive or the bare infinitive in Afrikaans, as noted in Chap. XXV. E.g. *Om te loop is gesond* or *Loop is gesond* (Walking is healthy).

Sometimes, however, it is impossible to use the infinitive, and then other constructions are used in Afrikaans. Of these cases, we mention the gerund preceded by a possessive noun or pronoun (e.g. "John's coming", "her writing"), and the gerund preceded by a preposition (e.g. "on hearing", "after returning").

Such cases can be rendered in Afrikaans by using either (a) a dependent phrase or clause; or (b) an ordinary noun, equivalent to the gerund, e.g. *koms* (arrival, coming, advent, from *kom*, v., come); likewise *aankoms*, arrival; *ontvangs* (receipt, reception, act of receiving, from *ontvang*, v., receive); *skryfwerk* (writing, lit. written or writing work); or (c) a

different construction. Here are examples of the various types :

*Jan se koms was 'n verrassing* (Jan's coming was a surprise ; *ver'assing*, surprise, from *ver'ras*, v., surprise). *Die feit dat Jan so vroeg gekom het, was 'n verrassing* (Jan's coming so early was a surprise, lit. The fact that Jan came so early was a surprise). *Ek bewonder haar skryfwerk* (I admire her writing : *be'wonder*, v., admire, from *wonder*, n. and v., (*ge-*), wonder). *Dat hy eerste in die klas gekom het, was goeie nuus* (His coming first in class was good news ; note the use of the article *die*). *Toe ons die slegte nuus hoor, het ons geskrik* (On hearing the bad news we had a fright ; *skrik*, v., start, be frightened). *Nadat ons die briewe ontvang het, het ons huis toe gegaan* (After having received the letters we went home). *Na ontvangs van die telegram was ons minder besorg* (After receiving the telegram we were less anxious). *Dit help nie om te probeer nie* (It is no use trying). *Dit help niks om dit te sê nie* (It is no good (whatever) saying that). *Dit is onmoontlik om te sê of hy sal kom* (There is no saying whether he will come, lit. It is impossible to say whether he will come). *'n Mens kan nie weet wat sal gebeur nie* (There is no saying what will happen, lit. One cannot know what will happen.)

#### The verbs *ken* and *weet*

We have two verbs in Afrikaans meaning "know", viz. *ken* and *weet*. These cannot be used indiscriminately.

In sentences consisting of subject and verb only, we use *weet*. E.g. *Ek weet* (I know) ; *Sy het geweet* (She knew) ; *Ons sal weet* (We shall know).

In sentences consisting of subject, verb and direct object (not preceded by a preposition) we use *ken*. E.g. *Ek ken die man* (I know the man) ; *Hy ken die boek goed* (He knows the book well).

If the object is preceded by a preposition (or is compounded with a preposition as some of the pronouns are), or if the object consists of a noun clause, we use *weet*. E.g. *Ek weet van hom* (I know about him). *Ek weet daarvan* (I know about it). *Hy het geweet van die voorval* (He knew about the incident). *Ek weet dat hy siek was* (I know that he was ill). *Hy weet wat die boodskap beteken* (He knows what the message means ; *be'teken*, v., mean).

#### Vocabulary

*oën'skynlik*, apparently, seemingly, appearing to the eyes, from *oë*, eyes, pl. of *oog*, and *skyn*, v., appear, shine.

*'onbeleef*, a., (*-de*), impolite, adv., impolitely ; opposite of *be'leef*, a., (*-de*), polite, adv. politely.

*'krieketwedstryd*, cricket-match, from *'krieket*, cricket, *'wedstryd*, competition, match, *stryd*, n., fight, combat, battle, struggle.

*gou maak*, v., hurry, lit. make quick.

*ten 'gunste van*, in favour of, from *guns*, n., (*-te*), favour.

*be'reid*, prepared, ready, willing, from *be'rei*, v., prepare.

*'n 'poging 'aanwend*, make an effort ; *'aanwend*, (*aange-*), apply, employ, use.

*ver'keerskonstabel*, traffic constable, from *ver'keer*, n., traffic, intercourse, also v., (—), be (in a position), change ; *verkeer met*, associate with.

*ver'gasser*, carburettor, from *gas*, n., gas, lit. the thing that turns something into a gas ; *ver'gas*, v., vaporise ; also "treat", *vergas op*, treat to, allied to *gas*, n., guest.

*sterre'kundige*, astronomer, from *'sterrekunde*, astronomy, from *ster*, n., star.

*pla'neet*, planet.

*keer*, v., prevent, check ; stem, stop.

*'etlike*, several, some.

*'invloedryk*, influential, from *'invloed*, influence.

*raad*, board, council.

*be'spreking*, (*-s*, *-e*), discussion, from *be'spreek*, discuss.

*'uitstel*, (*uitge-*), postpone, defer, delay, put off.

*ver'meerder*, v., increase ; the opposite is *ver'minder*, v., decrease.

From these are derived the nouns *ver'meerdering*, increase, and *ver'minding*, decrease.

*be'vredigend*, satisfactory, satisfactorily, from *be'vredig*, v., satisfy, allied to *vrede*, peace.

*be'drieg*, deceive.

*onder'breek*, (*-s*, *-e*), interruption, from *onder'breek*, (—), interrupt, from *breek*, v., break.

*be'vat*, contain.

*dokument*, *doky'ment*, document.

*ar'gief*, archives; note that the Afr. word is in the singular; the pl. *argiewe* means more than one building or department, etc., where archives are kept.

'*n ontdekking doen*, make a discovery; *ont'dekking*, discovery, from *ont'dek*, discover.

*per'soonlik*, personal(ly).

*Exercise 23. Translate into English :*

Die motorkar is in die ongeluk beskadig maar die insittendes is nie beseer nie. Ek het hom vroeg geroep maar hy het nie opgestaan nie. Sy het nie na die ontvangs gegaan nie, want sy was nie uitgenooi nie. Hy het hom oënskynlik goed gedra en tog het ek hom nie vertrou nie. Sy was baie onbeleef, nogtans het ons haar probeer help. Hy het nie opgedaag nie, dus kon ek hom nie die boodskap gee nie. Hulle is nie uitgenooi nie, daarom het hulle nie gekom nie. Die planne het te veel foute bevat, derhalwe kon hulle nie goedgekeur word nie. Dit het die hele dag hard gereën, gevolglik moes die krieketwedstryd gekanselleer word. Julle moet gou maak, anders sal ons laat wees. Die jong prokureur was ten gunste van die voorstel, daarenteë was sy ouer vennoot daarteen gekant. Nadat ek die saak met hom oor die telefoon bespreek het (use the participial phrase: "After having discussed . . ."), dink ek nie dit is nodig om 'n brief te skryf nie. Omdat ek weet dat hy 'n betroubare werker is (use participial phrase: "Knowing him to be . . ."), is ek bereid om sy aansoek aan te beveel. Alhoewel hy herhaaldelik gewaarsku is (use participial phrase: "Although warned . . .") het hy geen poging aangewend om sy werk te verbeter nie. Haar danswerk (use gerund: "dancing") in die ballet was uitstekend. Die mense wat in die voorste ry gesit het (use participial phrase: "sitting in . . ."), kon goed sien. Nadat hy haar gelukgewens het (use participial phrase: "After congratulating . . ."), het die impressario haar 'n nuwe kontrak aangebied. Dit help niks om met 'n verkeerskonstabel te argumenteer nie. Toe hulle die motorkar toets (use the gerund: "On testing . . ."), het hulle die fout in die vergasser ontdek.

*Exercise 23a. Translate into Afrikaans :*

He does not write often, but his letters are always interesting. The astronomer could observe the red planet clearly, for there

were no clouds in the sky. There is nothing preventing him (use: *wat hom keer*) and yet he stays away. It rained heavily that evening, nevertheless (use: *nogtans*) many people were present at the meeting. We are leaving at two o'clock and the journey takes three hours, therefore (use: *dus*) we shall arrive at five o'clock. There was an accident early this morning, that is why (use: *daarom*) all the trains are late today. Several influential members were opposed to the suggestion, hence (use: *derhalwe*) the board decided to postpone the discussion. He has neglected his work, consequently his salary will not be increased. When asked for an explanation (use: *Toe hy . . .*), he could not offer a satisfactory excuse. It is no use trying to deceive me. There have been too many interruptions, otherwise the work would have been finished yesterday. The letter containing the good news (use: *Die brief wat . . .*) arrived this morning. While examining the documents in the archives (use: *Terwyl hy . . .*) he made an important discovery. On arriving in the city (use: *Toe hy . . .*) he went to his hotel. There is no saying what he will reply (use: *antwoord*). I know him fairly well, but I know very little about his personal life. I know her, and I know that she can do the work. After painting the house (use: *Nadat hy . . .*) he cleaned the garden.

## CHAPTER XXXII.

## INFLECTED INFINITIVES; STRONG PAST PARTICIPLES.

*Inflected Infinitives*

Revise in Chap. XI, XIV and XXV the sections on infinitives. Among the interesting remnants of Dutch in Afrikaans we find a number of inflected infinitives. These can be divided into two groups:

1. In the first group all the infinitives have the *te* preceding the verb, and the inflection consists of an added *-e*. Here are some examples:

*Sy werk laat veel te wense oor* (His work leaves much to be desired; *te wense* from *wens*, v., wish; *'oorlaat*, (-oorge), leave over, leave).

*Dit is te hope dat sy werk sal verbeter* (It is to be hoped that his work will improve; *te hope* from *hoop*, v., hope).

*Sy gaan te kere soos 'n malmens* (She goes on, or storms like a lunatic; *te kere* from *keer*, v., turn; *'malmens* from *mal*, mad, insane).

*Die sukses is aan die organiseerder te danke* (The success is to be attributed to the organiser, or The organiser is to be thanked for the success; *te danke*, from *danke*, v., thank, is used only in a favourable sense).

*Die mislukking is te wyte aan slegte organisasie* (The failure is to be attributed to bad organisation; *te wyte*, from *wyt*, v., blame, impute, is used only in an unfavourable sense, hence one cannot say *Die sukses is te wyte aan . . .*, or *Die mislukking is te danke aan . . .*).

*Hy het my soveel te kenne gegee* (He gave me to understand as much; *te kenne* from *ken*, v., know; *te kenne gee*, intimate, signify, inform, give to understand).

*Ons is hulle vanaand te wagte* (We are expecting, lit. awaiting them this evening; *te wagte* from *wag*, v., wait). The *t* before the *-e* also comes from Dutch: it has disappeared in the ordinary forms of the verb, but reappears in the inflected infinitive, just as in the plural of the word *wag*, n., guard, *wagte*.

*Die boek is nêrens te vinde nie* (The book is nowhere to be found; *te vinde* from *vind*, v., find).

*Hy sal verslag moet gee van sy doen en late* (He will have to give an account of his doings, lit. his doings and leavings, i.e. the things done and the things left undone; *late*, n., from *laat*, v., leave, let be; the phrase *doen en late* has become a substantive idiom, and there is no preceding *te*).

2. The second group includes expressions where the bare infinitive retains a Dutch ending *-en*, and has an *-s* added. Here are some examples:

*Hy het dit willens en wetens gedoen* (He did it wilfully, or deliberately, lit. He did it willingly and knowingly; *'willens* from *wil*, v., will, want to; *'wetens* from *weet*, v., know).

*Sy het die verhaal tot vervelens toe herhaal* (She repeated the story ad nauseam, or to the stage of boredom; *tot ver'velens toe*, from *ver'veel*, v., tire, bore).

*Jy moet in jou pasoppens loop* (You must step warily, You must mind your p's and q's; *pas'oppens* from *'oppas*, (*opge-*), v., take care).

*Strong Past Participles*

Revise in Chap. XXIII the section on past participles. Although almost all the verbs that were strong verbs in Dutch have become weak verbs in Afrikaans, a number of strong past participles of such verbs have retained their strong forms in Afrikaans.

Sometimes their formation includes the customary change in vowel sound, or even in both vowel and consonant. E.g. *'aanneem*, (*aange-*), (adopt)—*'n aangenome kind* (an adopted child); *deur'dink*, (—), (consider carefully, lit. think through)—*'n deur'dagte plan* (a well thought out plan).

Sometimes, however, there is no vowel change. E.g. *'inhou*, (*inge-*), (check, restrain, hold back)—*met 'ingehoue tran* (with tears held back, or in check).

In some cases the original verb has died out, but the strong past participle remains in use. E.g. *vol'wasse mense* (adult or mature people); *'n vol'wassene* (an adult or mature person—a noun formed from the strong past participle); *oor'lede* (deceased); *die oor'ledene* (the one who has died, the deceased one); *in 'onomwonde taal* (in plain, frank, straightforward language,

without beating about the bush, lit. un-wound-about); 'n *gebore leier* (a born leader); 'n *vol'donge feit* (an accomplished fact).

Most frequently the strong past participles are used as attributive adjectives, and as such they are inflected, an *-e* or *-te* being added, as above. Some are used also as predicative adjectives, and even in this position they often retain the *-e* of the inflection, unlike most other adjectives. E.g. *krimp* (shrink)—'n *be'krompe persoon* (a narrow-minded person)—*dié persoon is bekrompe* (this person is narrow-minded); *suip* (drink heavily, drink like an animal)—*die besope man* (the drunken man)—*die man is besope* (the man is drunk). Some exceptions, however, occur, e.g. in forms taking *-te* after *-g*: *ver'dink* (suspect)—'n *verdagte persoon* (a suspected person, a suspect)—*Sy gedrag is verdag* (His behaviour is suspect or questionable; note also 'agterdog, suspicion, and agter'dogtig, suspicious, having a suspicious nature).

Some strong past participles are used as nouns (we have had a few examples above) or as adverbs. E.g. 'agterbly, (agterge-), (remain behind)—*die 'agtergeblewenes* (those who remained behind); *Ek het onomwonde met hom gepraat* (I spoke to him plainly, without mincing matters). Apart from the examples above we have already come across similar examples in *gevangene* (prisoner) and *verlate* (deserted).

The strong forms are often found in idiomatic expressions and in groups of related words, as will be seen from the following examples:

1. *Strong Past Participles with change in vowel sound (or vowel and consonant):*

'aanwys, (aange-), (indicate, show)—*die 'aangewese man* (the right man, the indicated man).

*be'derf* (go bad, spoil)—'n *be'dorwe kind* (a spoilt child); *bedorwe vrugte* (fruit gone bad).

*be'help*, refl. v., (manage, help yourself)—'onbeholpe (helpless, clumsy, awkward).

*be'trek* (be involved, take possession of)—*die be'trokke departe'ment* (the department concerned). Note how the past participle, used adjectivally, in English sometimes follows the noun; this hardly ever happens in Afrikaans.

*be'trek* (become overcast)—*be'trokke lug* (overcast sky).

*be'sin* (reflect, consider, think about)—'onbesonne (ill-considered, rash).

*be'weeg* (move)—*Hy is diep be'woë* (He is deeply moved).

*bind* (bind)—*ge'bonde* (bound, fettered, tied, restricted).

*doen* (do)—*ge'dane sake het geen keer nie* (things done cannot be undone, lit. turned or stopped).

*dwing* (compel)—*ge'dwonge* (compulsory).

*her'win* (win back, recover)—*her'wonne vryheid* (re-won freedom).

'inneem, (inge-), (take up, take in)—'ingenome met (taken up with, pleased with).

*kies* (choose)—'n *ge'kose komitee* (a chosen or select committee); *die 'uitverkore volk* (the chosen race).

*lê* (lie)—'afgeleë (distant, remote), 'vergeleë (far-off, distant, lit. lying far), 'verafgeleë (distant, far-off).

'opskiet, (opge-), (shoot up, grow)—'n *opgeskote seun* (a boy in the teens, a nearly full grown boy).

*ry* (ride)—*be'rede* (mounted).

*skep* (create)—'n *'welgeskape kind* (a child well-formed, well-made).

*sluit* (lock, close)—*agter ge'slote deure* (privately, in camera, lit. behind locked or closed doors).

*skryf* (write)—*die geskrewe taal* (the written language).

*spreek* (talk, speak)—*die gesproke woord* (the spoken word).

*sweer* (swear, take an oath)—'n *geswore vyand* (a sworn enemy).

'uitspreek, (uitge-), (pronounce)—*uitgesproke* (pronounced, clearly stated, outspoken).

*ver'berg* (hide)—*ver'borge skatte* (fær'borge, hidden treasure(s)).

*ver'bied* (forbid, prohibit)—*ver'bode* (forbidden, prohibited).

*ver'hef* (raise, elevate, exalt)—'n *ver'hewe posisie* (an exalted position).

*ver'slyt* (wear out)—*ver'slete* (threadbare, worn thin, worn out).

2. *Strong Past Participles without change in vowel sound:*

*gee* (give)—*op 'n ge'gewe oomblik* (at a given moment).

*lees* (read)—*be'lese* (well-read).

*sien* (see)—'n *gesiene man* (an esteemed, respected man).

*span* (strain, stretch)—*met ge'spanne 'aandag* (with rapt, close attention).

*ver'geet* (forget)—'langvergete dae (days long forgotten).

*ver'loor* (lose)—*verlore* (lost).



In some cases a weak past participle has arisen next to the strong form, and often the strong form then carries a figurative meaning and the weak form a literal meaning. Here are some examples:

'*aantrek*, (*aange-*), (attract; dress, put on clothes)—'*aange-trokke tot* (attracted to); '*aangetrek*, a., (*-te*), (dressed).

*breek* (break)—'*n gebroke hart* (a broken heart); '*n gebreekte been* (a broken leg).

*buig* (bend)—*met geboë hoof* (with head bent or bowed); '*n gebuigde stuk draad* (a bent piece of wire).

'*opwen*, (*opge-*), (wind up)—'*opgewonde* (excited); '*n opgewende oorlosie* (a watch wound up).

*skink* (pour)—*be'skonke* (drunken, drunk); '*n 'volgeskinkte koppie koffie* (a cup of coffee poured full).

*slyp* (sharpen)—*geslepe* (cunning); '*n geslypte mes* (a sharpened knife).

*be'spreek* (discuss, reserve, book)—'*onbesproke* (irreproachable); *be'spreekte sitplekke* (booked or reserved seats).

*koop* (buy)—'*duurgekogte vryheid* (dearly bought freedom, from *duur*, adv., dearly, expensively, a., (*-*, *dure*), dear, expensive); *gekoopte klere* (bought clothes).

*soek* (seek)—*gesog*, a., (*-te*), (in demand, much sought after; far-fetched); '*uitgesoekte blomme* (selected flowers).

*ver'skrik* (frighten)—'*n 'onverskrokke held* (a fearless hero); '*n ver'skrikte haas* (a frightened hare).

#### Vocabulary

'*n bietjie*, a little, slightly, somewhat.

*han'tering*, n., (*-s*, *-e*), handling, from *han'teer*, v., (*ge-*), handle. *mooi vra*, ask nicely, in a pleasant manner; *mooi* can often equal the colloquial "nice" or "nicely".

'*omspit*, (*omge-*), dig, dig up, turn over with spade, from *spit*, v., dig with spade.

*die hele dag*, all day, the whole day.

*by die huis kom*, arrive home.

*ge'sprek*, n., talk, conversation, from *spreek*, v., talk.

*van voor af*, from the front, from the start.

*graf*, n., (*-te*), grave, from *gra* or *grawe*, v., dig.

*ver'stand*, n., understanding, mind, intelligence, from *ver'staan*, v., understand.

'*instuur*, (*inge-*), send in, submit.

*ver'klaar*, declare, state.

'*werknemer*, employee, one who takes work; cf. '*werkgever*, employer, one who gives work.

'*onbevoeg*, (*-de*), incapable, incompetent, unfit; opposite of *be'voeg*, (*de-*), competent, capable.

*na'latigheid*, negligence, from '*nalaat*, (*nage-*), v., neglect.

*be'risping*, n., (*-e*, *-s*), reprimand, from *be'risp* or *be'rispe*, v., reprimand.

'*vriendelik*, adv., in a friendly manner.

'*eindig*, intr. v., end, finish.

*al'leen*, alone.

*draai na*, turn to.

'*dankie*, thank you, from *dank*, v., thank, and *u*, you.

*ver'betering*, (*-s*, *-e*), improvement, from *ver'beter*, improve.

'*toespraak*, (*toege-*), speak to, address; cf. '*toespraak*, n., speech, address.

*be'skawing*, (*-s*), civilisation, from *be'skaaf* or *be'skawe*, v., civilise; cf. *be'skaaf*, a., (*-de*), civilised, adv., in a civilised manner; from *skaaf* or *skawe*, v., plane, make smooth with a plane, and *skaaf*, v., (*skawe*), plane (carpenter's instrument).

*slot*, n., lock; cf. *sluit*, v., lock; '*sleutel*, n., key.

'*moordenaar*, murderer, from *moord*, n., murder; cf. *moord pleeg*, commit murder; *moor* and *ver'moor*, v., murder; *moor*, v., can also mean "maltreat", "overwork".

*in'hegtenisneming*, n., arrest, from *in'hegtenis neem*, v., arrest, take into custody; '*hegtenis*, custody, from *heg*, a., (*-te*), firm, solid, strong, v., fasten, attach, affix.

'*somelewing*, society, lit. living together, from *saam*, together, and *lewe*, v., live.

'*heroorweeg*, reconsider, from *oor'weeg*, v., consider, lit. weigh, or "overweigh".

*kolo'mis*, (*-te*), colonist.

*ver'dedig*, defend.

*Goewer'neur-Generaal*, Governor-General.

*be'klee*, occupy, hold.

#### Exercise 24. Translate into English:

Die moeder van twee opgeskote seuns het haar man te kenne gegee dat die kinders lui en ongehoorsaam was. Die vader was

'n bietjie agterdogtig. Hy wis die kinders was nie lui nie, maar sy vrou was effens onbeholpe in haar hantering van die seuns. Dalk was hulle swak gedrag te wyte aan die manier waarop sy met hulle gepraat het.

„Vertel my van hulle doen en late,” het hy gesê.

„Hulle gedrag laat veel te wense oor. Ek het hulle vanmôre mooi gevra om die groentetuin vandag om te spit. Dit was my uitgesproke wens. Hulle het dit willens en wetens veronagzaam, en die hele dag net gespeel.”

„Laat dit aan my oor.” het haar man geantwoord. „Ek sal na aandete met hulle praat.”

„Dis te hope dat hulle na jou sal luister.”

Daardie aand het hy na die seuns se slaapkamer gegaan en met hulle gepraat. Hulle het met gespanne aandag geluister.

Toe hy die volgende middag by die huis kom, sê sy vrou: „Kyk net, die hele tuin is omgespit! Is dit te danke aan jou gesprek met die seuns? Wat het jy gisteraand aan hulle gesê?”

„'n Mens moet altyd 'n goed deurdagte plan hê,” antwoord haar man. „Ek het hulle eenvoudig 'n spannende verhaal vertel van 'n verborge skat wat in 'n groentetuin begrawe was, en hulle beweeg om die werk te sien en 'n soektog na so 'n skat.”

In party lande bestaan daar gedwonge arbeid. Rook is verbode in die konsertsaal. Ons bespreekte sitplekke is in die sesde ry van voor af. Ek dink jy sal baie-ingenome wees met die nuwe ballet. Op 'n gegewe teken sal die gordyn opgaan. Ek is 'n goeie opvoering te wagte. Toe ek die volgende oggend opstaan, was die lug betrokke. In die vreemde stad het ek verlore gevoel. Omdat hy nie bekrompe was nie, was die mense aangetrokke tot hom. Met ingehoue trane en 'n gebroke hart het sy op die kaai gestaan en kyk na die vertrekkende skip. Om die graf van die oorledene het die agtergeblewenes met geboë hoofde gestaan. Die aangenome kind was 'n welgeskape dogter. Hy is 'n man van verstand en van onbesproke karakter. Hy is belese en sy geskrewe werk is uitstekend. Hy is die aangewese man vir hierdie verantwoordelike taak. Die man se aanstelling is 'n voldonge feit.

*Exercise 24a. Translate into Afrikaans:*

The manager was very angry when he discovered that several important letters were nowhere to be found. The head of the

department concerned, Mr. Venter, was asked to send in a written report. In it he stated that a new typist had wilfully and deliberately neglected certain important tasks, but that the letters had been found. The manager read the report and thought: 'Perhaps it was an ill-considered act to give such responsible work to a new employee. Although people usually say things done cannot be undone, something can be done here.' Then he sent for Mr. Venter to discuss the report.

“Were these tasks explained to her?” he asked.

“Oh yes!” replied Mr. Venter, “repeatedly.”

“Do you think then that she is incompetent?”

“No, not at all; but she behaves like a spoilt child.”

“Have you spoken to her about her negligence?”

“Yes, I have warned her ad nauseam. Perhaps a reprimand from you will . . . ?”

The manager sent for the typist. He spoke to her without mincing matters and yet in a friendly manner, and ended with: “You must try to behave like an adult person.”

She was deeply moved and sat there with bowed head. Then she apologised and promised that she would mind her p's and q's in future.

When they were alone again Mr. Venter turned to the manager.

“Thank you, sir,” he said. “I expect an improvement now.”

“If her work doesn't improve,” said the manager, “we shall dismiss her. I warn people only once.”

The children were very much excited when they heard that the fearless explorer would address them. They listened with rapt attention when he told them tales of far-off countries and long forgotten civilisations. The cunning thief opened the lock with a bent piece of wire. The mounted police at last caught the murderer. He stormed and raved like a lunatic but his arrest was an accomplished fact. He had always been a sworn enemy of the law and society. The select committee will reconsider the proposal in camera. The colonists defended their dearly bought freedom. The Governor-General occupies an exalted position. Since the advent of the radio the spoken word has become more important than before. The poor people wore threadbare clothes.

## FORMS OF ADDRESS; LETTERS

*Forms of Address*

The forms of formal address are: *Me'neer Smit* (Mr. Smit), *Me'vrouw Smit* (Mrs. Smit), and *Me'juffrou Smit* or *'Juffrou Smit* (Miss Smit). The abbreviations are *Mnr.*, *Mev.* or *Mevr.* and *Mej.* In addressing them one says *meneer*, *mevrouw* and *mejuffrou* or, more commonly, *juffrou*, and one uses the polite pronoun *u*. *Jy* and *jou* are reserved for intimate friends, equals and inferiors. *Meneer* is used for both "sir" and "Mr." in conversation.

When addressing a person one need not necessarily mention his or her name. E.g. in greeting a lady, one can say either *Goeiemôre juffrou* or *Goeiemôre, juffrou Smit* (Good morning, Miss Smit). A doctor is addressed as *Dokter* or *Dokter Smit*, and a minister of the church as *'Dominee* or *Dominee Smit*. The abbreviations are *Dr.* and *Ds.* In addressing a mixed audience one uses the form *Dames en here* (Ladies and Gentlemen).

*Some Points on Letters*

In the address, the number of the house in the street is placed after the name of the street. E.g.

*Mnr. W. J. Smit,*  
*Burgstraat 23,*  
*Kaapstad.*

Letters to friends can open with *Beste Jan* (Dear Jan, lit. Best Jan), or *Liewe Anna* (Dear Anna), and end with:

*Met beste groete,* (With kind regards (lit. greetings),  
*Van* From)

or *Met liefde en beste groete,* (With love and kind regards,  
*Van* From).

Formal and business letters can open in various ways. Here are a few: *'Waarde Heer* (Dear Sir, lit. Worthy Sir), *Waarde Here* (Dear Sirs), *Ge'agte mnr. Swart* (Dear Mr. Swart, lit.

esteemed or respected Mr. Swart), *Geagte Mevrouw* (Dear Madam—to a married woman), *Geagte Juffrou* (Dear Madam—to one unmarried), *Geagte mev. Swart* (Dear Mrs. Swart), *Geagte mej. Swart* (Dear Miss Swart). Various endings can also be used: *Die uwe* (Yours faithfully, lit. just "yours"; the "faithfully" is not translated), *Op'reg die uwe* (Yours sincerely), *Dienswillig die uwe* (Yours obediently; *'dienswillig* means "willing to serve", from *diens*, n., (-te), service), *Hoogagtend die uwe* (Yours respectfully; *'hoogagtend* means "esteeming highly", from *hoog*, high(ly), and *ag*, v., esteem).

*Vocabulary*

*'wolraad*, wool board, from *wol*, n., wool, and *raad*, board, council.  
*in staat wees*, be able, be in a position (to), from *staat*, n., state, position.

*opvoed'kundig*, educational, from *'opvoed*, (*opge-*), educate.

*er'varing*, n., experience, from *er'vaar*, v., experience.

*'aangeheg*, (-te), attached, from *'aanheg*, (*aange-*), attach.

*ge'waarmerk*, (-te), certified, from *'waarmerk*, (—), certify, hall-mark, authenticate.

*ge'tuigskrif*, (-te), testimonial, from *ge'tuig*, testify, and *skrif*, n., writing.

*'moedertaal*, mother tongue, from *moeder*, mother, and *taal*, language.

*'Engels*, English.

*'kennis*, knowledge, from *ken*, v., know.

*ten volle*, fully.

*Hoofweg*, Main Road.

*'boekhandel*, book-trade, bookseller's shop.

*be'perk* a., (-te), limited, also applying to companies, from *be'perk*, v., limit, restrict; the abbreviation in the names of companies is *Bpk.* (Ltd.).

*'posbus*, post office box, from *pos* and *bus*, n., box, tin canister, (omni)bus, bush (lining of axle-hole).

*Kaapstad*, Cape Town.

*per 'kerende pos*, by return post, from *keer*, v., turn, turn round.

*eksem'plaar*, n., copy.

*'woordeboek*, dictionary, lit. word-book.

*band*, volume (of books), from *bind*, v., bind; *band*, n., can also mean "band" (e.g. round hat), or "tyre" (of motor car);

cf. 'buiteband, tyre, lit. outside band, and 'binneband, tube (of motor-car wheel, e.g.), lit. inside band.  
 'poswissel, postal order, from *pos*, and 'wissel, n., bill of exchange, v., (ge-), exchange, interchange, give money for, cash.  
 'koopprys, purchase price.  
 'posgeld, postage (money).  
 'n studie maak van, v., study, make a study of.  
 'deurwerk, v., (deurge-), work through.  
 'aangesien, seeing that.  
 materi'aal, n., material.  
 'nodig hê, v., need.  
 'leesstof, reading matter, from *stof*, n., matter, dust.  
 ka'talogus, n., (-se), catalogue.  
 ge'skik, (-te), suitable.

*Exercise 25. Translate into English :*

Kerkstraat 24,  
 Pretoria.

7 Jun. 1954.

Die Bestuurder,  
 Die Suid-Afrikaanse Wolraad,  
 Posbus 492,  
 Pretoria.

Insake : Advertensie—Rekenmeester

Waarde Heer,

In vanaand se „Star” adverteer u 'n vakature vir 'n Rekenmeester in u organisasie. Hiermee wil ek graag aansoek doen om die pos.

Ek is vier-en-twintig jaar oud en ongetroud, en sal in staat wees om op 1 Augustus 1954 diens te aanvaar. Besonderhede van my opvoedkundige kwalifikasies en ervaring word verstrekk in die aangehegte lyste. Drie gewaarmerkte getuigskrifte word ook ingesluit. My moedertaal is Engels, maar ek het 'n goeie kennis van Afrikaans en kan as ten volle tweetalig beskou word.

Die geleentheid om verdere besonderhede in 'n persoonlike onderhoud te verstrek, sal waardeer word.

Hoogagtend die uwe,  
 W. Miller.

*Exercise 25a. Translate into Afrikaans :*

26 Main Road,  
 Clanwilliam.

12 Oct., 1954.

Nasionale Boekhandel, Beperk,  
 P.O. Box 12,  
 Parow,  
 Cape Town.

Dear Sirs,

Please send me by return post a copy of the “Tweetalige Woordeboek” by Bosman and Van der Merwe, in two volumes. A postal order for £2 2s. is enclosed to cover both the purchase price and the postage.

I am making a study of the Afrikaans language and have worked through “Teach Yourself Afrikaans”; and seeing that I now need material for further study, both exercises and reading matter, I should appreciate it if you could send me a catalogue of suitable books for this purpose.

Yours faithfully,

M. Smal.

*Vocabulary*

baie dankie, many thanks, thank you very much.  
 dit gaan goed met ons, we are keeping well, lit. it is going well with us.  
 hard 'besig, hard at work, lit. hard busy.  
 elke af en toe, every now and then.  
 vra na, enquire about.  
 'landbouskool, agricultural college, from 'landbou, agriculture, lit. land-building.  
 ma'triekklas, matriculation class, highest class in secondary school, from ma'triek or ma'trikulasie, matriculation.  
 ek hou my besig, I keep myself busy, I occupy myself.  
 ver'sorging, n., care, from ver'sorg, v., care for, look after, attend to, provide for.  
 'stokperdjie, hobby, from stok, n., stick, and perdjie, 'pɛ:rei, little horse, cf. hobby-horse.

*tuin maak*, n., gardening, lit. garden making.

*ek hou nog altyd van*, I am still fond of.

*veels geluk*!, hearty congratulations!, lit. much luck, happiness.

*ons 'almal*, all of us, lit. we all, or us all.

*op pad*, on its way, on my way, etc., lit. on (the) way; note that the definite article is not used in the Afrikaans expression.

*sê groete aan*, give (my or our) kind regards to.

*Exercise 26. Translate into English:*

Krugerlaan 19,  
Heidelberg,  
Transvaal.  
17 Apr. 1954.

Liewe Sannie,

Baie dankie vir jou brief van 8 April wat nou die dag hier aangekom het, en vir al die nuus van jou gesin. Jy skryf werklik 'n interessante brief, en ek het dit geniet om dit te lees.

Met ons gaan dit nog goed. Jan het tien dae vakansie en hy is hard besig om die deure en vensterrame van ons huis te skilder. Elke af en toe roep hy my om hom met iets te kom help.

Jy het gevra na die kinders. Willem is in die Landbouskool op Potchefstroom en voltooi sy kursus aan die einde van hierdie jaar. Dan gaan hy vir 'n jaar of twee op sy Oom Gert se plaas werk. Hy hoop om daarna sy eie plaas te koop met die geld wat sy ouma vir hom nagelaat het. Mona is in haar tweede jaar op die Universiteit van Pretoria; sy is van plan om onderwyseres te word. Marius is in die matriekklas hier op Heidelberg. As hy deur die eksamen kom, sal hy ook aanstaande jaar universiteit toe gaan. Hy wil mediese dokter word, en ons moet nog besluit waarheen ons hom sal stuur, na Johannesburg, Pretoria of Kaapstad. Soos jy weet, het die ander universiteite nie Mediese Fakulteite nie.

Wat my betref, ek hou my besig met die werk in die huis (die versorging van man en kinders) en met my stokperdjies: tuin maak en skilder — maar nie van Jan se soort nie! Ek hou nog altyd van waterverf en pastelwerk.

Dis oormôre jou verjaarsdag. Veels geluk, Sannie! Mag jy 'n aangename dag hê en nog baie gelukkige verjaarsdae vier. Ons almal stuur ons allerbeste wense. Ek hoop jy sal altyd

geluk en voorspoed hê. 'n Klein presentjie van Jan en my is al op pad.

Sê ook asseblief groete aan Andries en julle liewe kinders.

Met liefde

Van

Marie.

*Vocabulary*

*per adres*, care of; abbreviation *P/a*, *C/o*.

*laat weet*, v., let know, send word, inform.

*'Tuinroete*, Garden Route, from *tuin*, garden, and *'roete*, n., (-s), route.

*mooi weer*, fine weather, opposite of *'slegte weer*, bad weather.

*so ver ons gery het*, as far as we drove, lit. rode, all the way we drove; *ry* can mean "drive" (e.g. by motor-car).

*'wonderlik*, wonderful(ly), from *'wonder*, n. and v., wonder.

*ge'niet*, v., enjoy.

*na'tuurskoon*, scenery, natural beauty, from *na'tuur*, nature.

*bo van Sir Lowry-Pas*, from the top of Sir Lowry's Pass; note *pas* or *'bergpas*, mountain pass.

*bos*, bush, forest.

*meer*, n., lake.

*ge'bied*, n., area, region.

*'totdat*, until.

*met die naam*, named, of the name of, lit. with the name.

*'teerpad*, tarred road, from *teer*, n. and v., tar.

*'modderig*, muddy, from *'modder*, n., mud; cf. *'winderig*, windy, *'reënerig*, rainy, *'stowwerig*, dusty (from *stof*, dust), *'rooierig*, reddish.

*ver'legging*, deviation (of road), from *ver'lê*, v., shift, remove, divert, mislay.

*ge'leidelik*, gradual(ly).

*na'mate*, as, according to, lit. in the measure (that).

*'nader aan*, nearer to.

*nader aan 'n plek kom*, approach a place, lit. come nearer to a place.

*'Griekwaland-Oos*, East Griqualand.

*'kouer*, colder, comp. of *koud*, a., (*'koue*), cold.

*kroon*, v. and n., crown.

*'lekplek*, n., puncture, lit. leaking place, from *lek*, v., leak.

*bout*, n., bolt.

*moer*, n., nut (of bolt).

*'losskud*, (*losge-*), shake loose.

*'hartlik*, hearty, heartily.

*ver'welkom*, v., welcome.

*'sneestorm*, (-s), snow storm, from *sneeu*, v., and n., snow, and *storm*, n., (-s), storm.

*wit van die sneeu*, white with snow; note the article in the Afrikaans expression. There is another Afr. word, n. and v., for snow: *ka'pok*.

*'sneubedek*, (-te), snow-covered, from *be'dek*, v., cover.

*'rigting*, n., direction (of travel, looking, shooting, etc.).

*Ba'soetoland*, Basutoland.

*ge'hug*, (-te), hamlet, tiny village.

*be'sit*, v., possess; from this derives *be'sitting*, possession.

*ran'geerwerf*, shunting yard, from *rangeer*, *ran'xe:r* or *rā'se:r*, v., (*ge-*), arrange, shunt (trains), and *werf*, n., (*werwe*), yard, farmyard, shipyard, also v., recruit.

*'n halfdosyn*, half a dozen, from *do'syn*, dozen; note the position of the article.

*'spoorwegknoop*, railway junction, from *'spoorweg*, railway, and *knoop*, n., knot, also "button".

*lokomo'tiefloods*, engine-shed, from *lokomo'tief*, n., (-*tiewe*), locomotive, engine, and *loods*, n., (-e), shed, hangar; there is also a word *loods*, n. and v., pilot.

*na iets staan en kyk*, watch something, stand and look at something.

*Exercise 26a. Translate into Afrikaans*

C/o Dr. P. R. Pienaar,  
Franklin,  
East Griqualand.  
20 May, 1954.

Dear Jan,

I promised to let you know as soon as we arrived here. I sent a telegram but I was too tired to write immediately.

As you know, we left Cape Town on (this "on" is not translated) 14 May and followed the Garden Route. It was a beautiful day—fine weather as far as we drove—and we could

enjoy the wonderful scenery: first the view from the top of Sir Lowry's Pass, and later in the day the forests and lakes in the region of Goerge and Knysna, where we spent the night. Early the next morning the sky was overcast and it started raining; and that Sunday we drove in rain and wind all day until we reached a town called Butterworth.

The third day was even worse. At several places the tarred road is being repaired and we had to drive over long, muddy deviations. Gradually, as we approached East Griqualand, it became colder. To crown everything we had trouble with the motor-car: two punctures, a burst tyre, and several bolts and nuts which shook loose.

The evening of the third day we arrived in this little village and were heartily welcomed by Peter and his wife. That night there was a snow-storm, and when we got up on the morning of the 17th the whole place was white with snow. The snow-covered mountains in the direction of Basutoland were wonderfully beautiful.

Little Willie is really enjoying the holidays. Although Franklin is hardly more than a hamlet, it has a shunting-yard and half a dozen locomotives, for it is the railway junction for Kokstad and Matatiele. The locomotive shed is close to Peter's house, and Willie has been watching (translate "stood looking at", *het gestaan en kyk*) engines almost all day today. The engine-driver even allowed him to ride on a locomotive this afternoon.

We are leaving here on the 22nd and hope to be in Cape Town again on the evening of the 24th.

With kind regards  
From  
Andrew.

CHAPTER XXXIV.  
TRANSLATION

Vocabulary

'*kennis maak met*, become acquainted with, lit. make knowledge with.  
*ver'skillend*, different(ly), from *ver'skil*, v., differ, n., difference.  
'*iemand op die stasie gaan haal* or *kom haal*, go and meet someone at the station, lit. go, or come and fetch someone on the station.  
'*uitleun*, (*uitge-*), lean out, from *leun*, v., lean.  
*hallo !*, hello !  
*iemand tuis laat voel*, make someone feel at home.  
'*kaggelvuur*, fire in open fire-place, hearth-fire, from '*kaggel*, hearth, grate, fire-place, and *vuur*, n., fire.  
*so'veel 'moontlik*, as much as possible.  
*wat daar te sien is*, what there is to see, or to be seen.  
'*n hele 'rooster*, quite a time-table, from *rooster*, n., roster, grating, gridiron, grill; cf. '*n hele af'fêre*, quite an affair.  
*gaan wys*, go and show.  
*net so goed*, just as well, equally well.  
'*afgaan in 'n myn*, go down a mine, descend a mine, lit. go down in a mine.  
*iemand in die 'rede val*, interrupt someone (in conversation), lit. to fall into his speech.  
*nou goed !*, well and good !, good !  
*dit lyk my*, it seems to me.  
*wat van . . . ?*, what about . . . ?  
'*Uniegebou*, Union Buildings, from '*unie*, n., union.  
*Trans'vaal*, the Transvaal; note, in Eng. we usually say "the Transvaal", in Afr. usually just *Transvaal*, without the article.  
*baie graag*, very much indeed.  
*die 'hele Transvaal*, the whole of the Transvaal.  
'*geesdrif*, enthusiasm, from *gees*, spirit, and *drif*, passion.  
'*padkaart*, road-map, from *pad*, road, and *kaart*, card, chart, map.  
'*wildtuin*, game reserve, from *wild*, n., game, wild animals, a. and adv., wild(ly), and *tuin*, n., garden.

*do'syne 'soorte voëls*, dozens of kinds of birds.  
*ry met dié pad*, take, or follow this road, lit. ride or drive with this road.  
*ge'skiedenis*, history, from *ge'skied*, v., happen.  
*Trans'vaals*, a., of the Transvaal.  
*om iets te laat lewe*, to make something come to life, to make something live.

Exercise 27. Translate into English :

Jan Brink se vader was 'n sakeman in Kaapstad en meneer Brink wou hê dat sy seun kennis moes maak met die verskillende provinsies en stede van Suid-Afrika; daarom het hy Jan se vakansies baie versigtig gereël. Een wintervakansie het hy die seun na sy suster Annie in Johannesburg gestuur. Sy was getroud met Andries Barnard, 'n magistraat; en die gesin, bestaande uit meneer en mevrou Barnard en hulle seun Willem, het in 'n mooi nuwe huis in die voorstad Greenside gewoon.

Toe Jan laat 'n sekere middag in Johannesburg aankom, was meneer Barnard en Willem op die stasie om hom te kom haal.

(Note in what follows how the present tense is sometimes used in Afrikaans where the past tense is used in English.)

„ Daar is hy ! ” roep Willem uit toe die trein intrek en hy sy neef by die treinvenster sien uitleun.

Hulle stap nader terwyl Jan vir hulle waai.

„ Goeiemiddag, Jan ! ” sê meneer Barnard. „ Welkom in Johannesburg ! ”

„ Middag Oom Andries ! Hallo Willem ! ” sê Jan, en dra die groete van sy ouers oor. (Look up : '*oordra*.)

Meneer Barnard en Willem help hom met sy bagasie en binnekort was hulle in meneer Barnard se motorkar op pad na die noordwestelike voorstede. Daar het sy Tant Annie ook vir Jan verwelkom en hom gou tuis laat voel.

Na aandete het hulle om die kaggelvuur gesit en die vakansie bespreek.

„ Is dit werklik jou eerste besoek aan Johannesburg ? ” vra mevrou Barnard.

„ Ja, Tant Annie, my eerste besoek, en ek is baie nuuskierig en gretig om soveel moontlik van die goudstad te sien. ”

„ Daarvoor sal Willem sorg, ” sê meneer Barnard. „ Hy sal jou wys wat daar te sien is. ”

„Die planne is al agtermekaar, Vader,” sê Willem. „Ek het 'n hele rooster opgestel. Ek wil hom die Dieretuin gaan wys, die Biblioteek en die Africana-Museum.”

„En wat van Joubertpark en die Kunsmuseum?” vra mevrou Barnard.

„O ja, dis ingesluit. En ook besoeke aan twee toneelopvoerings, een in Engels en een in Afrikaans.”

„Uitstekend,” sê meneer Barnard. „Sê my, wat het jy neergeskryf vir Saterdagmiddag?”

„'n Rugbywedstryd op Ellispark. Transvaal speel teen die Westelike Provinsie.”

„O nee!” roep meneer Barnard uit; „hy kan goeie rugby op Nuweland in Kaapstad net so goed sien. Ek het 'n ander voorstel. Laat ons na 'n oorlogsdans deur myn-naturelle by die kampong van een van die goudmyne gaan.”

„O ja, asseblief!” roep Jan uit. „Ek sou dit graag wou sien.”

„Goed, ek kan dit reël,” sê meneer Barnard. „En Saterdaggaand kan ons in 'n myn afgaan.”

„Julle kan gaan,” val mevrou Barnard haar man in die rede, „maar ek gaan nie daar onder in die donker gange rondkruip nie!”

„Nou goed,” sê meneer Barnard met 'n glimlag, „maar ek dink nie Jan moet so 'n geleentheid laat verbygaan nie. Ek kan maklik die besoek met die mynmaatskappy reël.”

„O, ek is nie bang nie, Oom Andries,” sê Jan. „Ek wil baie graag die binnekant van so 'n myn sien. Dit lyk my Willem en Oom Andries het baie moeite gedoen om planne vir my besoek uit te werk, en ek kan skaars wag om te begin.”

„Maar wat van die res van Transvaal?” vra meneer Barnard. „Wil jy nie ook iets daarvan sien nie?”

„Baie graag,” antwoord Jan, „as dit moontlik is!”

„Ons kan jou natuurlik nie die hele Transvaal wys nie, maar ons kan party dele daarvan besoek. Ek moet hierdie week nog werk, maar aanstaande week neem ek tien dae vakansie en dan gaan ons 'n motorreis deur Transvaal onderneem.”

„Wat 'n aangename verrassing!” roep Jan opgewonde uit. „Waarheen gaan ons, Oom Andries?”

Meneer Barnard glimlag toe hy Jan se geesdrif sien.

„Willem,” sê hy, „bring vir ons die padkaarte.”

Met die kaarte voor hulle uitgesprei verduidelik meneer Barnard die reisplan.

„Eers gaan ons na die Kruger-Wildtuin, hier, in die oostelike deel van die provinsie; dan noordwaarts deur die Wildtuin waar ons in drie van die kampe sal oornag. Daar sal jy leeus, hoop ek, in hulle natuurstaat sien, en kameelperde, seekoë, bobbejane, sebras, olifante, buffels en dosyne soorte voëls. Dan ry ons met dié pad terug oor Pietersburg, Warmbad en Pretoria. Ons sal so ry dat ons vroeg die oggend in Pretoria aankom, sodat ons 'n hele dag in die hoofstad kan deurbring.”

„Ja, daar is interessante plekke om te sien,” sê mevrou Barnard; „byvoorbeeld die Uniegebou, die huis van President Kruger en die ou Transvaalse Museum. So 'n besoek sal baie van ons land se geskiedenis vir jou laat lewe.”

„Dit sal wonderlik wees!” sê Jan. „Ek voel oorweldig. Hoe sal ek Tant Annie, Oom Andries en Willem kan vergoed vir al die vriendelikheid?”

„Dit sal maklik wees,” sê meneer Barnard, „alhoewel dit nie eintlik nodig is nie. Aanstaande somer stuur ons vir Willem Kaapstad toe, en dan kan jy en jou ouers hom weer daar alles wys wat daar te sien is.”

„Glo my, Oom Andries,” sê Jan, „dit sal 'n genoeë wees!”

#### Vocabulary

*raak loop*, v., come across, meet, run into.

*doek*, cloth, sling, canvas (for painting).

*arm in 'n doek dra*, carry, or have one's arm in a sling.

*wat makeer jou arm?*, what is the matter with your arm?

*ver'draai*, v., twist.

*iemand op die skouer klop*, pat someone on the back, lit. on the shoulder, from *'skouer*, shoulder, and *klop*, v., knock, tap, rap (on door), pat (on back), beat (of heart), defeat (someone).

*steek*, v., poke, stick.

*jou neus in ander mense se sake steek*, poke your nose into other people's business, or into the affairs of other people.

*nou*, a., (—, -e), narrow.

*om die waarheid te sê*, as a matter of fact, lit. to speak the truth; *waarheid* from *waar*, a., true.

*her'inner*, remind.

*om 'n trein, bus, etc. te haal*, to catch a train, bus, etc.

*'staanplek*, standing room.



<sup>1</sup>*vorder*, v., (ge-), progress, get on; from *vorder* derives

<sup>1</sup>*vordering*, n., progress.

*op skool*, at school.

*so-so*, so-so.

*pre<sup>1</sup>sies*, precise(ly).

<sup>1</sup>*swemmer*, swimmer.

<sup>1</sup>*deurswem*, (deurge-), swim across, swim through:

*Exercise 27a. Translate into Afrikaans :*

Piet was always very inquisitive. One day he came across Paul who had his arm in a sling.

"What's the matter with your arm?" he asked.

"I twisted it trying to pat myself on the back."

"But why did you try to pat yourself on the back?"

"Just because I don't poke my nose into other people's business."

Mrs. Naudé had put on a very narrow new dress, and came to show it to her husband.

"How do I look in my new dress?" she asked.

"As a matter of fact," replied her husband after regarding her, "it reminds me of the full train which I catch every morning."

"What do you mean?"

"One has only standing room in it."

A mother was talking to a teacher.

"And how is little Olga getting on at school?" she asked.

"Oh, so-so, Mrs. Vermeulen," came the reply; "you know, slow but sure."

"What exactly do you mean, Mr. Brand?"

"Slow to learn, and sure to forget."

Little Jannie laughed when the (lady) teacher read the story to the class of a man who swam three times across the Vaal River every morning.

"Why are you laughing, Jannie?" she asked. "Do you think it is impossible for a good swimmer?"

"No, Miss," replied Jannie. "I just wondered why he didn't swim across once more to get back to his clothes!"

CHAPTER XXXV.

TRANSLATION

*Vocabulary*

*gebalan<sup>1</sup>seer*, (-de), balanced, from *balan<sup>1</sup>seer*, v., (ge-), balance.  
*<sup>1</sup>onontbeerlik*, essential, lit. that without which one cannot do,  
from *ont<sup>1</sup>beer*, v., do without.

*<sup>1</sup>sportterrein*, sports ground(s), from *sport*, n., sport(s), and  
*ter<sup>1</sup>rein*, terrain, area, ground(s).

*ver<sup>1</sup>fraai*, v., (—), beautify, from *fraai*, beautiful(ly), pretty,  
prettily.

*<sup>1</sup>talle bome*, numerous trees, lit. numbers (of) trees, from *tal*, n.,  
number.

*<sup>1</sup>sierboom*, ornamental tree, from *sier*, v., decorate, adorn; cf.  
*ver<sup>1</sup>sier*, v., decorate, and *<sup>1</sup>sierlik*, graceful(ly), elegant(ly).

*<sup>1</sup>sierpruimboom*, flowering plum-tree, lit. ornamental plum-tree,  
from *sier*, v., decorate, and *pruim*, plum, prune.

*<sup>1</sup>sierkweperboom*, flowering quince-tree, from *<sup>1</sup>kweper*, quince.

*Kaaps*, of the Cape, from *Kaap*, Cape.

*<sup>1</sup>Hollands*, Dutch.

*<sup>1</sup>Tafelberg*, Table Mountain.

*<sup>1</sup>bergreeks*, range of mountains, from *reeks*, n., range, series.

*<sup>1</sup>Hottentots-Holland*, Hottentots Holland.

*<sup>1</sup>wandeling*, n., walk, from *<sup>1</sup>wandel*, v., (ge-), walk.

*kyk na*, gaze at, look at, watch.

*weer<sup>1</sup>spieël*, v., (—), reflect, mirror, from *<sup>1</sup>spieël*, n., (-s), mirror.

*ver<sup>1</sup>andering*, n., change; from *ver<sup>1</sup>ander*, v., change.

*val*, n., fall, falling, as in *<sup>1</sup>waterval*, waterfalls, and *die val van die blare*, the falling of the leaves.

*nie alleen . . . , maar ook . . . ,* not only . . . , but also . . .

*tot by*, up to.

*silhoeë<sup>1</sup>teer*, v., (ge-), form a silhouette, from *silhoeët*, *sølu<sup>1</sup>et*,  
n., silhouette.

*be<sup>1</sup>proef*, a., (-de), tested, from *be<sup>1</sup>proef*, v., try, test.

*ver<sup>1</sup>draai*, a., (-de), or *ver<sup>1</sup>draaid*, a., (-e), twisted, distorted,  
from *ver<sup>1</sup>draai*, v., twist, distort.

- <sup>1</sup>*gunsteling*, n., (-e), favourite, from *guns*, n., (-te), favour.  
<sup>1</sup>*kunsskilder*, artist (in painting), from *kuns*, art, and <sup>1</sup>*skilder*, n., painter, artist, v., (ge-), paint.  
*kan'toorsorge*, office cares, from *kan'toor*, office, and *sorge*, <sup>1</sup>*sorgə*, (pl. of *sorg*, **sorx**, care, trouble), cares, troubles.  
<sup>1</sup>*oorbroek*, leggings, trousers worn over ordinary trousers, from *oor*, over, and *broek*, trousers, pair of trousers; note the sing. form; the pl. *broeke* means more than one pair of trousers; cf. *bril*, n., (pair of) spectacles, *brille*, more than one pair of spectacles.  
*net so veel*, just as much or many, just so much or many.  
<sup>1</sup>*fluistering*, n., whispering, also *ge'fluister*, used as n., whispering, from <sup>1</sup>*fluister*, v., (ge-), whisper.  
*ge'kwetter*, n., chirping, from <sup>1</sup>*kwetter*, v., (ge-), chirp (of birds).  
<sup>1</sup>*waterpoeletjie*, little pool of water, from <sup>1</sup>*water*, water, and *poel*, n., pool, puddle. *Poeletjie* is pronounced **'pulici**.  
*lewe met*, v., be alive with; lit. live with.  
*die een of ander boek*, some book or other, lit. the one or other book.  
*tele'foonoproep*, telephone call, from *tele'foon*, n., telephone, and <sup>1</sup>*oproep*, n., call, summons, appeal, v., (opge-), call up, summon.  
*die hele ent pad*, all the way, lit. the whole piece of road.  
*boek in die hand*, book in hand; note the article in the Afr. expression.  
<sup>1</sup>*prosa-kuns*, art of prose (writing), lit. prose-art, from <sup>1</sup>*prosa*, prose, and *kuns*, art.  
<sup>1</sup>*n 'bundel ge'digte*, a volume of poetry or verse, lit. poems; note the "of" is not rendered by a prep. in the Afrikaans expression.  
*na aan*, close to, near to.  
*met ander tye*, at other times.  
*vreemd*, a., foreign, strange.  
<sup>1</sup>*onpartydig*, impartial(ly), opposite of *par'tydig*, partial, prejudiced.  
<sup>1</sup>*voorbereiding*, preparation, from <sup>1</sup>*voorberei*, (—), prepare.  
<sup>1</sup>*onopgelos*, (-te), unsolved, opposite of <sup>1</sup>*opgelos*, (-te), solved, from <sup>1</sup>*oplos*, v., (opge-), solve.  
<sup>1</sup>*onbewus*, a., (-te), unconscious, adv., unconsciously; opposite of *be'wus*, a., (-te), conscious, adv., consciously.  
<sup>1</sup>*oplossing*, n., solution (of a problem), from <sup>1</sup>*oplos*, v., (opge-), solve.

## Exercise 28. Translate into English :

Op kantoor was Markus gedurig besig en tuis was daar die duisend-en-een verantwoordelikhede van die vader van 'n gesin, waar sy vrou en kinders veel van sy aandag geëis het. Nietemin het hy probeer om 'n gebalanseerde lewe te lei, want hy het besef dat, om baie krag uit te straal (look up : *uitstraal*), 'n mens ook baie moet ontvang. Hy het geglo dat 'n mens, selfs te midde van 'n druk stad, daardie tydperke van innerlike stilte en van kontak met die natuur, wat onontbeerlik vir geestelike groei is, kan bewaar—nie spasmodies nie, maar as deel van die daelikse lewe.

Daarom het hy soveel waarde geheg aan die tydperk soggens tussen sy vertrek van sy huis en sy aankoms op kantoor, en saans die soortgelyke reis huis toe. Hy het altyd vriende vermy wat aangebied het dat hy saam met hulle in hulle motorkarre kon ry, want hy het verkies om die myl na die stasie te loop en die ses myl na die middestad per trein te reis.

Die pad van sy huis na die stasie het verby 'n paar netjiese villas in 'n park-agtige voorstad gelei, langs die walle van 'n stroom, oor 'n brug, dan opdraand langs die heining van 'n groot landgoed, oor 'n grootpad met eikebome aan albei kante, en ten slotte verby 'n sportterrein en 'n paar winkels naby die treinspoor.

Hierdie pad was 'n blywende bron van vreugde vir Markus. Die huis-bou-woede van die groot bou-organisasies het nog nie te veel aanvalle gedoen of op die natuurlike skoonheid van die gebied, of op die pogings van vorige geslagte om hulle eiendom te verfraai deur 'n verskeidenheid van sierbome en vrugtebome te plant nie. Op een plek langs die stroom het 'n klomp statige, dongergroen bloekombome gestaan met hulle kruine hoog in die lug, en oorkant hulle 'n kleiner groepie ou populiere met hulle ligter groen stamme en hulle gevoelige blare wat in elke windjie bewe. Op 'n ander plek het 'n paar wilgerbome en 'n soort gomboom, wat in die somer rooi blomme dra, hulle takke uitgestrek oor die stroom om weerkaats te word in die water.

In party van die private eiendomme het akkerbome en kurkbome gegroei en talle sierpruimbome en sierkweperbome, en tussen hulle kon Markus die sierlike gewelhuise bewonder, gebou in die Kaaps-Hollandse styl.

En altyd op (translate "in") die agtergrond was daar elke oggend die statige Tafelberg met sy oostelike kranse en hange wat die eerste strale van die son vang, en elke middag die verafgeleë bergreekse van Hottentots-Holland in die suid-ooste, blou-grys in die verte as (translate "if") die lug helder was.

Gedurende sy daelike wandeling kon Markus gemeenskap hou met die natuur. Hy het geluister na die voëls, en die eekhorinkies was sy vriende. Hy het na die bome gekyk en opgelet hoe die seisoene weerspieël word (use "were reflected") in hulle voorkoms — veral die eike: die eerste teer groen blare in die lente, die volle kroon van lower in die somer, die verandering na rooibruin en bruin in die herfs, en die val van die blare in die vroeë winter, wat nie alleen die sterk stamme nie maar ook die takke bo tot by hulle kleinste punte gesilhoeëter gelaat het teen die lug. Slegs dan het hulle ware struktuur duidelik geword — soos dié van 'n mens, beproef in teenspoed, het Markus gedink — en kon 'n mens onderskei tussen verdraaide individue en dié met innerlike krag en skoonheid van vorm.

'n Sekere eik in 'n laan naby die stasie was 'n besondere gunsteling van Markus, want sy takke het verdeel en herverdeel met so 'n gebalanseerde simmetrie dat hy byna altyd vir 'n oomblik stilgestaan het om die reëlmatige onreëlmatigheid te bewonder, en gewens hy het die vermoë van 'n kunsskilder om die beeld op die doek te herskep — byna altyd, want partykeer het hy aan die boom gedink slegs nadat hy daar verby was, en dan het hy geweet dat hy sy kantoorsonne toegelaat het om te swaar op sy skouers te weeg, en hom nie losgeskud het vir die herstel van sy energie uit die diepste bronne in die natuur en in sy eie gees nie.

Die weer, tensy daar 'n stormwind gewaai het, het hom selde versteur. In die seënseisoen het hy 'n waterdigte oorbroek, oorskoene en 'n reënjas gedra en 'n sambreel saamgeneem, en net soveel behae geskep in die fluistering van die reën as, in ander seisoene, in die gekwetter van die voëls. Deur die mis of die sluier van die reën het die kleure van die natuur nuwe skakerings van skoonheid aangeneem, en die waterpoeltjies en nat strate het gelewe met tallose gebroke weerkaatsings.

In die trein het hy gewoonlik gelees, altyd die een of ander boek en nooit die dagblaie nie, want hy het saam met Bennett

geglo dat koerante, snel geskryf, snel gelees moet word; en die onversteurde kwartier in die trein, vry van telefoonoproep en besoekers, was veels te kosbaar om gewy te word aan sulke verbygaande materiaal. Gelukkig kon hy so goed konsentreer dat die aanwesigheid van ander mense en die geraas van die trein nie sy genot in 'n goeie boek versteur het nie. Selfs wanneer die wa vol was en hy die hele ent pad na die stad moes staan, het hy nog boek in die hand gestaan, verdiep in die gedagtes van 'n essayis, die verhaal vertel deur 'n meester in die prosa-kuns, of die skoonheid van 'n bundel gedigte. Partykeer, maar slegs selde, het hy gekyk na die gesigte en gebare van sy medereisigers, soms na aan hulle in simpatie, met ander tye byna asof hulle die inwoners van 'n vreemde land was, objektief gesien deur 'n onpartydige waarnemer.

Die kort wandeling van die sentrale stasie na sy kantoor het hy gewy of aan 'n snelle voorbereiding vir die dag se amptelike pligte, of smiddae aan 'n oorsig van wat gebeur het en die probleme wat onopgelos gelaat is, sodat sy onbewuste gees dalk 'n oplossing vir hulle sou kon vind voor die volgende dag.

### Vocabulary

*par'tytjie*, (house) party; a political party is a *par'ty*.

*swaar* 'hoofpyn, bad headache, lit. heavy headache.

*'uitvra*, v., (uitge-), question (someone).

*ge'neesmiddel*, n., means of curing, cure, medicine, remedy, from

*ge'nees*, v., cure, heal, and *'middel*, n., means, remedy, middle.

*'liggaams oefening*, physical exercise, from *'liggaam*, body, and

*'oefening*, exercise.

*'gretig*, eager(ly).

*'kragtig*, vigorous(ly), powerful(ly), from *krag*, n., power.

*heen* en *weer*, from side to side, to and fro, from *heen*, forth, away,

thither, hence.

*skud*, v., shake.

*'drankie*, n., drink, lit. little drink.

*om 'n drankie te drink*, to have a drink, lit. to drink a drink.

*'optimis*, (-te), optimist.

*'pessimis*, (-te), pessimist.

*'seëning*, n., blessing, from *seën*, v., bless, n., blessing.

*'dankbaar*, grateful(ly), thankful, from *dank*, v., thank, n.,

thanks, gratitude, cf., *'dankbaarheid*, gratitude.

*eers* or *eens*, even, in the phrase *nie eers . . . nie*, not even.

*wel*, adv. and interj., well.

*'skuldeiser*, creditor, lit. one who demands debt, from *skuld*, n., debt, v., owe, and *'eiser*, one who demands, claimant, from *eis*, v., demand, claim.

by *'n winkel inloop*, go into, or enter a shop.

*'slagterswinkel*, butcher's shop, from *slag*, v., slaughter, *'slagter*, n., butcher, one who slaughters.

*vet*, a., fat.

*'skaapboud*, leg of mutton, lit. sheep-buttock.

*bog*, nonsense, rubbish; *hy praat bog*, he is talking rubbish.

*redak'teur*, (-s), editor.

*'tydskrif*, n., (-te), periodical, from *tyd*, time, and *skrif*, n., writing, from *skryf*, write.

*manu'skrip*, (-te), manuscript.

*te'rugstuur*, (*terugge-*), send back.

*'kortverhaal*, short story.

*sit*, tr. v., place, put.

*Exercise 28a. Translate into Afrikaans :*

Jakobus was very fond of parties, but he regularly suffered from a (do not translate this "a") bad headache the next day. At last he went to consult a doctor about the headaches. The doctor examined him and questioned him carefully.

"The best remedy for these headaches," he said at last, "is a simple physical exercise."

"And what is that?" asked Jakobus eagerly.

"You must shake your head vigorously from side to side."

"Will that cure the headache, doctor?"

"O yes."

"But when must I do the exercise, doctor, and how often?"

"Oh, not very often. Just every time someone asks you to have a drink."

An optimist was telling a pessimist that he should count his blessings and be grateful.

"Grateful!" cried the pessimist. "What reason have I to be grateful? I can't even pay my accounts."

"Well, then you can be grateful that you aren't one of the creditors!"

Mr. du Plessis walked into a butcher's shop. (Use the present tense in Afrikaans.)

"Have you any (do not translate this "any") fish?" he asked.

"I am sorry," replied the butcher; "we haven't any fish. But what about a nice fat leg of mutton?"

"Don't talk rubbish!" said Mr. du Plessis. "How can I go and tell my wife that I caught a nice fat leg of mutton?"

For the tenth time the editor of a magazine had returned (use *terugstuur*, lit. "send back") a manuscript to an author. The author sat down and wrote to the editor: "Do you think I should put more fire into my short stories?"

"No," came the reply; "you should put more short stories into the fire."

## KEY TO EXERCISES

## 1.

The man. A woman. Eight women. A table. Four dogs. A child. A hammer. Many evenings. A letter. The tooth. Clean plates. Pretty rings. Big wheels. A big chair. A few cows. A big farm. Strong legs. A thick wall. Big dams. Many books. A few pens. Big pots. A deep well. The sea. Six paces. Clean knees. A big river. One ruler. A thin blanket. A short telegram. Nine copies. The secretary. Many politicians. Tuesday. Thursday. Saturday evening. A clean kitchen.

## 1a.

Die kind. 'n Man. Die vrou. Die groot tafel. 'n Hond. Die groot hamer. 'n Aand. Die lang brief. Drie tande. 'n Mooi ring. Die bord. Baie wiele. 'n Paar stoele. 'n Groot koei. Vyf plase. 'n Sterk tou. Die dun muur. Tien damme. 'n Paar treë. Die pen. 'n Paar potte. Baie diep putte. Tien honde. Dik komberse. 'n Paar kopieë. Die kort brief. 'n Paar kleinighede. 'n Politikus en twee sekretarisse. 'n Kort liniaal. 'n Swak muur. 'n Vuil knie. Maandag. Woensdagaand. Vrydag. Sondag.

## 2.

I am a boy. You have two brothers and three sisters. He is seventeen and she is fifteen. You talk to us and we talk to you. They write to me. She speaks about him. You write to them, and they write to you. Jan's cousins (or nephews) live on farms. There are twenty pretty gardens in the city. I know of it (or of them). The shopkeepers knew. You buy pretty jewels in the shops of the jewellers. The two brothers of the captain are attorneys. Here are eleven rifles: the sixteen corporals shoot with them. The wheel of the wagon is broken. The bridge is strong; they walk across it. The mothers write to the girls. The generals talk to the captains. It is a big farm.

## 2a.

Die mooi meisies lees baie romans. Die meisie se broers is winkeliers. Sy loop oor die brug. Die muur is skoon: hy sit daarop. Daar is twaalf maande in die jaar. Ons dra dik jasse in Julie. Jy skryf eksamens in Junie en in Desember. Jan se vader en Piet se oom is kapteins. Hulle skryf aan jou. Julie praat oor haar. Die siekte is gevaarlik; ons is bang daarvoor. Die prokureurs sal skryf. Die gevaar is groot. Anna se ooms is boere (or Die ooms van Anna is boere). Die groot plaas is Oom Willem s'n. Hier is dertien besems: die bediendes vee daarmee. Die juweliers verkoop juwele. Die vaders skryf aan die seuns. Piet het baie niggies.

## 3.

The big boy plays with thirteen companions. The nations live in peace. The great general had many virtues. The chiefs wrote the letters yesterday. The writings of Lord Milner are important. Jan wants to be in town (or: in the city). He will buy two shirts in the shop. We expect thirty guests. The post of the manager was important. He managed the goods-trains. The trains transport the goods. Piet was on the farm. There were thirty-eight lambs. There are many lights in the street. The birds build nests. There will be many nests in the trees. Piet will have a farm some day. He hurries to town. They meddle in the affairs of other people.

## 3a.

Die twee broers het vyf winkels en drie plase gehad. Die kinders sal genoeg geld hê. Sy het baie juwele. Ons sal baie komberse hê. Hy was verlede Donderdag baie siek. Ek het hom gister gesien. Hy sal môre gesond wees. Hulle sal aanstaande Saterdag in die stad (or: op die dorp) wees. Die groot sanger sal vyf-en-twintig liedere in Duits sing. Sy wil vrugte hê. Sy sal dorp toe gaan. Sy sal die vrugte daar koop. Die amp van die bestuurder (or: Die bestuurder se amp) sal belangrik wees. Hy sal die passasierstreine beheer. Sy ontferm haar oor hom. Hy betaal self die salarisse. Agtien (or: agttien), vier-en-twintig, nege-en-twintig, drie-en-dertig, sewe-en-dertig, veertien.

## 4.

I shall give you the letters. They are yours. The hats and overcoats are yours. Their's are also here. The shop belongs to us. It is ours. The labourers work with their spades and picks. Times are difficult. Her back is painful. The medicine is hers. The child tears the pages of your book. Everyone was (or: All the people were) ill. Their eyes and necks were sore. The wolves are in the ravines. He lost everything, his farms, his houses and his money. Someone will help him. All people help one another. There were a hundred people. Some were members of the club. All the people talk to one another. Each one will have his own house. They will all live together. Some are ill, others are well.

## 4a.

Sy gee my my handskoene. Hulle is myne. Party mense het hoede, ander het jasse. Daar was nege-en-vyftig mense. Hulle het almal hulle reënjasse by hulle gehad. Ons het hom sy boeke en sy briewe gegee. Ek het reeds jou pen en jou potlood aan jou (lit. "to you") gegee; or: Ek het jou reeds jou pen en jou potlood gegee. Daar is twee-en-negentig beeste op sy plaas. Hulle is syne. Hy tel hulle almal. Hy ken elkeen. Sommige het geld, ander het niks. Die arbeiders werk op die pad. Die paaie sal goed wees. Elkeen doen sy werk. Hulle sien mekaar dikwels. Alles gaan goed. Daar was baie oorloë, en daar sal baie oorloë wees. Daar is een-en-dertig dae in Maart. Die nagte is koud in Julie, maar die dae is warm. Een-en-veertig, ses-en-vyftig, twee-en-sestig, sewe-en-sewentig, drie-en-tagtig, vier-en-negentig, honderd.

## 5.

The old lady's prayers are sincere. We obey the strict commands. The naughty boys play dangerous games. He is afraid of the naked truth. The road is long and the traveller is tired. The clothes were new and clean. The lazy children wear old, dirty clothes. The cruel man kicks the dead dog. It is a bad deed. The cold wind blows over the wet ground in the early morning. The brave man travels through a wild region. He is young and healthy. He enjoys a pleasant holiday. Here is an empty, clean glass. Sugar is sweet. The floor is dirty.

There are all kinds of books in the big library. The distance from Cape Town to Johannesburg is nearly a thousand miles. The ten commandments.

## 5a.

'n Vriendelike jong man het die swak ou dame gehelp. Dit was 'n goeie daad. 'n Hond lei die blinde man. Die stadige boot stoom oor die breë rivier. Die dapper matrose het ten laaste droë grond bereik. Die flukse studente sal die korrekte antwoorde gee. Die dowe vrou hoor slegs harde geluide. Die man is oud, die seun is jonk. Hulle drink kou water uit skoon glase. Die ryk man dra nuwe klere. Die arme man is 'n moeë reisiger op 'n lang pad. Die sterk osse trek die swaar waens. Tweemiljoen, vierhonderd ses-en-dertig-duisend, vyfhonderd nege-en-sewentig; een-en-twintig-duisend, twee-honderd-en-ses. Die jare: negentien-nege-en-dertig; sestien-twee-en-vyftig; elfhonderd vyf-en-twintig n.C.

## 6.

He prophesied rain. I am spending a holiday with my Uncle Willem on his farm. He likes receiving guests. We rise early. It is a lovely morning. The servants saddle two lively horses. My uncle and I mount and ride away (or: off) to the the farm of Uncle Willem's neighbour, Uncle Jan Botha. They have been neighbours for the past twenty years (note the sing. *jaar* in Afrikaans), and Uncle Willem and he are old companions. We arrive at (lit. on) his farm. The foreman and two natives are walking from the stable to the dairy with the pails of milk. They have been milking the cows (lit. They were busy milking the cows). The foreman says his master is already in the lands (lit. on the lands), and he walks there (lit. thereto) with us. Uncle Jan is working on a broken tractor. The tractor broke down (lit. broke) yesterday for the third time. Uncle Jan has just repaired it. It runs again now.

## 6a.

Die voorman neem die werk oor. Hy haak eers die ploeg aan die trekker. Hy klim dan op die trekker en ploeg die grond om. Ons loop terug na die plaashuis saam met Oom Jan. Sy vrou het ons gesien, en wag op die hoë stoep. Sy groet ons. Haar mooi

dogter het koffie gemaak en bring 'n skinkbord met stomende koppies koffie. Ons gaan sit en geniet die vriendelike gasvryheid. Ons het die koffie gedrink en my oom gee Oom Jan 'n belangrike boodskap. My oom het die boodskap van die prokureur op die dorp ontvang. My oom en Oom Jan bespreek die saak. Ons sê tot siens, klim op ons perde en keer terug na my oom se plaas. Tweede, vierde, agste, veertiende, twintigste, vyf-en-twintigste.

## 7.

He has an earlier edition of the book. I have a later edition. The weather grows (or: becomes) warmer. The sun rises. It grows lighter. The children rise early. The younger of the two boys fishes in the river, the elder climbs up the mountain. He becomes more and more tired. He stops to rest and sits down on a rock. The ground is wetter than the rocks. He has reached a high point but he perseveres and climbs higher. He gets nearer to the summit of the mountain. He stands at last on the highest point and enjoys a beautiful view. He then returns and climbs lower and lower. He notices his brother at the river. The brother has caught three fishes. One of them is small, but the second is bigger, and the third is the biggest.

## 7a.

Die dae word korter en die nagte langer en kouer. Die son kom later op en gaan vroeër onder. Die temperatuur sak laer. Die dowwe lig word dowwer. Julie en Augustus is die koudste maande van die jaar. Die lemoen is suur maar die suurlemoen is suurder. Die allermooiste dame dra haar nuutste klere. Sy voel nou meer tevrede. Ek voel minder gelukkig; ek dra my oudste klere. Dit is die woesste en mees verlate deel van ons land. Pieter se plan is goed maar Jan se plan is die beste van die twee. Jan is slimmer as Pieter. Die wrede man mishandel sy honde. Die konstabels agtervolg die diewe. Hulle gaan al hoe verder. Hulle het die bende omsingel. Die diewe oorhandig hulle buit aan die polisie. 3 Apr. 1929, or 3 April 1929.

## 8.

It will snow tomorrow. He walks into the sea. Such men are dangerous. You are at liberty to smoke. The lean man ran after the bus, but his effort failed. The French statesmen are

satisfied with the help of the English, but dissatisfied with that of America. This is a chair, one sits on it; that is a bed, one sleeps on that. He dreamt a pleasant dream. This girl ate half an apple, and that girl the other half. The two hunters shoot at the same buck. The one misses but the other hits the buck. The second one paid attention to the advice of his teacher and took part in the shooting exercises, but the first one was too little interested in them (lit.). The one now surpasses the other. The foreman on the farm emptied the milk-pails and filled the cream-separator.

## 8a.

Dit spyt my. Dit het gister gereën, dit reën vandag, en dit sal môre reën. Jy dink aan daardie sonnige dag verlede week. Die dokter het haar versigtig ondervra. Sy het aan 'n onbekende siekte gely. Die dokters het baie siektes oorwin. Hulle heg baie waarde aan hierdie opinie van hom. Hulle maak staat daarop. Die nuwe bediende pas hierdie kinders op, die ou bediende sorg vir daardie (kinders). Hierdie seun het daardie hond met 'n groot klip gegooi. Hierdie taak was moeilik, die skoliere was 'n hele kwartaal lank hiermee besig; maar daardie taak was moeiliker, dit het hulle 'n half jaar lank besig gehou. Hulle het 'n vorige taak binne twee maande voltooi. Die trein was driekwartier laat. Die vriendelike ou seeman het die kinders saamgeneem in sy skuit. Die soldaat het met moed geveg.

## 9

I always felt sorry for my poor Uncle Jan. He was such a friendly but helpless person. I fairly frequently supplied him with money formerly. He seldom kept book of it. I stood surety for him last year. He had in the meantime also repeatedly borrowed money from other people. His plans failed and he went bankrupt at last. The judge in the court spoke very abruptly to him. It was a terribly great shock to all of us. I lost my money, and the other people also theirs, but Uncle Jan is a lovable fellow and we shall help him again. I saw him again a few days ago. It was the day before yesterday. He feels the shock very deeply, but he has nevertheless already made new plans again and will repay all the money. He will be more careful in future. My nephew, Piet, is through and through

good, and works diligently. He works morning, noon and night. He works in the office in the daytime and studies in the evenings. He is nearly finished with his studies. He will easily get through his examinations. People esteem him very highly.

## 9a

Die argitek het die planne verlede maand voorgelê. Die Stadsraad sal hulle waarskynlik oormôre goedkeur. Daar was voorheen baie moeilikhede, maar die werk sal voortaan vinniger vorder. Die son skyn helder en die kinders speel vrolik buite. Wolke pak saam en dit begin skielik reën. Die kinders speel nou binne. Die reën sal gou ophou. Die kinders sal aanstons weer buite speel. Die skoliere het so pas aangekom. Hulle is net betyds. Hulle staan nou in 'n ry. Die kleinste seun staan heel voor en die grootste heel agter. Die skoliere asook die onderwyser gaan vanmôre na 'n tentoonstelling. Hulle loop na die bushalte duskant die kerk. Daar is 'n groot gebou anderkant. Daar is skaars genoeg plek in die bus. Daar is hoogstens plek vir twintig, maar die dertig skoliere is heeltemal piesierig. Die bus ry stadig, maar 'n perdewa ry nog stadiger.

## 10

The wife of the journalist accompanied him to the conference. She is a journalist herself. She likes the work. The lady organist plays the organ in the church. The typist has typed the letter very neatly. She is a competent secretary. The train via Kimberley to Johannesburg leaves at half past eight a.m. and the one via Bloemfontein to Durban at a quarter to three p.m. The athlete covered the mile in three minutes fifty-six seconds. He runs fast. The owner of the farm keeps fowls. There are ten roosters and many hens. There are also a few ducks among them, two drakes and about twelve females. The females lay eggs. The grandchild still owed his grandfather some money, but he pleaded with his grandfather, and his grandfather helped him again. The travellers passed the night in an hotel. This horse is a stallion, that one a mare.

## 10a

Die koningin en die prinses het die danseresse gelukgewens. Die regisseuse werk makliker met akteurs as met aktrises. Beide

my broer en my suster het getrou. Ek het nou 'n swaer en 'n skoonsuster. Die lugwaardin het die beroemde skryfster in die vliegtuig gehelp. Drie treine het vanmiddag aangekom, die eerste om vyf voor twee, die tweede om twintig oor drie, en die derde om half-vyf. Nog een sal binne 'n uur aankom. Die onderwyser leer die jong kinders rekenkunde. Die kinders het haar lief. 'n Ongeluk het om tienuur vanmôre plaasgevind, en al die treine sal laat wees. Die gevangene het die hof oortuig van sy onskuld. Die stem van die gids het in die kloof weerklink. Hoe harder hy werk, hoe gouer sal hy klaar wees.

## 11

He does not dance. He never writes. He has no books. He knows no one. She talks to no one. You are not ill, you have not been ill, and you will not be ill. Such shouting does not behove you. I did not post the letter yesterday. He will not receive the letter tomorrow. Our (visiting) guests are going to town. I am not going with them. A bus runs, not far from our house, straight to town. I did not see them at all. They did not walk through the garden. It is neither fish nor flesh. The child did not bump his toe against a piece of wood but against a stone. The prisoner did not undergo his punishment. The sun does not set early; it sets late. The explorer penetrated the jungle. He cuts the apple in two. The canal crosses the isthmus. I am ill but it makes no difference to him. I do not like him. He is firstly not tidy, secondly inconsiderate, and thirdly too selfish.

## 11a

Julle het gister nie julle boeke gehad nie. Jy sal nie môre 'n boek hê nie. Hy swem nie. Sy swem nie goed nie. Ek swem glad nie. Ek voel glad nie gesond nie. Ek weet niks van die ongeluk nie. Ek het dit nie gesien nie. Hulle woon nie teenoor (or : oorkant) ons nie; hulle woon langs die kerk anderkant die rivier. Hulle gaan bioskoop toe, maar ek gaan nie saam nie. Hy kom nie aan die begin van aanstaande maand nie, maar aan die einde van die maand daarna. Ons werk nie tot half-vyf nie, ons werk smiddags tot vyfuur. Die bestuurder was nog nooit vriendelik teenoor iemand nie. Sy is òf onverskillig òf lui. Nee, sy is nòg die een nòg die ander; sy is net dom. Die verduideliking dring nie deur nie. Die professor het altyd in sy studeerkamer gerook, en die rook het die gordyne deurtrek.



## 12

The sparrows eat the fruit on the trees. The one little girl has a tiny thorn in her little foot, the other one has broken her little arm. The parents walked softly past the children's bedroom. The fashionable lady buys a funny little hat. The shop-assistant ties the parcel with a string (lit. a little rope or string). I buy a small bulb for my electric torch. Not a single little star twinkles in the sky yet. The female cat had five little ones. The cruel boy threw the kittens in the water and held their little heads down (or : under). He received many little presents on his birthday: a little wagon, a little hammer, a little saw and a little chisel. He laughed with joy. He and his little companions enjoyed their playing. The adults drank wine in wine-glasses. The small boat drifted over from this side to the other side of the river. I don't believe Jan's story; he always exaggerates everything.

## 12a

Die ryk man onderhou die arm gesin. Hulle woon in 'n klein huisie met 'n tuintjie. 'n Voetpaadjie lei na die voordeur. Die ou mannetjie het uit die huis uit gekom, nie uit die tuin nie. Hy gaan na die tuin en plant 'n paar vrugteboompies en ook ertjies en boontjies. Daar was vyf koppies en pierings in die mandjie maar geen borde nie. Kinders gebruik klein vurkies, messies en lepeltjies. Sy het 'n silwerkassie vir haar juwele gekoop. Hy het om boordjies gevra — nommer sestien-en-'n-half, nie sewentien nie. Daar is 'n pragtige vulletjie op my tante se plaas, en ook lammertjies, kalfies en 'n paar eendjies. Die kind loer deur 'n gaatjie in die heining en sien drie klein duifies in 'n nessesie. Die verkleurmannetjie is 'n interessante diertjie. Die magistraat oorweeg die saak versigtig. Die skelm bewee van vrees. Die groot generaal het altyd die vyand oorval, en sy planne het nooit misluk nie.

## 13

Is he well? Wasn't he ill? Are you coming (along), or aren't you (coming with us)? Where are you going to? When are you coming back? Will you be back before lunch? Didn't you help him? Are you helping him now? Will he have a good room? Is he writing the letters today or did he write them

yesterday? Will she receive the letter tomorrow? Will the judge acquit the prisoner, or not? What do you think? Didn't he stand still? Will the motor-car ever run again? Don't you trust him? Do they read nothing? Didn't he overestimate his powers? Aren't we trespassing on private property here? Why did you reprimand the child? Doesn't he learn his lessons? Doesn't he understand them? Won't he persevere with his studies? What is the time? How many books are there? What did you pour the milk into? Which jug did you use? With what does one write? Who signed the letter? The leaves of the oaks come out again in spring. They discolour in autumn.

## 13a

Het hy 'n motorkar? Het hy nie verlede jaar een gehad nie? Het hy die verslag gelees of het hy nie? Het hulle die wa oorlaai? Waarom het hulle dit gedoen? Sal die plan slaag, of nie? Kom hy nie? Kom hy nie saam met ons nie? Sal hy nie môre hier wees nie? Hoe het dit gebeur? Waarvandaan kom hulle? Vanwaar het hulle gekom? Het jy nie te vinnig geloop nie? Hoe lank sal die reis duur? Sal jy nie baie moeg wees nie? Het die vliegtuie gister gevlieg? Sal hulle nie môre vlieg nie? Sal jy hom nie help nie? Waar woon hulle? Waarvan is dit gemaak? Waarop is die huis gebou, op sand of op klei? Op nóg die een nóg die ander. Dit is op 'n rots gebou. Wat doen jy daar? Watter motorkar het stilgestaan, en watter een het beweeg? Is sy nie mooi nie? Het sy nie pragtige oë nie? Sal hy môre geen geld hê nie? Reën dit in die somer of in die winter? 'n Wolk het in die lug verskyn maar dit het weer verdwyn.

## 14

Today I am studying. Yesterday I read the letter. Tomorrow I shall do the work. With his help I shall succeed. Without his help I shall not succeed. In spring the fruit-trees blossom. Without warning he arrived here. Usually he doesn't help me. Often he doesn't work. To my regret he did not come. Of my own free will I am not going with them. Accompanied by a friend he turned up. By this afternoon we shall receive the reply. Today we are moving over to the new building. It is an exciting story. The woman is dying. The man was raving angry. His behaviour was disappointing. Talking all the while, he walked

out of the room. The weather bureau has foretold bad weather. Last week two accidents occurred. The destitute (suffering) ones received help. Fortunately the railways prevented further accidents this week. The clown's face looked funny. His cheeks were bright yellow, his ears purple, his forehead orange, his eyebrows green, and his nose red, and around his mouth and lips there was a broad white circle.

## 14a

Gister het ek met hom gepraat. Vandag rus ek. Mōre sal ek weer werk. In die aande (or: Saans) werk hy nie. Gewoonlik besoek hy my eenkeer per week. Ten laaste het die pakket aangekom. Versigtig het hy die doos oopgemaak. Gister het hulle nuwe planne voorgestel. Vandag stel hulle glad nie belang nie. In die winter is dit koud. In die somer is die lug helderblou. Gedurende die winter reën dit baie. In die herfs val die bome se blare af. 'n Grys mis het oor die hawe gehang. Hulle bid vir die sterwende man. Die kind is opletend. Hy het hom soos 'n rasende gedra. Nieteenstaande sy goeie bedoelings is sy werk nie goed genoeg nie. Met sy volgende tjek het hy sy bankrekening oortrek. Teen die einde van die jaar het sy die stoele met dofrooi materiaal oorgetrek en geel gordyne opgehang. Op die onthaal het die netjies geklede dame 'n klein swart hoedjie, versier met oranje en wit, gedra. Hy dra selde bruin klere. Gewoonlik dra hy 'n donkerblou pak (klere).

## 15

The gifted girl studied hard and won the prize. She undoubtedly sings beautifully. He lives unconcerned. The well-to-do and well-dressed lady speaks softly and calmly. Hasn't she arranged the flowers beautifully? He tried hard and at last he obtained the desired result. The teacher is learned. Is the business man well-to-do? Is this the forged cheque? Continually the disappointed man thwarts my plans. I have not yet checked the supplied data. No one likes spoilt children. The witness remains very undecided in his conduct. He looked confused. He always wears starched collars. Doesn't he like soft collars? They are quite ready for the journey. They packed the picked fruit in little wooden boxes. Do mixed fruit form a good diet? The highwaymen blindfolded their prisoner.

The circumstances did not justify their cruelty. Did they put up the destitute people? (Or: Did they accommodate the destitute people?) We comforted the grieved ones. He smiled and gave a suitable reply. Beyond the mountains the lightning flashed. On the grass the children gambolled. Moses saw the promised land but did not enter it.

## 15a

Die wrede koning het met 'n ystere hand geregeer, maar die mense het hulle regte gehandhaaf. Tussen die middel en die end van die vorige eeu het hulle verpligte onderwys ingevoer. Eers het ons 'n prokureur geraadpleeg; nou raadpleeg on 'n geleerde advokaat. Het hulle nie die afgelewerde goedere gewaarborg nie? So iets is ongehoord. Hulle het die gesaagde stukke hout netjies op mekaar gestapel. Ek het hom nie gewantou nie, maar ek het gewanhoop aan die uitslag van sy optrede. Hy het die geleende geld terugbetaal. Ek voel geëerd. Daardie oggend het hy al die jong beeste gebrandmerk. Gesoute vleis sal vir 'n lang ruk goed bly. Die arm vrou het gestopte kouse gedra. Sy was uitgeput maar baie kalm. Sy het lief geglimlag. Hy werk onvermoed in die tuin. Die seun is goed ontwikkel. Hy het sy verloofde aan sy welgestelde tante voorgestel. Drink hy nooit uit 'n gebarste koppie nie? Die pianis is welbekend. Hy het verwonderd na my opgekyk. Hy was verbaas oor die nuus. Hulle het na die afgebrande huis gekyk. Was die huis goed gemeubileerd? Vir baie mense is die Bybel die geopenbaarde woord van God.

## 16

They were already finished with (or: had already finished) the work before sunset. I had finished the work before my departure. Before lunch the children were still playing. Just before the heavy rains of last week his holidays began. Couldn't he then go travelling by motor-car? He travelled westwards.

I told him the whole story. Then he looked at me and called his brother. Fortunately they could help me. They also wanted to help me.

Is he thinking about the matter? Has he thought about the matter? I think he will still come. I thought he would still come. He lives to the east of Bloemfontein. She hears the man

talking. She heard the man talking on an interesting subject. I saw her writing the letter. They sat working here. I did not want to disturb them. These abuses must stop. The (lady) dancing teacher instructs the children. Is her teaching good?

## 16a

Ek het hom môre-aand verwag, maar hy het vanmiddag om half-vier aangekom. Ek was toe aan die verf, en was verras om hom so vroeg te sien. Volgens hom het hy vooraf geskryf. Voor sy aankoms het ek die werk voltooi gehad.

Dit het geweerlig in die noorde en toe hoor ons die gedreun van die donder. Binne 'n paar oomblikke het die eerste druppels reën geval. Toe het dit hard gereën. Ons het ons reënjasse by ons gehad en ons het hulle aangetrek. Toe loop ons verder deur die reën. Ten laaste het ons ons huis bereik. Ons skoene was nat maar ons baadjies was droog.

Ek sien hulle oor die pad loop. Ek het hulle sien loop. By die hoek het hulle gestaan en praat. Toe kom die een terug. Wou hy nie saamgaan nie? Hy was besig om die toestand te ondersoek. Het hy die ondersoek byna voltooi? Hulle sal hulle nie aan sy gesag onderwerp nie.

## 17

He tries to set her mind at rest. Didn't he come to visit you? You ought to write to your friend immediately. He had no desire to walk about. To be interested in books is a good sign. You must have the power to persevere. They are going fishing. They went fishing. Did you see the horse win the race? Tomorrow evening (some) friends are coming to visit us. They will have dinner with us (lit. They will eat with us). After dinner we shall first chat and then listen to music. I expect my wife back on the thirteenth of this month. By that time I shall have been working in the garden (already) for a week. My parents-in-law are leaving on a world tour next month. They will be away for nine months. First they are going by air (airplane) to Europe, and then by ship to North America. From there they are travelling via Australia and New Zealand back to South Africa. They do not intend visiting Asia. She will enjoy the skating in Holland.

## 17a

Hulle het gaan wandel. Gaan hulle dikwels wandel? Hy kom kyk na die skilderye. Sal jy weet wat om te doen? Sy het teen die einde (or: end) van verlede jaar in Kaapstad kom werk. Hy sal die plan kom bespreek. Om onmiddellik 'n sakebrief te beantwoord is 'n goeie gewoonte. Dit is nie sy gewoonte om dit te doen nie. Sal hy die skip sien vertrek? Om te vertrek is nie altyd aangenaam nie. Party mense vind dit moeilik om in die winter vroeg op te staan. Hy hou daarvan om in 'n vreemde stad rond te loop. Ons gaan 'n toneelstuk opvoer. Wil sy deelneem aan die opvoering? Hy kom aanstaande Vrydag aan. Teen daardie tyd sal ek die werk in die tuin voltooi het, en besig wees om briewe te skryf. Aanstaande maand vertrek ek met vakansie. Eers sal ek vir 'n week na Durban gaan, en dan vir nog 'n week na Johannesburg. Daarna sal ek na Kaapstad terugkeer om die res van my vakansie tuis deur te bring. Hy praat sonder om te dink. Swem is goeie oefening.

## 18

The bridge is being completed by a new company. The story was told to me by my uncle. The letter was not delivered by the postman. The house had been built before my birth. Before the revolt the leader had already been betrayed. There was no victory for them. The story of their defeat will be told. Will the dog never be untied? By tomorrow evening the report will have been written. Before his arrival the house will have been demolished. After the war the country will have been laid waste. This afternoon the statue will be unveiled. Wasn't the room cleaned by the servant yesterday? The post is expected by air today. The shores of the Mediterranean Sea are inhabited by many nations. Just before high tide the man was seen on the beach. At spring-tide we have the highest tides. How is the word spelt? Where will the meeting be held? By whom was the letter compiled? What will he be told? When will the report be finished? Too much time is being devoted to it.

## 18a

Die grap word deur iedereen vertel. Die hond word iedere oggend deur die bediende losgemaak. Die brug is verlede jaar voltooi. Is die hond losgemaak? Die verhaal was (reeds) voor

my aankoms vertel. Die hond was nie vroeg daardie oggend losgemaak nie. Die nuwe kragstasie sal aanstaande jaar voltooi word. Voor sy vertrek aanstaande week sal die werk voltooi wees. Teen hierdie tyd volgende jaar sal (daar) baie nuwe huise gebou wees. Die briewe is gister deur die nuwe kantoorbode ge-pos. Sal hulle almal môre-oggend afgelewer word? Met wie is die reëlings getref? Wanneer sal die ontbyt gereed wees? (Note the article before *ontbyt*.) In die Noordpoolsee word (daar) baie ysberge gevind. Die suidpool is deur Amundsen ontdek. Daar word baie gelag en gehuil. Daar is aan hulle geld gegee vir die reis. Daar sal baie kos onder die armes uitgedeel word.

19

Go now! Enjoy the evening! Let this plan be. Go along with us! Please post these letters. Please have another piece of cake. Hurry up! Be ready! Don't congratulate him on my behalf! Don't make such a noise! Don't hurt him. Don't tell him. You must let no one come in. Don't be unwise. You must rather say nothing. Have the prisoner called. Allow him to accompany us. You must take care. Don't allow him to go with (us). You must not sleep late. She must wake him at seven o'clock. Please let him read out the report. The messenger must be dismissed immediately. Let the story of their victory be told. Let me see the latest books please. I am having a house built. Some books are written rapidly to be read rapidly. To have driven away after the accident was negligent and inhuman. Some people go the receptions just to be seen. To have been surrounded first and then to escape was not easy. "Please lend me two pounds." "I am sorry; I have only a ten shilling note, two half-crowns, a two shilling piece, three sixpences and two threepenny pieces." The train ticket costs one pound one and a penny.

19a

Maak die werk klaar! Wees gehoorsaam! Wens hom tog geluk! Help my asseblief! Wees versigtig! Was die koppies. Bring my 'n koppie koffie asseblief. Laat hom saam met ons gaan. Moenie hier staan nie! Moet hom asseblief nie wakker maak nie. (Or: Maak hom asseblief nie wakker nie.) Lewe en

laat lewe. Hy het die plan laat vaar. Vertrou niemand nie. Laat niks jou versteur nie. Moenie jou studies verwaarloos nie. Moenie stout wees nie! Jy moet nie leuens vertel nie. Jy moet haar gelukwens. Laat my toe om die deur vir u oop te maak. Sy moet onmiddellik terugkeer. Laat die boodskap aan die generaal gegee word. Die briewe moet môre-oggend voor elfuur afgelewer word. Moenie hom so hard laat werk nie. Dit is beter om eers arm te gewees het en dan ryk te word. Sy sal baie doen net om opgemerk te word. Om bemin te word is 'n behoefte van elke kind. Om aan hulle sarkasme blootgestel te gewees het, was baie onaangenaam. Om raak gesien te gewees het, was genoeg vir haar. Hy het drie pond veertien en ses vir die stoel betaal. „Wat skuld ek jou?” „Nege pond twee en vier pennies.” „Hoeveel is die plaas werd?” „Omtrent sestigduisend pond.”

20

He would have paid the account if he could. Perhaps he could not have the motor-car repaired in time. Perhaps the driver of the locomotive could not see the signal in the mist. If only the doctor were here! The doctor could possibly have helped her, but they called him in too late. The man evidently does not know about the bad behaviour of his son; otherwise he would have to punish him. He ought really to be ashamed of himself. You need not be back before two o'clock. It will not be necessary for you to check the work of the accountant; I shall do that myself. I want you to help the lady immediately. Will you please help her? I should certainly be able to help her, but perhaps she does not want to be helped. Fortunately the speaker turned up; otherwise I should have had to speak. I should very much like to know who the new conductor is. Can you perhaps tell me? But he would have told if he could. The sea and the mountains can be seen through the big window. Smoking is not allowed in the factory. I thought he would still come, but I am afraid it is too late now.

20a

Hy sou gekom het as hy kon. Ons kon hulle gehelp het, maar hulle wou nie gehelp word nie. Mag hy gou kom! Ek sal miskien nog na die kus gaan gedurende die vakansie. Dit was

nie nodig om so 'n lang verslag te skryf nie. Hy moes hierdie brief beantwoord het. Nou sal ek dit self moet doen. Sulke korrespondensie moet onmiddellik beantwoord word. Die ander werk hoef nie voor aanstaande week gedoen te word nie. Sy wou vanaand na die konsert gaan, maar sy het verkoue. Sy behoort glad nie saans uit te gaan nie. Hulle sou mag gaan, maar hulle het nie om verlof gevra nie. Onder gewone omstandighede sou u nie hierdie werk hoef te doen nie, maar daar is te veel personelede afwesig, en ek moet u vra om dit te doen. Sal u dit asseblief onderneem? Waarskynlik sal hy nie wil kom nie. Vermoedelik is hy siek. Sy het sommer weggebly. Sal u asseblief die Burgemeester en die Stadsklerk uitnooi? Sou u my asseblief die pad na die Poskantoor kon wys? Die Koning en die Koningin kon op die balkon gesien word. Ek wens hy was hier, maar ek veronderstel hy is onderweg verdraag.

## 21

The man who invented the jet motor became rich. The bicycle that you bought yesterday is brand-new, isn't it? The lady to whom you spoke a moment ago wasn't Mrs. Botha, was she? We shall leave as soon as the rain stops. I stood where Rhodes was buried. The poor boy stole bread because he was hungry. The (lady) typist knows what has to be done with the letters. The book of which I told you was written by C. M. van den Heever. The girl who was recommended by you will be appointed in the position. He listened well so that he could remember everything. We have to turn to the right where the road comes to a dead end at the hill. He knows when we arrived. I want to know when you will be in town. We shall be glad if we can meet the rich man. He wrote regularly, although he had very little time. They will complete the work, though the available time is very short. I know he will turn up tomorrow evening. I know that she will turn up tomorrow evening. The farm which will be bought by him lies in Natal. The machine, which had been repaired the day before yesterday, broke again yesterday. "Is he a hard worker?"—"He certainly is!" "It looks as if you find the work difficult; shall I help you?"—"Yes, please do!" "I know he will come, although he has a cold. The lady who helped Piet was his aunt. The lady whom Piet helped was his aunt.

## 21a

Die man wat my help, is my hoof-assistent. Een van die tafels wat verkoop is, is van eikehout gemaak, nie waar nie? Die probleem, wat nou eers ondersoek word, is baie ernstig. Die beamppte wat jy vermeld het, was die Stadsklerk, nie waar nie? Die dame wie se huis aanstaande week verkoop sal word, het reeds uit die land vertrek. Ek weet ek kan hom vertrou omdat hy eerlik is. Die kind met wie u gepraat het, is my seun. Die vulpen waarmee jy skryf, het 'n goue penpunt, nie waar nie? Die doel waarvoor ek dit sal gebruik, is om briewe te skryf. Hy het regtig gelyk asof hy baie siek was. Die fonds waartoe ons bygedra het, sal tog nie vir 'n standbeeld gebruik word nie, of hoe? Die voetstuk waarop die standbeeld sal staan, sal van graniet wees. Die applikant van wie ek u vertel het, het vir 'n onderhoud gekom. Ek sal jou die hele verhaal vertel wanneer ek van my vakansie terugkeer. U moet my asseblief waarsku wanneer die trein aankom. Ek het die huis gesien waar die groot digter gebore is. Wat ek daar gehoor het, het my verbaas. Die briewe wat deur hom geskryf is, kon nie gevind word nie. Wie nie betyds is nie, sal geen kos kry nie. Ek weet hy sal kom, al het hy verkoue. Hulle het besluit om per motorkar te reis, alhoewel die paaie nat en gevaarlik was. Ek het gehoop dat hy betyds sou aankom, en hy het ook. „Sy was te siek om te kom.” — „Inderdaad!” Hulle sal veilig voel as die deur toe is.

## 22

While the children play outside, the mother cleans the house. When my brother was here last week, we went to the exhibition. When the ship arrives, there will be many people on the quay. Before he left, the building had been completed. After the choir had sung, the monument was unveiled by the Mayor. While the man waits, his motor-cycle is being repaired. If there is room in your motor-car, he would like to go (lit. ride) with you. After the orchestra has played the first item, a song will be sung by the famous tenor. That he is a good artist, I know already. Whoever has made this serious error, he will be punished. Although he had accepted the invitation, he did not turn up. When no one expected it, it began to rain. Because he was not friendly, no one liked him. I never know whether he will come. I know that she will not write. I did not know that no trains would

run today. "Ow!" he exclaimed, "you are hurting me!" When I had told the story, he merely said: "Sure, everyone has his own troubles." As soon as he shouts Whoa! the horse comes to a stop. Whatever he says, I no longer believe him. Unless he apologises, he will not be invited again.

## 22a

Wanneer die moeder die huis skoonmaak, moet die kinders buite speel. Voordat die onlangse reëns geval het, het ons baie droë weer gehad. Nadat die nuwe droogdok gebou was, kon die grootste skepe hier heeldemaak word. Voordat ons na die stad terugkeer, sal die gebou voltooi wees. Toe dit donker word, is die lampe aangesteek. Terwyl die passasiers wag, word die brug herstel. Sodra die nuwe planne aankom, sal die werk hervat word. As jy klaar is met jou verslag, wil ek graag hê jy moet my help. Dat hy 'n onwillige werker is, was van die begin af duidelik. Waar die pad by die rivier kom, moet ons duskant die brug links draai. Hoe bevoeg hy ook al is, hy is nie betroubaar nie. Hy het verduidelik waarom hy nie aanwesig kon wees nie. Hy het my nie gewaarsku dat hy afwesig sou wees nie. Sy het nie gesê dat sy nie sou skryf nie. Omdat hy nie sy werk gedoen het nie, sal hy nie betaal word nie. Tensy hy my uitnodiging aanneem, sal ek hom nie verwag nie. As hy sonder 'n kaartjie opdaag, sal hy nie in die saal toegelaat word nie. „Soe! Dit is vandag baie koud,” het die meisie gekla. „A nee a!” het die vader vir die seun gesê; „jy kan nie vanaand weer die motorkar neem nie!” „Ag foi tog!” het die verpleegster gesê toe sy die kind se been sien; „daardie wond moet baie seer wees.”

Note: "Of course not!" can also be rendered by: „*Natuurlik nie!*" (Naturally not); and "Oh, what a pity!" by: „*Ag, hoe jammer!*"

## 23

The motor-car was damaged in the accident but the passengers were not injured. I called him early but he did not get up. She did not go to the reception, for she had not been invited. Apparently he behaved himself well, and yet I did not trust him. She was very impolite, nevertheless we tried to help her. He did not turn up, hence I could not give him the message. They had not been invited, therefore they did not come. The plans

contained too many errors, hence they could not be approved. It rained heavily the whole day, consequently the cricket-match had to be cancelled. You have to hurry, otherwise we shall be late. The young solicitor was in favour of the proposal, on the contrary his elder partner was opposed to it. After having discussed the matter with him on the telephone, I do not think it is necessary to write a letter. Knowing him to be a reliable worker, I am prepared to recommend his application. Although warned repeatedly, he made no effort to improve his work. Her dancing in the ballet was excellent. The people sitting in the front row could see well. After congratulating her, the impressario offered her a new contract. It is of no use (whatever) arguing with a traffic constable. On testing the motor-car, they discovered the fault in the carburettor.

## 23a

Hy skryf nie dikwels nie, maar sy briewe is altyd interessant. Die sterrekundige kon die rooi planeet duidelik waarneem, want daar was geen wolke in die lug nie. Daar is niks wat hom keer nie, en tog bly hy weg. Dit het daardie aand hard gereën, nogtans was daar baie mense aanwesig op die vergadering. Ons vertrek om twee-uur en die reis duur drie uur, dus sal ons om vyf-uur aankom. Daar was vroeg vanmôre 'n ongeluk, daarom is al die treine vandag laat. Etlike invloedryke lede was gekant teen die voorstel, derhalwe het die raad besluit om die bespreking uit te stel. Hy het sy werk verwaarloos, gevolglik sal sy salaris nie vermeerder word nie. Toe hy gevra is om 'n verduideliking, kon hy nie 'n bevredigende verskoning aanbied nie. Dit help nie om my te probeer bedrieg nie. Daar was te baie onderbrekings, anders sou die werk gister klaar gewees het. Die brief wat die goeie nuus bevat, het vanmôre aangekom. Terwyl hy die dokumente in die argief ondersoek het, het hy 'n belangrike ontdekking gedoen. Toe hy in die stad aankom, het hy na sy hotel gegaan. Dit is onmoontlik om te sê wat hy sal antwoord. Ek ken hom taamlik goed, maar ek weet baie min van sy persoonlike lewe. Ek ken haar en ek weet dat sy die werk kan doen. Nadat hy die huis gevef het, het hy die tuin skoongemaak.

## 24

The mother of two boys in their teens gave her husband to understand that the children had been lazy and disobedient.

The father was somewhat suspicious. He knew the children were not lazy, but his wife was rather clumsy in her handling of the boys. Perhaps their bad behaviour was attributable to the manner in which she had spoken to them.

"Tell me of their doings," he said.

"Their behaviour leaves much to be desired. I asked them nicely this morning to dig up the vegetable garden today. It was my clearly stated wish. They deliberately and wilfully disregarded it, and just played all day."

"Leave it to me," her husband replied. "I shall speak to them after dinner."

"It is to be hoped that they will listen to you."

That evening he went to the bedroom of the boys and spoke to them. They listened with rapt attention.

When he arrived home the next afternoon, his wife said:

"Just look, the whole garden has been dug! Is it attributable to your talk to the boys? What did you say to them last night?"

"One should always have a well thought out plan," her husband replied. "I simply told them an exciting story of a hidden treasure that had been buried in a vegetable garden, and persuaded them to see the work as a search for such a treasure."

In some countries compulsory labour exists. Smoking is prohibited in the concert-hall. Our reserved seats are in the sixth row from the front. I think you will be very pleased with the new ballet. At a given sign the curtain will rise. I am expecting a good performance. When I rose the next morning, the sky was overcast. In the strange city I felt lost. Because he was not narrow-minded, people were attracted to him. With tears held back and a broken heart she stood on the quay and looked at the departing ship. Around the grave of the departed one, those left behind stood with bowed heads. The adopted child was a well-formed girl. He is a man of understanding and of irreproachable character. He is well-read and his written work is excellent. He is the right man for this responsible task. The appointment of the man is an accomplished fact.

24a

Die bestuurder was baie kwaad toe hy ontdek dat etlike belangrike briewe nêrens te vinde was nie. Die hoof van die

betrokke departement, mnr. Venter, is gevra om 'n geskrewe verslag in te stuur. Daarin het hy verklaar dat 'n nuwe tikster willens en wetens sekere belangrike take nagelaat het, maar dat die briewe gevind is. Die bestuurder het die verslag gelees en gedink: , Miskien was dit 'n onbesonne daad om sulke verantwoordelike werk aan 'n nuwe werknemer te gee. Alhoewel mense gewoonlik sê gedane sake het geen keer nie, kan iets hier gedoen word.' Toe laat hy mnr. Venter roep om die verslag te bespreek.

„ Is hierdie take aan haar verduidelik ? ” vra hy.

„ O ja ! ” antwoord mnr. Venter, „ herhaaldelik. ”

„ Dink u dan dat sy onbevoeg is ? ”

„ Nee, glad nie ; maar sy gedra haar soos 'n bedorwe kind. ”

„ Het u met haar gepraat oor haar nalatigheid ? ”

„ Ja, ek het haar tot vervelens toe gewaarsku. Miskien sal 'n berisping deur u . . . ? ”

Die bestuurder het die tikster laat roep. Hy het onomwonde en tog vriendelik met haar gepraat, en geëindig met :

„ U moet probeer om u soos 'n volwasse mens te gedra. ”

Sy was diep bewoë en het daar met geboë hoof gesit. Toe het sy om verskoning gevra en belowe dat sy voortaan in haar pasoppens sou loop.

Toe hulle weer alleen was, draai mnr. Venter na die bestuurder.

„ Dankie, meneer, ” sê hy. „ Ek is nou 'n verbetering te wagte. ”

„ As haar werk nie verbeter nie, ” sê die bestuurder, „ sal ons haar ontslaan. Ek waarsku mense net een keer. ”

Die kinders was baie opgewonde toe hulle hoor dat die onverskrokke ontdekkingsreisiger hulle sou toespreek. Hulle het met gespanne aandag geluister toe hy hulle verhale van verafgeleë lande en langvergete beskawings vertel. Die geslepe dief het die slot met 'n gebuigde stuk draad ooggemaak. Die berede polisie het ten laaste die moordenaar gevang. Hy het te kere gegaan soos 'n malmens maar sy inhegtenisneming was 'n voldoende feit. Hy was altyd 'n geswore vyand van die wet en die samelewing. (Note the article before *samelewing*.) Die gekose komitee sal die voorstel agter geslote deure herooreg. Die koloniste het hulle duurgekogte vryheid verdedig. Die Goewerneur-Generaal beklee 'n verhewe posisie. Sedert die koms van die radio het die gesproke woord belangriker geword as voorheen. Die arm mense het verslete klere gedra.

25

24 Church Street,  
Pretoria.

7 Jun., 1954.

The Manager,  
The South African Wool Board,  
P.O. Box 492,  
Pretoria.

Re : Advertisement—Accountant

Dear Sir,

In this evening's "Star" you advertise a vacancy for an Accountant in your organisation. Herewith I wish to apply for the post.

I am twenty-four years old and single, and shall be able to assume duty on the 1st of August, 1954. Details of my educational qualifications and experience are given in the attached lists. Three certified testimonials are also enclosed. My mother tongue is English but I have a good knowledge of Afrikaans and can be considered fully bilingual.

The opportunity to supply further details in a personal interview will be appreciated.

Respectfully yours,  
W. Miller.

25a

Hoofweg 26,  
Clanwilliam.  
12 Okt. 1954.

Nasionale Boekhandel Beperk,  
Posbus 12,  
Parow,  
Kaapstad.  
Waarde Here,

Stuur aan my asseblief per kerende pos 'n eksemplaar van die „Tweetalige Woordeboek" deur Bosman en Van der Merwe, in twee bande. 'n Poswissel vir £2 2s. word ingesluit om beide die koopprys en die posgeld te dek.

Ek is besig om 'n studie te maak van die Afrikaanse taal, en

het „Teach Yourself Afrikaans" deurgewerk; en aangesien ek nou materiaal nodig het vir verdere studie, beide oefeninge en leesstof, sou ek dit waardeer as u aan my 'n katalogus van geskikte boek vir dié doel kon stuur.

Die uwe,  
M. Smal.

26

19 Kruger Ave.,  
Heidelberg,  
Transvaal.  
17 Apr., 1954.

Dear Sannie,

Many thanks for your letter of 8 April which arrived here the other day, and for all the news about your family. You really do write an interesting letter, and I enjoyed reading it (lit. I enjoyed it to read it).

We are keeping well. Jan has ten days' vacation and he is hard at work painting the doors and window-frames of our house. Every now and then he calls me to come and help him with something.

You enquired about the children. Willem is at the Agricultural College in Potchefstroom, and completes his course at the end of this year. Then he is going to work on his Uncle Gert's farm for a year or two. He hopes after that to buy his own farm with the money that his grandmother left him. Mona is in her second year at the University of Pretoria; she intends becoming a teacher. Marius is in the matriculation class here in Heidelberg. If he gets through the examination, he also will go to university next year. He wants to become a medical doctor, and we still have to decide where we shall send him, to Johannesburg, Pretoria or Cape Town. As you know, the other universities have no Faculties of Medicine.

As far as I am concerned, I keep myself busy with the work in the house (the care of husband and children) and with my hobbies: gardening and painting—but not of Jan's kind! I am still fond of water-colour and pastel-work.

The day after tomorrow is your birthday. Hearty congratulations, Sannie! May you have a pleasant day and still celebrate



many happy birthdays. All of us send our very best wishes. I hope you will always have happiness and prosperity. A little present from Jan and me is on its way already.

Please also give our kind regards to Andries and your dear children.

With love  
From

Marie.

26a

P/a Dr. P. R. Pienaar,  
Franklin,

Griekwaland-Oos.

20 Mei 1954.

Beste Jan,

Ek het belowe om jou te laat weet sodra ons hier aankom. Ek het 'n telegram gestuur maar ek was te moeg om onmiddellik te skryf.

Soos jy weet, het ons 14 Mei uit Kaapstad vertrek en die Tuinroete gevolg. Dit was 'n pragtige dag — mooi weer so ver ons gery het — en ons kon die wonderlike natuurskoon geniet : eers die uitsig bo van Sir Lowry-Pas af, en later in die dag die bosse en mere in die gebied van George en Knysna ('*noisna*), waar ons oornag het. Vroeg die volgende oggend was die lug betrokke en het dit begin reën ; en daardie Sondag het ons die hele dag in die reën en wind gery totdat ons 'n dorp met die naam Butterworth bereik het.

Die derde dag was selfs erger. Op etlike plekke word die teerpad reggemaak en moes ons oor lang, modderige verleggings ry. Geleidelik, namate ons nader aan Griekwaland-Oos gekom het, het dit kouer geword. Om alles te kroon het ons moeilikheid met die motor-kar gehad : twee lekplekke, 'n gebarste buiteband en etlike boue en moere wat losgeskud het.

Die aand van die derde dag het ons in hierdie dorpie aangekom en is ons hartlik deur Peter en sy vrou verwelkom. Daardie nag was daar 'n sneeustorm, en toe ons die oggend van die 17de opstaan, was die hele plek wit van die sneeu. Die sneeubedekte berge in die rigting van Basoetoland was wonderlik mooi.

Klein Willie geniet werklik die vakansie. Alhoewel Franklin skaars meer as 'n gehug is, besit dit 'n rangeerwerf en 'n

halfdosyn lokomotiewe, want dit is die spoorwegknoop vir Kokstad en Matatiele. Die lokomotiefloods is naby Peter se huis, en Willie het vandag byna die hele dag na lokomotiewe gestaan en kyk. Die masjinis het hom vanmiddag selfs toegelaat om op 'n lokomotief te ry.

Ons vertrek die 22ste van hier af en hoop om die aand van die 24ste weer in Kaapstad te wees.

Met beste groete  
Van

Andrew.

27

Jan Brink's father was a business man in Cape Town, and Mr. Brink wanted his son to become acquainted with the various provinces and cities of South Africa ; therefore he arranged Jan's vacations very carefully. One winter vacation he sent the boy to his sister Annie in Johannesburg. She was married to Andries Barnard, a magistrate ; and the family, consisting of Mr. and Mrs. Barnard, and their son Willem, lived in a beautiful new house in the suburb Greenside.

When Jan arrived in Johannesburg late on a certain afternoon, Mr. Barnard and Willem were at the station to meet him.

"There he is!" shouted Willem when the train pulled in and he saw his cousin leaning out of the window of the train.

They walked nearer while Jan waved to them.

"Good afternoon, Jan!" said Mr. Barnard. "Welcome to Johannesburg!"

"Good afternoon, Uncle Andries! Hello, Willem!" said Jan and conveyed the regards of his parents.

Mr. Barnard and Willem helped him with his luggage and soon they were (seated) in Mr. Barnard's motor-car on their way to the north-western suburbs. There his Aunt Annie also welcomed Jan and soon made him feel at home.

After dinner they sat round the fire and discussed the holidays.

"Is this really your first visit to Johannesburg?" asked Mrs. Barnard.

"Yes, Aunt Annie, my first visit, and I am very curious and keen to see as much as possible of the golden city."

"Willem will take care of that," said Mr. Barnard. "He will show you what there is to be seen."

"The plans are already in order, Father," said Willem. "I have compiled quite a time-table. I want to go and show him the Zoological Garden, the Library and the Africana Museum."

"And what about Joubert Park and the Art Gallery?" asked Mrs. Barnard.

"O yes, they are included. And also visits to two theatrical performances, one in English and one in Afrikaans."

"Excellent," said Mr. Barnard. "Tell me, what have you written down for Saturday afternoon?"

"A rugby-match at Ellis Park. Transvaal is playing against Western Province."

"O no!" exclaimed Mr. Barnard; "he can see good rugby at Newlands in Cape Town equally well. I have another suggestion. Let us go to a war-dance by mine natives at the compound of one of the gold mines."

"O yes, please!" exclaimed Jan. "I should like to see that."

"Good, I can arrange that," said Mr. Barnard. "And on Saturday evening we can go down a mine."

"You can go," Mrs. Barnard interrupted her husband, "but I am not going to crawl around down there in the dark passages!"

"Well and good," said Mr. Barnard with a smile, "but I don't think Jan should let such an opportunity pass. I can easily arrange the visit with the mining company."

"Oh, I am not afraid, Uncle Andries," said Jan. "I very much want to see the inside of such a mine. It seems to me Willem and Uncle Andries have taken much trouble to work out plans for my visit, and I can scarcely wait to begin."

"But what about the rest of the Transvaal?" asked Mr. Barnard. "Don't you want to see something of that also?"

"Very much indeed!" answered Jan, "if it is possible."

"Of course, we can't show you the whole of the Transvaal, but we can visit some parts of it. I still have to work this week, but next week I am taking ten days' holiday, and then we are going to undertake a motor-trip through the Transvaal."

"What a pleasant surprise!" cried Jan excitedly. "Where are we going, Uncle Andries?"

Mr. Barnard smiled when he saw Jan's enthusiasm.

"Willem," he said, "bring us the road-maps."

With the maps spread out in front of them Mr. Barnard explained the plan of the journey.

"First we are going to the Kruger Game Reserve, here, in the eastern part of the province; then northwards through the Game Reserve, where we shall spend the nights in three of the camps. There you will see lions, I hope, in their natural state, and giraffes, hippopotami, baboons, zebras, elephants, buffaloes and dozens of kinds of birds. Then we take this road back via Petersburg, Warmbaths and Pretoria. We shall drive in such a manner that we arrive in Pretoria early in the morning, so that we can spend a whole day in the capital."

"Yes, there are interesting places to see," said Mrs. Barnard; "for example, the Union Buildings, the house of President Kruger and the old Transvaal Museum. Such a visit will make much of the history of our country come to life for you."

"It will be wonderful!" said Jan. "I feel overwhelmed. How shall I be able to repay Aunt Annie, Uncle Andries and Willem for all the kindness?"

"That will be easy," said Mr. Barnard, "although it isn't really necessary. Next summer we are sending Willem to Cape Town, and then you and your parents again can show him everything there that there is to be seen."

"Believe me, Uncle Andries," said Jan, "that will be a pleasure!"

## 27a

Piet was altyd baie nuuskierig. Eendag loop hy Paul raak, wat sy arm 'n doek dra.

„Wat makeer jou arm?" vra hy.

„Ek het dit verdraai toe ek probeer het om myself op die skouer te klop."

„Maar waarom het jy probeer om jouself op die skouer te klop?"

„Net omdat ek nie my neus in ander mense se sake steek nie."

Mev. Naudé het 'n baie nou nuwe rok aangetrek en dit vir haar man kom wys.

„Hoe lyk ek in my nuwe rok?" vra sy.

„Om die waarheid te sê," antwoord haar man nadat hy haar

beskou het, „dit herinner my aan die vol trein wat ek elke oggend haal.”

„Wat bedoel jy?”

„'n Mens het net staanplek daarin.”

'n Moeder was besig om met 'n onderwyser te praat.

„En hoe vorder klein Olga op skool?” vra sy.

„O, so-so, mevrou Vermeulen,” kom die antwoord; „u weet, stadig maar seker.”

„Wat presies bedoel u, meneer Brand?”

„Stadig om te leer, en seker om te vergeet.”

Klein Jannie het gelag toe die onderwyseres aan die klas die verhaal voorlees van 'n man wat elke oggend driekeer deur die Vaalrivier geswem het.

„Waarom lag jy, Jannie?” vra sy. „Dink jy dit is onmoontlik vir 'n goeie swemmer?”

„Nee, Juffrou,” antwoord Jannie. „Ek het net gewonder waarom hy nie nog een keer deurgeswem het nie om terug te kom by sy klere.”

## 28

At his office Markus was continually busy and at home there were the thousand and one responsibilities of the father of a family, where his wife and children demanded much of his attention. Nevertheless he tried to lead a balanced life, realising that, in order to radiate much energy, one also had to receive much. He believed that one could preserve, even in the midst of a busy city, those periods of inward quiet and of contact with nature, that are essential for spiritual growth—not spasmodically, but as a part of daily life. (Note the definite article in Afrikaans before *natuur* and *daelike lewe*.)

That is why he attached so much value to the period in the morning between leaving his house and arriving at his office, and in the evening the similar journey home. He always avoided friends who offered him lifts in their motor-cars (lit. that he could ride with them in their motor-cars), preferring (or: for he preferred) to walk the mile to the station and travel the six miles to the centre of the city by train.

The road from his home to the station led past some neat villas in a park-like suburb, along the banks of a stream, across a bridge, then uphill next to the hedge of a big estate, across a main thoroughfare with oaks on both sides, and finally past a sports field and some shops near the railway line.

This route was a constant source of joy to Markus. The house erecting fury of the big building organisations had not yet made too many attacks either on the natural beauty of the area, or on the efforts of former generations to beautify their property by planting a variety of ornamental and fruit trees. At one spot beside the stream stood a clump of stately, dark green bluegum trees with their crowns high in the sky, and opposite them a smaller group of old poplars with their lighter green trunks and their sensitive leaves trembling in every breeze. At another spot some willows and a species of gum-tree, bearing red flowers in summer, stretched their branches out over the stream to be reflected in the water.

In some of the private properties grew oaks and cork trees and numerous flowering plum and quince trees, and between them Markus could admire the graceful gabled houses, built in the Cape Dutch style.

And always in the background, every morning there was the stately Table Mountain with its eastern crags and slopes catching the first rays of the sun, and every afternoon the far-off mountain ranges of Hottentots Holland to the south-east, blue grey in the distance if the sky was clear.

During his daily walks Markus could commune with nature. He listened to the birds, and the squirrels were his friends. He gazed at the trees and noticed how the seasons were reflected in their appearance—especially the oaks: the first tender green leaves in spring, the full crown of foliage in summer, the change to russet and brown in autumn, and the falling of the leaves in early winter, leaving not only the sturdy (lit. “strong”) trunks but also the branches right up to their smallest tips silhouetted against the sky. Then only did their true structure become clear—like that of a human being, tried in adversity, Markus thought—and could one distinguish between twisted individuals and those with inward strength and beauty of form.

A certain oak in an avenue near the station was a particular favourite of Markus, for its branches divided and re-divided with

such balanced symmetry that he nearly always stood still for a moment to admire the regular irregularity, wishing for (lit. "he had") the ability of an artist to recreate the image on canvas (note in Afrikaans the definite article before *doek*)—nearly always, for sometimes he thought of the tree only after having passed it (lit. "there"), and then he knew that he had allowed his office cares to weigh too heavily on his shoulders, and had not shaken himself free (lit. "loose") for the recuperation of his energy from the deepest sources in nature and in his own spirit.

The weather, unless it was blowing a gale, rarely disturbed him. In the rainy season he wore waterproof leggings, galoshes and a raincoat, and carried (lit. "took with") an umbrella, and took as much delight in the whispering of the rain as, in other seasons, in the chirping of the birds. Through the mist or the veil of the rain the colours of nature took on new shades of beauty, and the little pools of water and moist streets were alive with countless broken reflections.

In the train he usually read, always some book or other and never the daily newspapers, for he believed with Bennet that newspapers, written rapidly, should be read rapidly; and the undisturbed quarter of an hour in the train, free from telephone calls and visitors, was far too precious to be devoted to such transitory material. Fortunately he could concentrate so well that the presence of other people and the noise of the train did not disturb his enjoyment of a good book. Even when the coach was full and he had to stand all the way to the city, he still stood book in hand, absorbed in the thoughts of an essayist, the tale told by some master of (the art of) prose, or the beauty of a volume (or book) of poetry. Sometimes, but only rarely, he watched the faces and gestures of his fellow travellers, at times close to them in sympathy, at other times almost as if they were the inhabitants of a foreign (or "strange") country, objectively seen by an impartial observer.

The short walk from the central station to his office he devoted either to a rapid preparation for the day's official duties, or in the afternoons to a review of what had happened and the problems left unsolved, in order that his unconscious mind might perhaps be able to find a solution for them before the next day.

## 28a

Jakobus het baie van partytjies gehou, maar hy het gereëld die volgende dag aan swaar hoofpyn gely. Ten laaste gaan hy 'n dokter raadpleeg oor die hoofpyne. (Note how the present tense form of the verb can be used here.) Die dokter het hom ondersoek en versigtig uitgevra.

„Die beste geneesmiddel vir dié hoofpyne,” sê hy ten laaste, „is 'n eenvoudige liggaamsoefening.”

„En wat is dit?” vra Jakobus gretig.

„Jy moet jou kop kragtig heen en weer skud.”

„Sal dit die hoofpyn genees, dokter?”

„O ja.”

„Maar wanneer moet ek die oefening doen, dokter, en hoe dikwels?”

„O, nie baie dikwels nie. Net elke keer wanneer iemand jou vra om 'n drankie te drink.”

'n Optimis was besig om 'n pessimis te vertel dat hy sy seëninge moet tel en dankbaar wees.

„Dankbaar!” roep die pessimis uit. „Watter rede het ek om dankbaar te wees? Ek kan nie eers my rekening betaal nie.”

„Wel, dan kan jy dankbaar wees dat jy nie een van die skuldeisers is nie.”

Mnr. du Plessis (*dy plə'si*) loop by 'n slagterswinkel in.

„Het julle vis?” vra hy. (Note again the present tense forms of the verbs.)

„Dit spyt my,” antwoord die slagter; „ons het geen vis nie. Maar wat van 'n likker vet skaapboud?”

„Moenie bog praat nie!” sê meneer du Plessis. „Hoe kan ek nou vir my vrou gaan vertel dat ek 'n lekker vet skaapboud gevang het?”

Vir die tiende keer het die redakteur van 'n tydskrif 'n manuskrip aan 'n skrywer teruggestuur. Die skrywer het gaan sit en aan die redakteur geskryf: „Dink u ek moet meer vuur in my kortverhale sit?”

„Nee,” kom die antwoord; „u moet meer kortverhale in die vuur sit.”

## VOCABULARY

On the compilation of this vocabulary, see the Preface.

### A

- '*aanbevel*, separable v., (—), recommend.  
 'aangebied, v., (aange-), offer, bid, present.  
 'aanneem, (aange-), accept, adopt, take on.  
 'aansoek, (-e), application; *aansoek doen*, v., apply, make application.  
 'aanstel, (aange-), appoint.  
 'aanstelling, appointment.  
 'aanval, v., (aange-), attack; n., (-le), attack; 'n *aanval doen*, make an attack.  
*aanwesigheid*, presence.  
*adverteer*, *atfer'ter*, v., (ge-), advertise.  
*advertensie*, *atfer'tensi*, n., (s-), advertisement.  
*advies*, advice.  
 'afbreek, (afge-), break off, break down, pull down, demolish.  
 'afgaan, (afge-), go down.  
*Afri'cana*, Africana.  
 'afstand, n., (-e), distance, range, cession.  
 'achtergrond, background.  
*agterme'kaar*, in order, spick and span, fine, lit. after each other or one another.  
 'albei, both.  
 'allerhande, all kinds of.  
 'amptelik, a., (-e), official.  
*argumen'teer*, (ge-), argue.  
*at'leet*, (-lete), athlete.

### B

- baas*, n., (base), master, boss.  
*ba'gasie*, luggage.  
*ballet*, *ba'let*, (-te), ballet.  
*bankrot*, *ban'krot*, bankrupt; *bankrot speel*, go bankrupt.  
*bars*, n., (-te), burst, crack; v., burst, crack.  
*be'droef*, a., (-de), grieved; v., grieve.

- be'gaaf*, a., (-de), gifted.  
*be'grawe*, bury.  
*be'hae*, pleasure; *behae skep in*, take pleasure in.  
*be'heer*, manage, control.  
 'beitel, n., (-s), chisel; v., (ge-), chisel.  
 'beker, (-s), jug, mug, beaker, cup.  
*be'kwaam*, a., (-kwame), competent, able, efficient; ripe, mature.  
*be'merk*, v., notice.  
*be'rispe*, v., reprimand.  
*be'seer*, v., hurt, injure.  
*be'sef*, v., realise; n., realisation, conception, idea.  
*be'skikbaar*, a., (-bare), available.  
*be'skou*, consider, look at, regard.  
*be'soek*, n., (-e), visit; v., visit.  
*be'sonder*, a., (-e), particular, special; *niks besonders nie*, nothing particular, nothing in particular, nothing special.  
*be'speel*, tr. v., play (a musical instrument).  
*be'staan*, n., existence, livelihood; v., (—), exist.  
*be'stee*, spend; *bestee aan*, spend on, devote to, bestow on.  
*be'tref*, v., concern; *wat my betref*, as far as I am concerned, for my part, as for me.  
*be'waar*, preserve, keep safely.  
*be'weeg*, v., move, tr. v., persuade.  
*be'woon*, inhabit, occupy, dwell or live in.  
*biblio'teek*, (-teke), library.  
 'binnegaan, (binnege-), go inside, enter.  
 'binnekant, n. and adv., inside.  
 'binnekom, (binnege-), come in, enter.  
*binne'kort*, soon, in a short while, before long.  
*blaar*, (blare), leaf (of tree); blister.  
*bloei*, v., bloom, blossom, flower; bleed.  
*'bloekomboom*, bluegum-tree.  
*blom*, n. and v., flower.  
*bloot*, a., (blote), naked, bare; adv., merely.  
*blou-grys*, blue grey.  
*bly*, v., remain, stay  
*bly*, a., (—, -e), glad, joyful, pleased, happy.  
*bobbe'jaan*, (-jane), baboon.  
*boek*, n., book.  
*bok*, n., goat, buck.

*boom*, tree ; bottom.

<sup>1</sup>*bokant*, n., upper side ; prep., above, over.

*bord*, n., (-e), plate (of crockery), board.

*bou*, v., build ; *laat bou*, have (something) built.

<sup>1</sup>*bou-organisasie*, (-s), building organisation.

*brand*, n., (-e), fire (accidental fire causing damage ; in other cases use *vuur*) ; also *brand*, v., burn.

*bron*, n., source.

*brood*, (*brode*), bread, loaf of bread.

*brug*, n., (*brûe*, *brûens*, *brugge*), bridge.

<sup>1</sup>*buffel*, (-s), buffalo ; churl.

<sup>1</sup>*bundel*, n., book, volume.

*bus*, (-se), bus, omnibus ; bush (lining of axle-hole).

*by*, prep., by, with, near, at ; *by iemand eet*, have a meal with someone, at his house.

<sup>1</sup>*byna*, nearly.

*by'voorbeeld*, for example ; the abbreviation is *bv.*, e.g.

## D

<sup>1</sup>*daarheen*, there, thither, to that place.

<sup>1</sup>*daarin*, in it, in that, in them, in those.

<sup>1</sup>*daeliks*, a. and adv., daily.

<sup>1</sup>*dagblad*, (-*blaaië*), daily newspaper.

<sup>1</sup>*dame*, (-s), lady.

*dans*, n. and v., dance.

<sup>1</sup>*danswerk*, n., dancing, lit. dance-work.

<sup>1</sup>*dapper*, a. and adv., brave(ly), in a brave manner.

*deur*, prep., through, by.

*deur-en-deur*, thoroughly, through and through.

*diëet*, *di'e:t*, n., (*diëte*), diet.

*diens*, n., (-te), service ; *diens aanvaar*, assume duty.

*diep*, a., (—, -e), and adv., deep(ly).

*dig*, a., (-te), closed, shut ; dense, thick ; adv., densely, thickly.

*dik*, a., (—), and adv., thick(ly).

<sup>1</sup>*donkergroen*, dark green.

<sup>1</sup>*doodloop*, (*doodge-*), come to an end, come to a dead end.

<sup>1</sup>*doring*, (-s), thorn ; dim. <sup>1</sup>*dorinkie*.

*droom*, v. and n., dream.

*druk*, a., (—), and adv., busy, busily ; v., press, print.

*dun*, a., (—), and adv., thin(ly).

## E

<sup>1</sup>*eekhorinkie*, (-s), squirrel.

<sup>1</sup>*effens*, slightly, rather.

*eg*, a., (-te), genuine.

<sup>1</sup>*eie*, a., own.

<sup>1</sup>*eienaar*, (-s), owner ; fem. *eiena'res*, (-se).

<sup>1</sup>*eiendom*, (-me), property.

*eier*, <sup>1</sup>*ei-ər*, n., (-s), egg.

<sup>1</sup>*eintlik*, a., (-e), real, adv., really.

*eis*, v., (*geëis*), demand, claim ; n., demand, claim.

*e'lektries*, a., (-e), electric, electrical ; adv., electrically.

<sup>1</sup>*emmer*, n., (-s), pail.

*ener'gie*, energy.

<sup>1</sup>*enkel*, a., (—, -e), single ; adv., merely, simply, only ; n., (-s), ankle.

*essay'is*, (-te), essayist.

## F

<sup>1</sup>*abriek*, (-e), factory.

*fakul'teit*, (-e), faculty (section of a university).

<sup>1</sup>*flitslig*, (-te), flashlight, electric torch.

*fluks*, a., (-e), and adv., diligent(ly), energetic, energetical(ly).

## G

*gang*, (-e), passage (in house or mine), corridor ; gait ; allied to

*gaan*, v., go, move, walk.

*gas*, n., (-te), guest ; cf. *gas*, n., (-se), gas.

*ge'baar*, n., (-bare), gesture.

*ge'dagte*, n., (-s), thought ; allied to *dink*, v., think.

*ge'dig*, n., (-te), poem ; from *dig*, v., compose or write poetry.

*ge'durig* or *ge'duriglik*, adv., continually ; the a. is *ge'durig*, (-e), continual.

<sup>1</sup>*geestelik*, a., (-e), and adv., spiritual(ly).

*ge'hoorsaam*, v., (—), obey.

*ge'kant teen*, opposed to.

*ge'leentheid*, (-hede), opportunity, occasion.

*ge'lukkig*, a., (-e), and adv., happy, happily, fortunate(ly), luckily.

*ge'meenskap*, community, connection, intercourse ; *gemeenskap hou met*, commune with.

*gene'raal*, n., (-s), general.  
*ge'niet*, enjoy.  
*ge'noeë*, n., (-ns), pleasure; 'n *genoeë*, a pleasure.  
*ge'not*, (*genietinge*, *genietings*), enjoyment, pleasure; *genot in*, pleasure in.  
*ge'slag*, n., (-te), generation, lineage, gender, sex.  
*ge'voelig*, a., (-e), sensitive, also adv., sensitively.  
*'gewel*, n., (-s), gable.  
*'gewelhuis*, gabled house.  
*glo*, v., believe; also adv., evidently, seemingly.  
*goeie'middag!*, good afternoon!  
*'gomboom*, gum-tree.  
*goud*, n., gold; a., (*goue*), gold, golden.  
*'goudmyn*, gold-mine.  
*'goudstad*, golden city, city of gold.  
*'gretig*, a., (-e), and adv., keen(ly), eager(ly), desirous.  
*groei*, v., grow, n., growth.  
*'groentetuin*, vegetable garden.  
*groep*, n., (-e), group.  
*'groete*, greetings, regards; *sê groete aan*, give kind regards to.  
*grond*, n., (-e), ground, soil.  
*groot*, great, big, large.  
*'grootmens*, n., adult, grown-up person.  
*'grootpad*, main thoroughfare, main road, highway.

## H

*hallo!*, hello!  
*hang*, n., (-e), slope (of mountain, etc.); v., hang.  
*harle'kyn*, n., (-e), clown.  
*'heerlik*, a., (-e), and adv., lovely, glorious (of weather), delicious(ly) (of food), delightful(ly) (of time, party, etc.).  
*'heining*, n., (-s), hedge, fence.  
*her'skep*, v., re-create.  
*her'stel*, n., repair, recovery, restoration, recuperation; also v., repair, recover, restore.  
*'herverdeel*, v., (—), re-divide.  
*'hewel*, n., (-s), hill.  
*'hierop*, on this, on these.  
*'honger*, a., (—), hungry; also n., hunger.  
*'hoofstad*, n., capital (city).

*ho'tel*, (-le), hotel.  
*'houtkassie*, (-s), little wooden box.  
*huis*, n., (-e), house, home (in expressions like *my huis*, *huis toe*, etc.); *ek gaan huis toe*, I am going home.  
*hulp*, n., help, assistance; cf. *help*, v., help, assist.

## I

*impres'sario*, (-'s), impressario.  
*indi'vi'du* or *indiwi'du*, n., (-e), individual.  
*'innerlik*, a., (-e), and adv., inward(ly), internal(ly).  
*'inroep*, (*inge-*), call in.  
*in'sake*, concerning, re. (in heading of business letters), abbreviation: *i.s.*  
*insek*, *ən'sek* or *'ənsək*, n. (-te), insect.  
*'insittendes*, pl. n., those sitting inside, passengers.  
*'insluit*, (*inge-*), include, enclose.  
*'intrek*, (*inge-*), pull in, move in.  
*'inwoner*, (-s), inhabitant.

## J

*juis*, a., (-te), exact, correct; adv., just, exactly, precisely.  
*ju'weel*, (-wele), jewel.

## K

*kaai*, (-e), quay, wharf.  
*ka'meelperd*, giraffe.  
*kamp*, n., (-e), camp.  
*'kampong*, n., (-s), compound (quarters of mine-natives).  
*ka'naal*, n., (-nale), canal, channel.  
*kansel'leer*, v., (*ge-*), cancel.  
*kan'toor*, n., (-tore), office; *op kantoor*, at office, in the office.  
*ka'rakter*, n., (-s), character.  
*ken*, n., (-ne), chin.  
*kêrel*, *'kɛ:rəl*, n., (-s), fellow, young man, chap, lover, fiancé.  
*klomp*, n., (-e), crowd, number, clump (of trees); lump; wooden shoe.  
*klub*, n., (-s), club (social).  
*koei*, (-e), cow.  
*kombers*, *kəm'bɛ:rs*, (-e), blanket.  
*kom'buis*, (-e), kitchen.

*konfe'rensie*, (-s), conference.  
*konsen'treer*, (*ge-*), concentrate.  
*kon'sertsaal*, concert hall.  
*kon'tak*, n., (-*te*), contact.  
*kon'trak*, n., (-*te*), contract.  
*koor*, (*kore*), choir.  
*kort*, a., (—, -*e*), short.  
*kos*, v., cost; n., food; *koste*, *'onkoste*, pl. n., costs, expenses.  
*'kosbaar*, a., (-*bare*), valuable.  
*krans*, **krā's**, n., (-*e*), crag; wreath.  
*kruin*, n., (-*e*), crown (e.g. of tree), summit (of mountain).  
*'kuiergas*, visiting guest, holiday guest.  
*'kunsmuseum*, (-s), art gallery.  
*kurk*, n., cork (the substance).  
*'kurkboom*, cork-tree.  
*'kursus*, (-*se*), course (of study).  
*kus*, n., (-*te*), coast, shore.  
*kwalif'i'kasie*, (-s), qualification.

## L

*laag*, n., (*lae*), layer; a., (*lae*), low, comp. *laer*; adv. low, lowly, basely.  
*laan*, n., (*lane*), avenue.  
*lag*, v., laugh; n., laugh, laughter.  
*'landgoed*, n., (-*ere*), (country) estate.  
*leen*, v., lend, borrow; *leen aan*, lend to; *leen van*, borrow from.  
*'lekker*, delicious(ly), sweet(ly), enjoyable, enjoyably, nice; *ons het lekker gekuier*, we enjoyed our visit; *lekker speel, eet*, etc., enjoy playing, eating, etc.  
*les*, n., (-*se*), lesson.  
*lip*, n., (-*pe*), lip.  
*lokomo'tief*, n., (-*tiewe*), locomotive, engine.  
*loop*, v., walk, go, run (of machinery, also of river and railway line).  
*'lower*, foliage.  
*lug*, n., (-*te*), air, sky.  
*lui*, a., (—, -*e*), lazy; adv., lazily, in a lazy manner.  
*'luister*, v., (*ge-*), listen; *luister na*, listen to.  
*lys*, n., (-*te*), list.

## M

*maatskap'py*, n., (-*e*), company (business), firm.  
*ma'nier*, (-*e*), manner; *die manier waarop*, the manner in which.  
*'medereisiger*, fellow-traveller.  
*'medies*, a., (-*e*), medical; adv., medically.  
*medi'syne*, (-s), medicine.  
*'meisie*, (-s), girl.  
*melk*, v. and n., milk.  
*'middag*, midday, noon, afternoon; good afternoon (in greeting someone).  
*'midde*: *te midde van*, in the midst of.  
*'middestad*, centre of city, central part of city.  
*mis*, (1) n., (-*te*), mist, (2) n., manure, (3) n., (-*se*), mass (religious service); v., miss; pred. a. and adv., amiss, wrong; *mis skiet*, v., miss in shooting, *mis slaan*, v., miss in hitting; *jy het dit mis*, you are making a mistake.  
*moeg*, a., (*moeë*), tired; comp. *moeër*.  
*'moeite*, n., trouble, care; *moeite doen*, take trouble, take pains.  
*mond*, (-*e*), mouth.  
*monument*, **mony'ment**, (-*e*), monument.  
*mooi*, a., (—), and adv., pretty, prettily, beautiful(ly), nice(ly); *mooi vra*, ask nicely, in a polite or pleasant manner; *mooi weer*, fine weather.  
*'motorfiets*, motor-cycle.  
*'motorreis*, motor-trip, journey by motor-car.  
*mu'seum*, (-s), museum, gallery (art).  
*musiek*, **my'sik** or **mə'sik**, music.  
*myl*, (-*e*), n., mile(s).  
*'mynmaatskappy*, mining company.

## N

*na*, prep., to (place), after (time), towards, at, for; *na aan*, near to, close to.  
*'nalaat*, (*nage-*), leave behind, leave (e.g. money as inheritance), neglect (a duty).  
*'namens*, on behalf of, in the name of.  
*nat*, a., wet, moist.  
*naturel*, **naty'rel**, n., (-*le*), native.  
*na'tuurlik*, a., (-*e*), and adv., natural(ly).  
*na'tuurstaat*, natural state.



'*neerlaag*, n., (-*lae*), defeat, overthrow.  
 '*neerskryf*, (*neerge-*), write down.  
*nek*, n., (-*ke*), neck; mountain pass or mountain saddle.  
*netjies*, '*neëcis*, a., (-*e*), and adv., neat(ly), tidy, tidily.  
*neus*, n., (-*e*), nose.  
*nog*, a., more, some more; adv., still, yet.  
 '*nommer*, n., (-*s*), number, item (in programme of music, etc.).  
*noordwestelik*, a., (-*e*), north-western.  
*nuus'kierig*, a., (-*e*), curious, inquisitive.

## O

*objek'tief*, a., (-*tiewe*), and adv., objective(ly).  
*of*, or, whether.  
 '*oggend*, n., (-*e*), morning.  
 '*olifant*, n., (-*e*), elephant.  
*om'trent*, prep. and adv., about, more or less.  
*onbe'kommerd*, a., (-*e*), unconcerned; adv., in an unconcerned manner.  
*onge'hoorsaam*, a., (-*same*), disobedient.  
*onge'troud*, a., (-*e*), unmarried, single.  
*onveel'matigheid*, n., (-*hede*), irregularity.  
*onte'vrede*, a., dissatisfied; opposite of *te'vrede*, satisfied.  
*ont'hou*, v., remember; abstain, refrain.  
*ont'hul*, v., unveil.  
*ont'snap*, v., escape.  
*onver'steur*, a., (-*de*), or *onver'steurd*, a., (-*e*), undisturbed; also *onver'steur(d)*, adv., in an undisturbed manner, without being disturbed.  
*ook*, also, as well, too, even.  
*oor*, n., (*ore*), ear (part of body).  
*oor*, prep., over, across, past (relating to time), about, by way of, via.  
 '*oordra*, v., (*oorge-*), carry across, convey.  
 '*oorkant*, n., opposite side; prep. and adv. opposite, on the opposite side of.  
 '*oorlogsdans*, war-dance.  
 '*oorsig*, n., (-*te*), review.  
 '*oorskoene*, pl. of '*oorskoen*, galoshes, lit. "over-shoes".  
 '*oostelik*, a., (-*e*), eastern.  
*op*, prep., on, at; adv., up.

'*opdaag*, (*opge-*), turn up, arrive.  
 '*opdraand*, uphill; opposite of '*afdraand*.  
 '*opgaan*, (*opge-*), go up, rise.  
 '*oplet*, v., (*opge-*), notice, attend, pay attention, watch.  
 '*oplossing*, n., (-*s*, -*e*), solution (of problem, etc.).  
 '*opstel*, v., (*opge-*), compile, compose (a letter, etc.), put up, put in position; '*opstel*, n., (-*le*), composition (literary, not musical).  
*or'kes*, n., (-*te*), orchestra.  
 '*orrel*, n., (-*s*), organ (musical instrument).  
*orre'lis*, n., (-*te*), organist; fem. *orre'liste*.  
*ouer*, '*ouar*, n., (-*s*), parent; '*ouer*, comp. of *oud*, a., older, elder.  
 '*ouma*, (-*s*), grandmother.  
 '*oupa*, (-*s*), grandfather.

## P

*pak*, v., pack, n., (-*ke*), pack, bundle.  
*park*, n., (-*e*), park.  
 '*park-agtig*, a., (-*e*), park-like.  
*pas'telwerk*, pastel-work.  
*per*, per, by, via.  
*pik*, n., (-*ke*), pick(axe); pitch (tarry substance).  
*popu'lier*, n., (-*e*), poplar(-tree).  
*pos*, n., (-*te*), post; position; *pos*, v., post.  
 '*posbode*, postman.  
*present*, *pær'sent*, n., (-*e*), present.  
*pri'vaat*, a., (—, -*vate*), private.  
*pro'vinsie*, n., (-*s*), province.  
*prys*, n., (-*e*), price, prize; *prys*, v., praise.  
*punt*, n., (-*e*), point, full stop, tip (of something).  
*put*, n., (-*te*), well.

## R

'*rasend*, a., (-*e*), raving, noisy.  
 '*rede*, n., (-*s*), reason; speech; *iemand in die rede val*, interrupt someone in conversation.  
*reel'matig*, a., (-*e*), and adv., regular(ly).  
 '*reënseisoen*, n., (-*e*), rainy season.  
 '*regter*, n., (-*s*), judge.  
 '*reisplan*, n., (-*ne*), plan of journey.  
 '*rekenmeester*, n., (-*s*), accountant.

*resul'taat*, n., (-*tate*), result.  
*riet*, n., (-*e*), reed, rush.  
*ring*, n., (-*e*), ring (e.g. to wear on finger).  
*'rondkruip*, (*rondge-*), crawl about, creep about.  
*'rondloop*, (*rondge-*), walk about, loaf.  
*'rooibruin*, red brown, russet.  
*rook*, n. and v., smoke.  
*'rooster*, n., (-*s*), gridiron, grill; roster, time-table.  
*rots*, n., (-*e*), rock.  
*rugby*, *'roegbi*, rugby, rugby football.  
*'rugbywedstryd*, rugby-match.

## S

*sam'breel*, (-*brele*), umbrella.  
*sê*, v., say, speak, tell.  
*'sebra*, (-*s*), zebra.  
*'seekoei*, hippopotamus.  
*seer*, n., (*sere*), sore, wound; a., (—), sore, painful; *seer kry*, get hurt, feel pain; *seer maak*, v., hurt, lit. make sore.  
*'sekere*, attr. a., certain, e.g. *sekere mense*, certain people.  
*sen'traal*, a., (-*trale*), central.  
*simme'trie*, symmetry.  
*simpa'tie*, sympathy.  
*sinjaal*, *sip'jaal*, n., (-*jale*), signal.  
*'sirkel*, n., (-*s*), circle.  
*skaars*, a., (—, -*e*), scarce, rare.  
*ska'kering*, n., (-*e*, -*s*), shade (of meaning of colour).  
*skeur*, v., tear; n., (-*e*), tear, rent, crack, fissure.  
*skiet*, v., shoot.  
*skok*, n., (-*ke*), shock.  
*skoon*, a., (—, *skone*), clean, beautiful; adv., cleanly, quite, completely, absolutely.  
*'skoonheid*, n., (-*hede*), beauty.  
*'skoonmaak*, v., (*skoonge-*), clean, lit. make clean.  
*'skoonouer*, n., (-*s*), parent-in-law.  
*skop*, v., kick; n., (-*pe*), kick.  
*'skouer*, n., (-*s*), shoulder.  
*skuld*, v., owe; n., debt, guilt, fault.  
*slaap*, v. and n., sleep; there is also a n. *slaap*, (*slape*), temple (part of forehead).

*'slaapkamer*, bedroom, lit. sleep-room.  
*slot*, n., (-*te*), lock; conclusion, end; *ten slotte*, finally.  
*'sluier*, n., (-*s*), veil.  
*sneeu*, n. and impers. v., snow.  
*snel*, v., hasten; a., (—, -*le*), fast, rapid, quick; adv., fast, rapidly, quickly.  
*so*, so, such, in such a manner, thus; *so 'n*, such a; *so iets*, such a thing; *so pas*, just, just a short while ago; *so . . . soos . . .* as . . . as . . .; *so ver ons gery het*, as far as we rode.  
*'sodat*, so that, in order that.  
*so'dra*, as soon as.  
*'soektog*, n., (-*te*), search, expedition to find or search for something.  
*soet*, a. (—), and adv., sweet(ly), well-behaved, in a well-behaved manner.  
*soort*, n., (-*e*), kind, sort.  
*'soortgelyk*, a., (-*e*), similar, lit. of equal sort.  
*'spannend*, a., (-*e*), exciting; adv., excitingly, in an exciting manner.  
*spas'modies*, a., (-*e*), and adv., spasmodic(ally).  
*speel*, v., play.  
*spesi'aal*, a., (-*iale*), an adv., special(ly).  
*'splinternuut*, a., (-*nuwe*), brand-new.  
*'spreker*, n., (-*s*), speaker.  
*stad*, n., (*stede*), city, town.  
*stal*, n., (-*le*), stable.  
*stam*, n., (-*me*), trunk (of tree), stem (of plant), tribe (of people).  
*'standbeeld*, n., (-*e*), statue, lit. standing image.  
*'statig*, a., (-*e*), stately.  
*steel*, v., steal; n., (*stele*), handle, shaft.  
*sterf* or *sterwe*, v., die, expire.  
*sterk*, a., (—, -*e*), and adv., strong(ly), powerful(ly); v., strengthen.  
*'stilte*, n., (-*s*), silence, quiet; from *stil*, a., (—, -*le*), and adv., stil, quiet(ly), silent(ly), motionless, also v., calm, soothe.  
*stop*, v., stop, stop up, darn (stockings), fill (a pipe for smoking).  
*'stormwind*, n., (-*e*), gale, lit. storm-wind.  
*stout*, a., (—, -*e*), and adv., naughty, in a naughty manner.  
*straal*, n., (*strale*), ray, beam (of light), stream, jet (of water), radius (of circle), flash (of lightning).

*straat*, n., (*strate*), street.  
*strand*, n., (*-e*), beach, seaside; v., strand, run ashore.  
*streng*, a., (*—*, *-e*), and adv., strict(ly).  
*struk'tuur*, n., (*-ture*), structure.  
*stu'deer*, v., (*ge-*), study.  
*'studie*, n., (*-s*), study, act of studying, subject of study; *'n studie maak van*, make a study of, study.  
*styl*, n., style.  
*suid-ooste*: *die suid-ooste*, the south east.  
*'suiker*, n., sugar.  
*'suster*, n., (*-s*), sister.  
*suutjies*, *'syicis* or *'suicis*, adv., softly, quietly.  
*swaar*, a. (*—*, *sware*), and adv., heavy, heavily, difficult, with difficulty; *swaar kry*, suffer hardship.  
*swak*, a., (*—*, *-ke*), and adv., weak(ly), bad(ly).

## T

*tak*, n., (*-ke*), branch; also n., tact.  
*'talloos*, a., (*-lose*), countless.  
*teen*, prep., to, at (time), by (time), towards (time), against; *teen die einde van die jaar*, towards the end of the year; *teen vanmiddag* (by this afternoon).  
*'teenspoed*, n., adversity.  
*teer*, a., (*—*, *tere*), and adv., tender(ly); also *teer*, n. and v., tar.  
*'teken*, n., (*-s*), sign; v., (*ge-*), draw, sign.  
*tele'foon*, n., (*-fone*), telephone; *oor die telefoon*, on the telephone.  
*te'leurstellend*, a., (*-e*), disappointing.  
*tenoor*, *te'noir*, n., (*-nore*), tenor (singer).  
*ten'sy*, unless.  
*te'rugkom*, v., (*terugge-*), turn back, return.  
*'terugry*, v., (*terugge-*), ride or drive back.  
*te'rugverwag*, separable v., (*—*), expect back.  
*toets*, n., (*-e*), and v., test.  
*toon*, n., (*tone*), toe; tone.  
*'treinspoor*, n., (*-spore*), railway line.  
*'treinvenster*, n., (*-s*), train-window, window or train.  
*'trekker*, (*-s*), tractor; also one who "jreks" or moves away.  
*troos*, v. and n., comfort.  
*twee'talig*, a., (*-e*), bilingual.  
*'tydperk*, n., (*-e*), period, stretch of time.

## U

*'uitkom*, v., (*uitge-*), come out, appear.  
*'uitsprei*, v., (*uitge-*), spread out.  
*'uitstraal*, v., (*uitge-*), radiate.  
*'uitstrek*, v., (*uitge-*), stretch out.  
*'uitvind*, v., (*uitge-*), find out, invent.  
*universi'teit*, n., (*-e*), university.

## V

*va'kansie*, n., (*-s*), vacation, holiday(s).  
*vaka'ture*, n., (*-s*), vacancy.  
*van*, prep., of, about, from, with; *van . . . af*, from, since; *van die begin af*, from the start, from the beginning.  
*van deseweek*, this week.  
*veels*: *veels te*, far too, much too.  
*ven'noot*, n., (*-note*), partner (in business).  
*'vensterraam*, n., (*-rame*), window-frame.  
*ve'ral*, especially, chiefly.  
*verant'woordelik*, a., (*-e*), responsible.  
*verant'woordelikheid*, n., (*-hede*), responsibility.  
*ver'beter*, v., (*—*), improve.  
*ver'bygaan*, v., (*verbyge-*), pass, pass by.  
*ver'bygaande*, a., (*—*), passing, transient.  
*ver'deel*, v., divide.  
*'verder*, a., (*—*, *-e*), farther, further, furthermore, moreover.  
*ver'diep*, v., deepen, reflex. v., become absorbed; *hy is verdiep in*, he is absorbed in.  
*verge'sel*, v., accompany.  
*ver'goed*, v., repay, compensate.  
*ver'kry*, v., obtain, acquire.  
*ver'loor*, v., lose.  
*ver'moë*, n., (*-ns*), ability.  
*ver'my*, v., avoid.  
*veron'agsaam* or *veront'agsaam*, v., (*—*), disregard, ignore.  
*ver'raai*, v., betray.  
*ver'skeidenheid*, n., variety.  
*'verte*, n., (*-s*), distance; *in die verte*, in the distance.  
*ver'trek*, n., (*-ke*), room, apartment; departure; also v., depart, leave.  
*ver'trou*, v., trust.

- ver*<sup>1</sup>*voer*, n. and v., transport.  
*ver*<sup>1</sup>*woes*, v., devastate, lay waste, wreck, destroy.  
*vier*, v., celebrate; numeral, four.  
*'villa*, n., (-s), villa.  
*vloer*, n., (-e), floor.  
*voël*, <sup>1</sup>*fo:əl* or <sup>1</sup>*fo:l*, n., (-s), bird.  
*vonkel*, <sup>1</sup>*fɔŋkəl*, v., (*ge-*), twinkle, sparkle.  
*'voorkoms*, n., appearance.  
*'voorkop*, n., (-*pe*), forehead.  
*'voorlees*, v., (*voorge-*), read out.  
*'voorman*, n., (-*ne*), foreman.  
*'voorspoed*, n., prosperity.  
*'voorstad*, n., (-*stede*), suburb.  
*'voorste*, first, foremost; *die voorste ry*, the front row.  
*'voorstel*, n., (-*le*), proposal, suggestion, motion.  
*'voortgaan*, v., (*voortge-*), go on, proceed, continue.  
*vorm*, n., (-*e*, -*s*), n., form, shape, figure; v., form, shape, mould.  
*'volik*, a., (-*e*), happy, merry, cheerful.  
*'vrede*, n., peace.  
*vreet*, v., eat (of animals), forge, guzzle.  
*vreugde*, <sup>1</sup>*frøxdə*, n., (-s), joy.  
*'vriendelikheid*, n., (-*hede*), friendliness, kindness.  
*vroeg*, a., (*vroë*), early; comp. *vroëër*; adv., early, at an early hour.  
*'vryspreek*, v., (*vryge-*), acquit, absolve, lit. speak free.

## W

- wa*, n., (-*ens*), waggon, coach (of train).  
*waar*<sup>1</sup>*deer*, v., (—, *ge-*), appreciate, value.  
*'waarnemer*, n., (-s), observer.  
*wal*, n., (-*le*), bank (of river), embankment.  
*wang*, n., (-*e*), cheek (of face).  
*'waterdig*, a., (-*te*), waterproof.  
*'waterverf*, n., water-colour(s).  
*week*, n., (*weke*), week; a., (—, *weke*), soft, tender; v., soak.  
*weer*, adv., again; n., weather.  
*weer*<sup>1</sup>*kaatsing*, reflection (of light), re-echo(ing) (of sound).  
*weet*, v., know.  
*'welgekleed*, a., (-*klede*), well dressed.  
*'welgesteld*, a., (-*e*), well-to-do, lit. well-placed.

- 'welkom*, welcome.  
*wens*, n., (-*e*), and v., wish, desire; *te wense*, to be desired; *dit laat veel te wense oor*, it leaves much to be desired.  
*'werklik*, a., (-*e*), and adv., real(ly).  
*'westelik*, a., (-*e*), western.  
*wil*, n., will, wish, desire; also v., want to, desire; *wil hê*, want to have, want, desire, require; *ek wil hê jy moet . . .*, I want you to . . .; *wil graag hê*, should like, would like; *ek wil graag hê jy moet . . .*, I should like you to . . .; *'willens en 'wetens*, wilfully, deliberately.  
*'wilgerboom*, willow(-tree).  
*'winkel*, n., (-s), shop.  
*'winkelbediende*, n., (-s), shop-assistant, lit. shop-servant.  
*'wintervakansie*, n., (-s), winter vacation.  
*'woede*, n., fury, rage.  
*woon*, v., live, dwell, stay.  
*word*, v., become, get, turn, grow, go, fall, be.  
*'wreedheid*, n., (-*hede*), cruelty.  
*wy*, v., devote, dedicate.  
*wyn*, n., (-*e*), wine.